ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF ANIMALS

Ruth Lawson
Otago Polytechnic

LibreTexts™

Otago Polytechnic

Anatomy and Physiology of Animals

Ruth Lawson

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.

LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 12/02/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

About the Author

Licensing

1: Chemicals

- 1.1: Elements and Atoms
- 1.2: Compounds and Molecules
- 1.3: Chemical Reactions
- 1.4: Ionizations
- 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
- 1.6: Carbohydrates
- 1.7: Fats
- 1.8: Proteins
- 1.9: Summary
- 1.10: Chemicals (Worksheet)
- 1.11: Worksheet Answers
- 1.12: Test Yourself
- 1.13: Website

2: Classifications

- 2.1: Naming and Classifying Animals
- 2.2: Naming Animals
- 2.3: Classification of Living Organisms
- 2.4: The Animal Kingdom
- 2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
- 2.6: Summary
- 2.7: Classifications (Worksheet)
- 2.8: Worksheet Answers
- 2.9: Answers
- 2.10: Test Yourself
- 2.11: Websites

3: The Cell

- 3.1: The Cell
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane
- 3.3: The Cytoplasm
- 3.4: The Nucleus
- 3.5: Cell Division
- 3.6: The Cell As A Factory
- 3.7: Summary
- 3.8: Worksheets
- 3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
- 3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
- 3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
- 3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers

- 3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2
- 3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
- 3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers
- 3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers
- 3.17: Test Yourself
- 3.18: Websites

4: Body Organization

- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
- 4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
- 4.3: Body Cavities
- 4.4: Organs
- 4.5: Generalised Plan Of The Mammalian Body
- 4.6: Body Systems
- 4.7: Homeostasis
- 4.8: Directional Terms
- 4.9: Summary
- 4.10: Worksheets
- 4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
- 4.12: Directional Terms Worksheet 1 Answers
- 4.13: Directional Terms 2 (Worksheet)
- 4.14: Directional Terms Worksheet 2 Answers
- 4.15: Tissues Worksheet
- 4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
- 4.17: Test Yourself
- 4.18: Websites
- 4.19: Skin Worksheet Answers

5: The Skin

- 5.1: The Skin
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
- 5.3: Skin Glands
- 5.4: The Skin and Sun
- 5.5: The Dermis
- 5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
- 5.7: Summary
- 5.8: Worksheet
- 5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
- 5.10: Skin Worksheet Answers
- 5.11: Test Yourself
- 5.12: Websites

6: The Skeleton

- 6.1: The vertebral column
- 6.2: The Skull
- 6.3: The Ribs
- 6.4: The Forelimb
- 6.5: The Hindlimb

- 6.6: The Girdles
- 6.7: Categories of Bones
- 6.8: Bird Skeletons
- 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
- 6.10: Compact bone
- 6.11: Spongy Bone
- 6.12: Bone Growth
- 6.13: Broken Bones
- 6.14: Joints
- 6.15: Common Names of Joints
- 6.16: Locomotion
- 6.17: Summary
- 6.18: Worksheet
- 6.19: Prelude
- 6.20: Skeleton Worksheet
- 6.21: Skeleton Worksheet Answers
- 6.22: Test Yourself
- 6.23: Websites

7: Muscles

- 7.1: Website
- 7.2: Muscles
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle
- 7.4: Cardiac Muscle

8: Cardiovascular System

- 8.1: Plasma
- 8.2: Red Blood Cells
- 8.3: White Blood Cells
- 8.4: Platelets
- 8.5: Transport of Oxygen
- 8.6: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning
- 8.7: Transport of Carbon Dioxide
- 8.8: Transport of Other Substances
- 8.9: Blood Clotting
- 8.10: Serum and Plasma
- 8.11: Anticoagulants
- 8.12: Haemolysis
- 8.13: Blood groups
- 8.14: Blood Volume
- 8.15: Summary
- 8.16: Test Yourself
- 8.17: Websites
- 8.18: Answers
- 8.19: The Heart Objectives
- 8.20: The Heart
- 8.21: Valves
- 8.22: The Heartbeat
- 8.23: Cardiac Muscle

- 8.24: Control of the Heartbeat
- 8.25: The Coronary Vessels
- 8.26: Blood Circulation Objectives
- 8.27: Blood Circulation
- 8.28: Arteries
- 8.29: The Pulse
- 8.30: Capillaries
- 8.31: The Formation of Tissue Fluid and Lymph
- 8.32: Veins
- 8.33: Regulation of Blood Flow
- 8.34: Edema and fluid loss
- 8.35: The Spleen
- 8.36: Important Blood Vessels
- 8.37: Blood Pressure
- 8.38: Summary
- 8.39: Test Yourself
- 8.40: Websites
- 8.41: Answers

9: Respiratory System

- 9.1: Overview
- 9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen
- 9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide
- 9.4: The Air Passages
- 9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
- 9.6: Breathing
- 9.7: Summary
- 9.8: Worksheet
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
- 9.10: Respiration Worksheet Answers
- 9.11: Test Yourself
- 9.12: Websites

10: Lymphatic System

- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
- 10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
- 10.3: Summary
- 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
- 10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
- 10.6: Test Yourself
- 10.7: Websites

11: The Gut and Digestion

- 11.1: Herbivores
- 11.2: Carnivores
- 11.3: Omnivores
- 11.4: Treatment of Food
- 11.5: The Gut

- 11.6: Mouth
- 11.7: Teeth
- 11.8: Oesophagus
- 11.9: Stomach
- 11.10: Small Intestine
- 11.11: The Rumen
- 11.12: Large Intestine
- 11.13: Functional Caecum
- 11.14: The Gut Of Birds
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.16: Pancreatic juice
- 11.17: Intestinal Juice
- 11.18: Absorption
- 11.19: The Liver
- 11.20: Summary
- 11.21: Worksheet
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
- 11.23: Digestive System Answers
- 11.24: Test Yourself
- 11.25: Websites

12: Urinary System

- 12.1: Homeostasis
- 12.2: Water in the Body
- 12.3: Maintaining Water Balance
- 12.4: Excretion
- 12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
- 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
- 12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals
- 12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
- 12.9: Other Functions Of The Kidney
- 12.10: Normal Urine
- 12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
- 12.12: Excretion In Birds
- 12.13: Summary
- 12.14: Worksheet
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
- 12.16: Excretory System Answers
- 12.17: Test Yourself
- 12.18: Websites

13: Reproductive System

- 13.1: Reproductive System
- 13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals
- 13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
- 13.6: Pregnancy
- 13.7: Birth

- 13.8: Milk Production
- 13.9: Reproduction In Birds
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
- 13.12: Reproductive System Worksheet Answers
- 13.13: Test Yourself
- 13.14: Websites
- 13.15: Fertilization

14: Nervous System

- 14.1: Coordination
- 14.2: The Nervous System
- 14.3: The Neuron
- 14.4: Reflexes
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
- 14.8: Test Yourself
- 14.9: Websites
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

15: The Senses

- 15.1: The Sense Organs
- 15.2: Touch and Pressure
- 15.3: Pain
- 15.4: Temperature
- 15.5: Awareness of Limb Position
- 15.6: Smell
- 15.7: Taste
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.10: Balance
- 15.11: Summary
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
- 15.13: Test Yourself
- 15.14: Websites

16: Endocrine System

- 16.1: The Endocrine System
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
- 16.4: The Pineal Gland
- 16.5: The Thyroid Gland
- 16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.8: The Pancreas
- 16.9: The Ovaries
- 16.10: The Testes

- 16.11: Summary
- 16.12: Homeostasis and Feedback Control
- 16.13: Summary of Homeostatic Mechanisms
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
- 16.16: Test Yourself
- 16.17: Websites

Index

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

About the Author

Ruth Lawson is a zoologist who gained her first degree at Imperial College, London University and her D.Phil from York University, UK. After post graduate research on the tropical parasitic worm that causes schistosomiasis, she emigrated to New Zealand where she spent 10 years studying how hydatid disease spreads and can be controlled. With the birth of her daughter, Kate, she started to teach at the Otago Polytechnic, in Dunedin. Although human and animal anatomy and physiology has been her main teaching focus, she retains a strong interest and teaches courses in parasitology, public health, animal nutrition and pig husbandry. Ruth lives on the Otago Peninsula overlooking the beautiful Otago Harbour where she races her Topper sailing dinghy. She also enjoys tramping, skiing and gardening and has meditated for many years.

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Chemicals

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know the:

- Symbols used to represent elements;
- Names of molecules commonly found in animal cells;
- Characteristics of ions and electrolytes;
- Basic structure of carbohydrates with examples;
- Carbohydrates can be divided into mono- di- and poly-saccharides;
- Basic structure of fats or lipids with examples;
- Basic structure of proteins with examples;
- Function of carbohydrates, lipids and proteins in the cell and animals' bodies;
- Foods which supply carbohydrates, lipids and proteins in animal diets.

1.1: Elements and Atoms
1.2: Compounds and Molecules
1.3: Chemical Reactions
1.4: Ionizations
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.6: Carbohydrates
1.7: Fats
1.8: Proteins
1.9: Summary
1.10: Chemicals (Worksheet)
1.11: Worksheet Answers
1.12: Test Yourself
1.13: Website

This page titled 1: Chemicals is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.1: Elements and Atoms

The elements (simplest chemical substances) found in an animal's body are all made of basic building blocks or atoms. The most common elements found in cells are given in the table below with the symbol that is used to represent them.

Element	Symbol
Calcium	Ca
Carbon	C
Chlorine	Cl
Copper	Cu
Iodine	I
Hydrogen	H
Iron	Fe
Magnesium	Mg
Nitrogen	N
Oxygen	O
Phosphorous	P
Potassium	K
Sodium	Na
Sulphur	S
Zinc	Zn

This page titled 1.1: Elements and Atoms is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.2: Compounds and Molecules

A **molecule** is formed when two or more **atoms** join together. A compound is formed when two or more different elements combine in a fixed ratio by mass. Note that some atoms are never found alone. For example **oxygen** is always found as molecules of 2 oxygen atoms (represented as O_2).

The table below gives some common compounds.

Compound	Symbol
Calcium carbonate	$CaCO_3$
Carbon dioxide	CO_2
Copper sulphate	$CuSO_4$
Glucose	$C_6H_{12}O_6$
Hydrochloric acid	HCl
Sodium bicarbonate (baking soda)	$NaHCO_3$
Sodium chloride (table salt)	$NaCl$
Sodium hydroxide	$NaOH$
Water	H_2O

This page titled 1.2: Compounds and Molecules is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.3: Chemical Reactions

Reactions occur when atoms combine or separate from other atoms. In the process new products with different chemical properties are formed.

Chemical reactions can be represented by **chemical equations**. The starting atoms or compounds are usually put on the left-hand side of the equation and the products on the right-hand side.

For example

- $H_2O + CO_2$ gives H_2CO_3
- or $H_2O + CO_2 = H_2CO_3$
- Water + Carbon dioxide gives Carbonic acid

This page titled 1.3: Chemical Reactions is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.4: Ionizations

When some atoms dissolve in water they become charged particles called **ions**. Some become positively charged ions and others negatively charged. Ions may have one, two or sometimes three charges. The table below shows examples of positively and negatively charged ions with the number of their charges.

Positive Ions		Negative Ions	
H+	Hydrogen	Cl-	Chloride
$Ca^{2}+$	Calcium	OH-	Hydroxyl
Na+	Sodium	HCO_3-	Bicarbonate
K+	Potassium	CO_3^{2}-	Carbonate
$Mg^{2}+$	Magnesium	SO_4^{2}-	Sulfate
$Fe^{2}+$	Iron (ferrous)	PO_4^{3}-	Phosphate
$Fe^{3}+$	Iron (ferric)	S^{2}-	Sulfide

Positive and negative ions attract one another to hold compounds together. Ions are important in cells because they conduct electricity when dissolved in water. Substances that ionize in this way are known as **electrolytes**. The molecules in an animal's body fall into two groups: **inorganic compounds** and **organic compounds**. The difference between these is that the first type does not contain **carbon** and the second type does.

This page titled 1.4: Ionizations is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds

Inorganic compounds include water, sodium chloride, potassium hydroxide and calcium phosphate.

Water is the most abundant inorganic compound, making up over 60% of the volume of cells and over 90% of body fluids like blood. Many substances dissolve in water and all the chemical reactions that take place in the body do so when dissolved in water. Other inorganic molecules help keep the **acid/base balance (pH**) and concentration of the blood and other body fluids stable (see Chapter 8).

Organic compounds include **carbohydrates, proteins** and **fats** or **lipids**. All organic molecules contain carbon atoms and they tend to be larger and more complex molecules than inorganic ones. This is largely because each carbon atom can link with four other atoms. Organic compounds can therefore consist of from one to many thousands of carbon atoms joined to form chains, branched chains and rings (see diagram below). All organic compounds also contain hydrogen and they may also contain other elements.

Anatomy and physiology of animals-organic compounds.jpg

This page titled 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.6: Carbohydrates

The name “carbohydrate” tells you something about the composition of these “hydrated carbon” compounds. They contain carbon, hydrogen and oxygen and like water (H_2O), there are always twice as many hydrogen atoms as oxygen atoms in each molecule. Carbohydrates are a large and diverse group that includes sugars, starches, glycogen and cellulose. Carbohydrates in the diet supply an animal with much of its energy and in the animal’s body, they transport and store energy.

Carbohydrates are divided into three major groups based on size: **monosaccharides** (single sugars), **disaccharides** (double sugars) and **polysaccharides** (multi sugars).

Monosaccharides are the smallest carbohydrate molecules. The most important monosaccharide is glucose which supplies much of the energy in the cell. It consists of a ring of 6 carbon atoms with oxygen and hydrogen atoms attached.

Disaccharides are formed when 2 monosaccharides join together. Sucrose (table sugar), maltose, and lactose (milk sugar), are three important disaccharides. They are broken down to monosaccharides by digestive enzymes in the gut.

Polysaccharides like starch, glycogen and cellulose are formed by tens or hundreds of monosaccharides linking together. Unlike mono- and di-saccharides, polysaccharides are not sweet to taste and most do not dissolve in water.

Glucose

Glucose

Lactose

Disaccharide (Lactose)

- **Starch** is the main molecule in which plants store the energy gained from the sun. It is found in grains like barley and roots like potatoes.
- **Glycogen**, the polysaccharide used by animals to store energy, is found in the liver and the muscles that move the skeleton.
- **Cellulose** forms the rigid cell walls of plants. Its structure is similar to glycogen, but it can’t be digested by mammals. Cows and horses can eat cellulose with the help of bacteria which live in specialised parts of their gut.

Anatomy and physiology of animals-Polysaccharides.jpg

This page titled 1.6: Carbohydrates is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.9: Summary

- **Ions** are charged particles, and **electrolytes** are solutions of ions in water.
- **Carbohydrates** are made of carbon with hydrogen and oxygen (in the same ratio as water) linked together. The cell mainly uses carbohydrates for energy.
- **Fats** are also made of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. They are a powerful energy source, and are also used for insulation.
- **Proteins** are the building materials of the body, and as **enzymes** make cell reactions happen. They contain nitrogen as well as carbon, hydrogen and oxygen.
- Many also contain sulphur and phosphorous.

This page titled 1.9: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.10: Chemicals (Worksheet)

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

1. What is the most abundant molecule in the cell?

2. Name one inorganic molecule in the cell.

3. What is the difference between inorganic and organic molecules?

4. Name the 4 different types of organic molecules to be found in the cell.

   1.....
   2.....
   3.....
   4.....

5. What is the characteristic of carbon atoms that makes them so versatile?

6. Name the 3 atoms that are always found in carbohydrates.

7. Fats and carbohydrates both contain the same atoms. What distinguishes carbohydrates from fats?

8. Give the 3 main functions of carbohydrates.

   1.....
   2.....
   3.....

9. Which of the following is NOT one of the main types of carbohydrate.

   Monosaccharide / Polysaccharide / Sucrose / Disaccharide

10. Monosaccharides: (Indicate if true or false)

- are sweet to taste
- are insoluble in water
- provide energy
- form important structures in the cell or animal
- are not easily digested in the gut of mammals
- are found in grains and potatoes
- are found in fruits and energy drinks
- include sucrose, maltose and lactose
- can be absorbed into the blood directly from the gut without the need for digestion
- include glucose
- are formed when disaccharides are split

11. Disaccharides:

- are sweet to taste.
- are soluble in water.

- provide energy.
- form important structures in the cell or animal.
- are not easily digested in the gut.
- are found in grains and potatoes.
- are found in milk, malt and your sugar bowl.
- include sucrose, maltose and lactose.
- can be absorbed into the blood directly from the gut without the need for digestion.
- include glucose.
- are formed when 2 monosaccharides are joined.

12. Polysaccharides:

- are sweet to taste.
- are soluble water.
- provide an energy store.
- form important structural in the cell or animal.
- can be absorbed into the blood directly from the gut without the need for digestion.
- are found in grains and potatoes.
- include sucrose, maltose and lactose.
- do not need to be digested in the gut.
- include glucose.
- are formed when monosaccharides are joined in long strings.
- include cellulose, starch and glycogen.

13. Fats:

- are soluble in water.
- are only soluble in solvents like ethanol.
- contain hydrogen and oxygen in the ratio 2:1.
- include triglycerides, phospholipids, and some vitamins.
- provide the body's most concentrated source of energy.
- are formed by the joining of several glucose molecules.
- are found in nuts, seeds and dairy produce.

14. Give 2 differences between saturated and unsaturated fats.

15. Proteins:

- are formed from carbon, hydrogen and oxygen molecules.
- all contain nitrogen.
- are made up from many fatty acids.
- are made up from many amino acids.
- are very small molecules.
- are very stable molecules and can withstand heating, etc.
- are digested in the gut by the enzymes pepsin, trypsin, peptidases and proteases.
- are digested in the gut by amylases.
- have a major role in the cell is as enzymes.
- have a major role in the cell is to provide energy.
- are found in cream, potatoes and fruit.
- are found in meat, nuts and cheese.

16. These statements are true of amino acids:

- There are 20 different amino acids.
- All of these can be found in plant foods.
- The amino acids not found in plants can be made by the body.
- Only meat and dairy produce contain all the essential amino acids.
- The bond joining amino acids together is called a protein bond.

17. Which is the odd one out?

1. proteins / fats / glucose / carbohydrates / nucleic acids
2. glucose / starch / amino acids / fatty acids
3. starch / cellulose / glycogen / glucose
4. carbon / iron / hydrogen / oxygen
5. enzymes / plasma membrane / antibodies / plant cell wall

This page titled 1.10: Chemicals (Worksheet) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.11: Worksheet Answers

1. What is the most abundant molecule in the cell?

   Water (H_2O). Roughly 70% of a cell consists of water.

2. Name one inorganic molecule in the cell.

   One of: Sodium chloride (NaCl), potassium chloride (KCl), water (H_2O), oxygen (O_2) etc.

3. What is the difference between inorganic and organic molecules?

   All organic molecules contain carbon (C) while inorganic molecules can contain any atom except carbon.

4. Name the 4 different types of organic molecules to be found in the cell.

   1.*Carbohydrates*
   2. *Fats*
   3. *Proteins*
   4. *Nucleic acids*

5. What is the characteristic of carbon atoms that makes them so versatile?

   They can bond with 4 other atoms allowing them to make rings and chains and thus form large, complex molecules.

6. Name the 3 atoms that are always found in carbohydrates.

   Carbon (C)
   Hydrogen (H)
   Oxygen (O)

7. Fats and carbohydrates both contain the same atoms. What distinguishes carbohydrates from fats?

   In carbohydrates H and O are in the ratio 2:1. There is no such relationship in fats.

8. Give the 3 main functions of carbohydrates.

   1. *As an energy store e.g. as glycogen stored in the liver.*
   2. *Providing energy in the cell*
   3. *Making structures of the body e.g. in cartilage, bone*
   Plus other functions

9. Which of the following is NOT one of the main types of carbohydrate.

   Monosaccharide / Polysaccharide / *Sucrose* / Disaccharide. *Sucrose is a disaccharide.*

10. Monosaccharides: (Indicate if true (T) or false (F))

   - *are sweet to taste* T
   - are insoluble in water F
   - *provide energy* T
   - form important structures in the cell or animal F
   - are not easily digested in the gut of mammals F
   - are found in grains and potatoes F

- *are found in fruits and energy drinks* T
- include sucrose, maltose and lactose F
- *can be absorbed into the blood directly from the gut without the need for digestion* T
- *include glucose* T
- *are formed when disaccharides are split* T

11. Disaccharides:

- *are sweet to taste*. T
- *are soluble in water*. T
- *provide energy.* T
- form important structures in the cell or animal. F
- are not easily digested in the gut. F
- are found in grains and potatoes. F
- *are found in milk, malt and your sugar bowl*. T
- *include sucrose, maltose and lactose*. T
- can be absorbed into the blood directly from the gut without the need for digestion. F
- include glucose. F
- *are formed when 2 monosaccharides are joined*. T

12. Polysaccharides:

- are sweet to taste. F
- are soluble water. *F. Some are but most are not*
- *provide an energy store*. *T. Starch is the energy store in plants while glycogen is in animals. cellulose (plant cell walls) is digested by herbivores and provides them with their energy.*
- *form important structures in the cell or animal's body*. *T. e.g. cellulose plant cell walls, lignin is wood and chitin forms the outer skeleton of insects.*
- can be absorbed into the blood directly from the gut without the need for digestion. F
- *are found in grains and potatoes*. T
- include sucrose, maltose and lactose. F
- do not need to be digested in the gut. F
- include glucose. F
- *are formed when monosaccharides are joined in long strings*. T
- *include cellulose, starch and glycogen*. T

13. Fats:

- are soluble in water. F
- *are only soluble in solvents like ethanol*. T
- contain hydrogen and oxygen in the ratio 2:1. F
- *include triglycerides, phospholipids, and some vitamins*. T
- *provide the body's most concentrated source of energy*. *T. Fats provide approximately 2 1/2 times more energy than the equivalent weight of carbohydrate.*
- are formed by the joining of several glucose molecules. F
- *are found in nuts, seeds and dairy produce*. T

14. Give 2 differences between saturated and unsaturated fats.

Saturated fats contain the maximum number of hydrogen atoms, come from animals, and tend to be solid at room temp. Unsaturated fats can incorporate more hydrogen into their structures, come from plants and fish (and poultry) and tend to be liquid at room temperature.

15. Proteins:

- are formed from carbon, hydrogen and oxygen molecules. F
- *all contain nitrogen*. T
- are made up from many fatty acids. F
- *are made up from many amino acids*. T
- are very small molecules. *F. Proteins form some of the largest and most complex molecules in the body.*
- are very stable molecules and can withstand heating, etc. *F. Proteins are very sensitive to heat, acid/base balance (pH) and solvents which can destroy their molecular shape (denaturation) causing them to lose their function in the cell or body.*
- *are digested in the gut by the enzymes pepsin, trypsin, peptidases and proteases*. T
- are digested in the gut by amylases.
- *have a major role in the cell is as enzymes*. T
- have a major role in the cell is to provide energy. *F. Note that proteins can provide energy in some circumstances (e.g. during starvation) and in some animals (e.g.the cat) but generally they are not used for energy.*
- are found in cream, potatoes and fruit. F
- *are found in meat, nuts and cheese*. T

16. These statements are true of amino acids:

- *There are 20 different amino acids*. T
- All of these can be found in plants. *F. Only something like 10 of them (non essential amino acids) are found in sufficient quantities in all plants to provide a balanced diet.*
- The amino acids not found in plants can be made by the body. *F. These essential amino acids can not be made in the body. They must be taken into the body in the diet.*
- *Only meat and dairy produce contain all the essential amino acids*. T
- The bond joining amino acids together is called a protein bond. *F. It is called a peptide bond.*

17. Which is the odd one out?

1. proteins / fats / *glucose* / carbohydrates / nucleic acids. *Glucose is a type of carbohydrate. All the others are major types of organic molecule.*
2. glucose / *starch* / amino acids / fatty acids. *Starch is formed from many glucose molecules while the others in the group are all the smallest subunits of carbohydrates, proteins and fats respectively.*
3. starch / cellulose / glycogen / *glucose*. *Glucose is the only molecule in the group that is not a polysaccharide.*
4. carbon / *iron* / hydrogen / oxygen. *All except iron are found in all carbohydrates*.
5. enzymes / plasma membrane / antibodies / *plant cell wall (cellulose*). *All except cellulose are made of protein.*

This page titled 1.11: Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.12: Test Yourself

1. What is the difference between an atom and a molecule?

2. What is the chemical name for baking soda?

   And its formula?

3. Write the equation for carbonic acid splitting into water and carbon dioxide.

4. A solution of table salt in water is an example of an electrolyte.

   What ions are present in this solution?

5. What element is always present in proteins but not usually in fats or carbohydrates?

6. List three differences between glucose and glycogen.

   1.
   2.
   3.

7. Which will provide you with the most energy – one gram of sugar or one gram of butter?

8. Why do organic compounds tend to be more complex and larger than inorganic compounds?

This page titled 1.12: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.13: Website

- Survey of the living world organic molecules

A good summary of carbohydrates, fats and proteins.

This page titled 1.13: Website is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Classifications

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- how to write the scientific name of animals correctly
- know that animals belong to the Animal kingdom and that this is divided into phyla, classes, orders, families
- know the definition of a species
- know the phylum and class of the more common animals dealt with in this course

Classification is the process used by scientists to make sense of the 1.5 million or so different kinds of living organisms on the planet. It does this by describing, naming and placing them in different groups. As veterinary nurses you are mainly concerned with the Animal Kingdom but don't forget that animals rely on the Plant Kingdom for food to survive. Also many diseases that animals are affected by are members of the other Kingdoms -- fungi, bacteria and single celled animals.

2.1: Naming and Classifying Animals
2.2: Naming Animals
2.3: Classification of Living Organisms
2.4: The Animal Kingdom
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
2.7: Classifications (Worksheet)
2.8: Worksheet Answers
2.9: Answers
2.10: Test Yourself
2.11: Websites

This page titled 2: Classifications is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.1: Naming and Classifying Animals

There are more than 1.5 million different kinds of living organism on Earth ranging from small and simple bacteria to large, complex mammals. From the earliest time that humans have studied the natural world they have named these living organisms and placed them in different groups on the basis of their similarities and differences.

This page titled 2.1: Naming and Classifying Animals is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.2: Naming Animals

Of course we know what a cat, a dog and a whale are but, in some situations using the common names for animals can be confusing. Problems arise because people in different countries, and even sometimes in the same country, have different common names for the same animals. For example a cat can be a chat, a Katze, gato, katt, or a moggie, depending on which language you use. To add to the confusion sometimes the same name is used for different animals. For example, the name 'gopher' is used for ground squirrels, rodents (pocket gophers), for moles and in the south-eastern United States for a turtle. This is the reason why all animals have been given an official **scientific** or **binomial name**. Unfortunately these names are always in Latin. For example:

- Common rat: *Rattus rattus*
- Human: *Homo sapiens*
- Domestic cat: *Felis domesticus*
- Domestic dog: *Canis familiaris*

As you can see from the above there are certain rules about writing scientific names:

- They always have **2 parts** to them.
- The first part is the **genus** name and is always written with a **capital** first letter.
- The second name is the **species** name and is always written in **lower case**.
- The name is always **underlined** or printed in **italics**.

The first time you refer to an organism you should write the whole name in full. If you need to keep referring to the same organism you can then abbreviate the genus name to just the initial. Thus "*Canis familiaris*" becomes "*C. familiaris*" the second and subsequent times you refer to it.

This page titled 2.2: Naming Animals is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.3: Classification of Living Organisms

To make some sense of the multitude of living organisms they have been placed in different groups. The method that has been agreed by biologists for doing this is called the **classification system**. The system is based on the assumption that the process of evolution has, over the millennia, brought about slow changes that have converted simple one-celled organisms to complex multi-celled ones and generated the earth's incredible diversity of life forms. The classification system attempts to reflect the evolutionary relationships between organisms.

Initially this classification was based only on the appearance of the organism. However, the development of new techniques has advanced our scientific knowledge. The light microscope and later the electron microscope have enabled us to view the smallest structures, and now techniques for comparing DNA have begun to clarify still further the relationships between organisms. In the light of the advances in knowledge the classification has undergone numerous revisions over time.

At present most biologists divide the living world into 5 kingdoms, namely:

- bacteria
- protists
- fungi
- plants
- animal

We are concerned here almost entirely with the **Animal Kingdom**. However, we must not forget that bacteria, protists, and fungi cause many of the serious diseases that affect animals, and all animals rely either directly or indirectly on the plant world for their nourishment.

This page titled 2.3: Classification of Living Organisms is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.4: The Animal Kingdom

So what are animals? If we were suddenly confronted with an animal we had never seen in our lives before, how would we know it was not a plant or even a fungus? We all intuitively know part of the answer to this.

Animals:

- eat organic material (plants or other animals)
- move to find food
- take the food into their bodies and then digest it
- and most reproduce by fertilizing eggs by sperm

If you were tempted to add that animals are furry, run around on four legs and give birth to young that they feed on milk you were thinking only of mammals and forgetting temporarily that frogs, snakes and crocodiles, birds as well as fish, are also animals.

These are all members of the group called the **vertebrates** (or animals with a backbone) and mammals make up only about 8% of this group. The diagram on the next page shows the percentage of the different kinds of vertebrates.

Proportions of different kinds of vertebrate.JPG

However, the term animal includes much more than just the Vertebrates. In fact this group makes up only a very small portion of all animals. Take a look at the diagram below, which shows the size of the different groups of animals in the Animal Kingdom as proportions of the total number of different animal species. Notice the small size of the segment representing vertebrates! All the other animals in the Animal Kingdom are animals with no backbone, or **invertebrates**. This includes the worms, sea anemones, starfish, snails, crabs, spiders and insects. As more than 90% of the invertebrates are insects, no wonder people worry that insects may take over the world one day!

Fraction of vertebrates within the animal kingdom.jpg

This page titled 2.4: The Animal Kingdom is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates

As we have seen above the Vertebrates are divided into 5 groups or classes namely:

- Fish
- Amphibia (frogs and toads)
- Reptiles (snakes and crocodiles)
- Birds
- Mammals

These classes are all based on similarities. For instance all mammals have a similar skeleton, hair on their bodies, are warm bodied and suckle their young.

The class Mammalia (the mammals) contains 3 **subclasses**:

- Duck billed platypus and the spiny anteater
- **Marsupials** (animals like the kangaroo with pouches)
- **True mammals** (with a placenta)

Within the subclass containing the true mammals, there are groupings called **orders** that contain mammals that are more closely similar or related, than others. Examples of six mammalian orders are given below:

- Rodents (Rodentia) (rats and mice)
- Carnivores (Carnivora) (cats, dogs, bears and seals)
- Even-toed grazers (Artiodactyla) (pigs, sheep, cattle, antelopes)
- Odd-toed grazers (Perissodactyla) (horses, donkeys, zebras)
- Marine mammals (Cetacea) (whales, sea cows)
- Primates (monkeys, apes, humans)

Within each order there are various **families**. For example within the carnivore mammals are the families:

- Canidae (dog-like carnivores)
- Felidae (cat-like carnivores)

Even at this point it is possible to find groupings that are more closely related than others. These groups are called **genera** (singular genus). For instance within the cat family Felidae is the genus Felis containing the cats, as well as genera containing panthers, lynxes, and sabre toothed tigers!

The final groups within the system are the **species**. The definition of a species is a **group of animals that can mate successfully and produce fertile offspring**. This means that all domestic cats belong to the species *Felis domesticus*, because all breeds of cat whether Siamese, Manx or ordinary House hold cat can cross breed. However, domestic cats can not mate successfully with lions, tigers or jaguars, so these are placed in separate species, e.g. *Felis leo*, *Felis tigris and Felis onca*.

Even within the same species, there can be animals with quite wide variations in appearance that still breed successfully. We call these different **breeds, races** or **varieties**. For example there are many different breeds of dogs from Dalmatian to Chihuahua and of cats, from Siamese to Manx and domestic short-hairs, but all can cross breed. Often these breeds have been produced by **selective breeding** but varieties can arise in the wild when groups of animals are separated by a mountain range or sea and have developed different characteristics over long periods of time.

To summarize, the classification system consists of:

The **A**nimal **K**ingdom which is divided into

- **P**hyla which are divided into
- **C**lasses which are divided into
- **O**rders which are divided into
- **F**amilies which are divided into
- **G**enera which are divided into
- **S**pecies.

"**Kings Play Cricket On Flat Green Surfaces**" OR "**Kindly Professors Cannot Often Fail Good Students**" are just two of the phrases students use to remind themselves of the order of these categories - on the other hand you might like to invent your own.

This page titled 2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.6: Summary

- The **scientific name** of an animal has two parts, the **genus** and the **species**, and must be written in **italics** or **underlined**.
- Animals are divided into **vertebrates** and **invertebrates**.
- The classification system has groupings called **phyla**, **classes**, **orders**, **families**, **genera** and **species**.
- Furry, milk-producing animals are all in the class **Mammalia.**
- Members within a **species** can mate and produce fertile offspring.
- Sub-groups within a species include **breeds, races** and **varieties**.

This page titled 2.6: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.7: Classifications (Worksheet)

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

1. Correct the way these scientific names are written.

- Felis Catus (domestic cat)
- Mus musculus (mouse)
- Rattus norvegicus (brown rat)
- Canis Familiaris (domestic dog)
- gallus gallus (chicken)
- *Echinococcus granulosus, Linnaeus, 1758* (hydatid tapeworm)
- Rana Temporalis (frog)

2. These are the rules for writing scientific names: (Indicate whether true or false).

- There are always two parts to the name.
- There can be one or two parts to the name.
- The name is in English.
- The name is in Latin.
- The whole name is written in capital letters.
- The whole name is written in lower case letters.
- The first part of the name has a capital first letter.
- The second part of the name is all lower case.
- The name is underlined or written in italics.

3. Place these organisms in one of the five Kingdoms. (ie Plant, Animal, Fungus, Bacteria, Single celled organisms).

- Mushroom
- Octopus
- *Mycobacterium bovis* (TB bacterium)
- Pine tree
- *Plasmodium vivax* (malaria parasite)
- Flea
- Seaweed
- Elephant
- Toenail

4. Which of these belong in the Animal Kingdom?

- Carnivorous plant
- Killer whale
- Jellyfish
- Tapeworm
- Ringworm
- Earthworm
- Frog

5. Place the following Vertebrates in the right Class (i.e. Fish, Amphibian, Reptile, Bird or Mammal)

- Toad
- Hammerhead shark
- Opossum
- Rattle snake
- Emu
- Tortoise
- Ferret
- Platypus
- Tree frog
- Flounder

6. Fill in the blanks in the table below.

Characteristic/Class	FISH	AMPHIBIAN	REPTILE	MAMMAL	BIRD
HABITAT	Water	.....	.....	Land and water	.....
RESPIRATION	Gills	.....	.....	Lungs	.....
LIMBS	Fins	Weak legs	.....	.....	Wings
SKIN	Porous, wet	.....	Waterproof, dry	.....	.....
REPRODUCTION	In water, thin shelled eggs	.....	On land, thicker shelled, waterproof eggs	.....	.....
FERTILISATION	External	.....	.....	Internal	.....
TEMPERATURE CONTROL	Cold blooded (poikilothermic)	.....	.....	Warm blooded (homoiothermic)	.....

7. Mammals are divided into 3 groups, the Monotremes, Marsupials and Mammals proper. Place the following into one of these groups.

- Mouse
- Pouched mouse
- Duck billed platypus
- Guinea pig
- Wombat
- Aardvark
- Koala
- Opossum
- Ant-eater
- Wolf
- Tasman wolf

8. Place these Mammals in the correct Order (i.e. Rodent, Carnivore, Artiodactyla, Perissodactyla, Cetacea, Primates)

- Rat
- Wolf
- Goat
- Killer whale

- Donkey
- Bear
- Camel
- Spider monkey
- Cow
- Guinea pig
- Zebra
- Leopard

9. Place the following categories used in the classification of animals in the correct order i.e. From largest group to smallest.

   Genus, Order, Family, Kingdom, Class, Species, Phylum.

10. How could you tell if two animals belong to the same species?

This page titled 2.7: Classifications (Worksheet) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.8: Worksheet Answers

1. Correct the way these scientific names are written.

- *Felis catus* or Felis cattus (domestic cat)
- *Mus musculus* or Mus musculus (mouse)
- *Rattus norvegicus* or Rattus norvegicus (brown rat)
- *Canis familiaris* or Canis familiaris (domestic dog)
- *Gallus gallus* or Gallus gallus (chicken)
- *Echinococcus granulosus, Linnaeus, 1758* or Echinococcus granulosus, Linnaeus, 1758 (hydatid tapeworm). Correct already
- *Rana temporalis* or Rana temporalis (frog)

2. The rules for writing scientific names are:

- There are always two parts to the name
- The name is in Latin
- The first part of the name has a capital first letter
- The second part of the name is all lower case
- The name is written in italics or underlined

3. Place these organisms in one of the five Kingdoms. (ie Plant (P), Animal (A), Fungus (F), Bacterium (B), Single celled organisms (S)).

- Mushroom F
- Octopus A
- Mycobacterium bovis (TB bacterium) B
- Pine tree P
- Plasmodium vivax (malaria parasite) S
- Flea A
- Seaweed P
- Elephant A
- Toenail - not a living organism

4. Which of these belong in the Animal Kingdom?

- Carnivorous plant - No it is a plant
- Killer whale - Yes
- Jellyfish - Yes
- Tapeworm - Yes
- Ringworm – No, it is a fungus
- Earthworm Yes
- Frog - Yes

5. Place the following Vertebrates in the right Class (i.e. Fish (F), Amphibian (A), Reptile (R), Bird (B) or Mammal (M))

- Toad A
- Hammerhead shark F
- Opossum M
- Rattle snake R
- Emu B
- Tortoise R
- Ferret M

- Platypus M
- Tree frog A
- Flounder F

6. Fill in the blanks in the table below.

Characteristic/Class	FISH	AMPHIBIAN	REPTILE	MAMMAL	BIRD
HABITAT	Water	Water/land	Land	Land and water	Air
RESPIRATION	Gills	Gills & lungs	Lungs	Lungs	Lungs
LIMBS	Fins	Weak legs	Legs	Legs	Wings
SKIN	Porous, wet	Porous	Waterproof, dry	Waterproof with hair	Waterproof with feathers
REPRODUCTION	In water, thin shelled eggs	In water, thin shelled eggs	On land, thicker shelled, waterproof eggs	Internal gestation in uterus	Thicker shelled, waterproof eggs, on land
FERTILISATION	External	External	Internal	Internal	Internal
TEMPERATURE CONTROL	Cold blooded (poikilothermic)	Cold blooded (poikilothermic)	Cold blooded (poikilothermic)	Warm blooded (homoiothermic)	Warm blooded (homoiothermic)

7. Mammals are divided into 3 groups, the Monotremes (Mono), Marsupials (Mar) and Mammals proper (MP). Place the following into one of these groups.

- Mouse MP
- Pouched mouse Mar
- Duck billed platypus Mono
- Guinea pig Mp
- Wombat Mar
- Aardvark MP
- Koala Mar
- Opossum Mar
- Ant eater MP
- Wolf MP
- Tasman wolf Mar

8. Place these Mammals in the correct Order (i.e. Rodent (R), Carnivore(Car), Artiodactyla (A), Perissodactyla (P), Cetacea (Cet), Primates (P))

- Rat R
- Wolf Car
- Goat A
- Killer whale Cet
- Donkey P
- Bear Car
- Camel A
- Spider monkey P
- Cow A
- Guinea pig R
- Zebra P

- Leopard Car

9. Place the following categories used in the classification of animals in the correct order i.e. From largest group to smallest.

Kingdom, Phylum. Class, Order, Family, Genus, Species,

10. Two animals belong to the same species if they can mate and produce fertile offspring.

This page titled 2.8: Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.9: Answers

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

- Edit page

  Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

- Drag and drop

  Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

- Classifications

  Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

- Working with templates

  CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

- Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 2.9: Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.10: Test Yourself

1a) True or False. Is this name written correctly? trichosurus Vulpecula.

1b) What do you need to change?

2. Rearrange these groups from the biggest to the smallest:

a) cars | diesel cars | motor vehicles | my diesel Toyota | transportation

b) Class | Species | Phylum | Genus | Order | Kingdom | Family

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 2.10: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.11: Websites

Classification

- http://www.mcwdn.org/Animals/AnimalClassQuiz.html Animal classification quiz

In fact much more than that. There is an elementary cell biology and classification quiz but the best thing about this website are the links to tables of characteristics of the different animal groups, for animals both with and without backbones.

- http://animaldiversity.ummz.umich.edu/site/index.html Animal diversity web

Careful! You could waste all day exploring this wonderful website. Chose an animal or group of animals you want to know about and you will see not only the classification but photos and details of distribution, behaviour and conservation status etc.

- http://www.indianchild.com/animal_kingdom.htm Indian child

Nice clear explanation of the different categories used in the classification of animals.

This page titled 2.11: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: The Cell

3.1: The Cell
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.4: The Nucleus
3.5: Cell Division
3.6: The Cell As A Factory
3.7: Summary
3.8: Worksheets
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers
3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers
3.17: Test Yourself
3.18: Websites

This page titled 3: The Cell is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.1: The Cell

***Diagram 3.1**: A variety of animal cells*

The cell is the basic building block of living organisms. Bacteria and the parasite that causes malaria consist of single cells, while plants and animals are made up of trillions of cells. Most cells are spherical or cube shaped but some are a range of different shapes (see diagram 3.1).

Most cells are so small that a microscope is needed to see them, although a few cells, e.g. the ostrich's egg, are so large that they could make a meal for several people.

A normal cell is about 0.02 of a millimetre (0.02mm) in diameter. (Small distances like this are normally expressed in micrometres or microns (µm). Note there are 1000 µms in every mm).

***Diagram 3.2**: An animal cell*

When you look at a typical animal cell with a light microscope it seems quite simple with only a few structures visible (see diagram 3.2).

Three main parts can be seen:

- an outer cell membrane (plasma membrane),
- an inner region called the cytoplasm and
- the nucleus

***Diagram 3.3**: An animal cell as seen with an electron microscope*

However, when you use an electron microscope to increase the magnification many thousands of times you see that these seemingly simple structures are incredibly complex, each with its own specialized function. For example the plasma membrane is seen to be a double layer and the cytoplasm contains many special structures called **organelles** (meaning little organs) which are described below. A drawing of the cell as seen with an electron microscope is shown in diagram 3.3.

This page titled 3.1: The Cell is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.2: The Plasma Membrane

The thin plasma membrane surrounds the cell, separating its contents from the surroundings and controlling what enters and leaves the cell. The plasma membrane is composed of two main molecules,phospholipids(fats) and proteins. The phospholipids are arranged in a double layer with the large protein molecules dotted about in the membrane (see diagram 3.4). Some of the protein molecules form tiny channels in the membrane while others help transport substances from one side of the membrane to the other.

Diagram 3.4*: The structure of the plasma membrane*

How substances move across the Plasma Membrane

Substances need to pass through the membrane to enter or leave the cell and they do so in a number of ways. Some of these processes require no energy i.e. they are passive, while others require energy i.e. they are **active**.

Passive processes include: a) diffusion and b) osmosis, while active processes include: c) active transport, d) phagocytosis, e) pinocytosis and f) exocytosis. These will be described below.

Diffusion

Although you may not know it, you are already familiar with the process of diffusion. It is diffusion that causes a smell (expensive perfume or smelly socks) in one part of the room to gradually move through the room so it can be smelt on the other side. Diffusion occurs in the air and in liquids.

Diagram 3.5 shows what happens when a few crystals of a dark purple dye called potassium permanganate are dropped into a beaker of water. The dye molecules diffuse into the water moving from high to low concentrations so they become evenly distributed throughout the beaker.

Diagram 3.5: Diffusion in a liquid

In the body, diffusion causes molecules that are in a high concentration on one side of the cell membrane to move across the membrane until they are present in equal concentrations on both sides. It takes place because all molecules have an in-built vibration that causes them to move and collide until they are evenly distributed. It is an absolutely natural process that requires no added energy.

Small molecules like oxygen, carbon dioxide, water and ammonia as well as fats, diffuse directly through the double fat layer of the membrane. The small molecules named above as well as a variety of charged particles (ions) also diffuse through the protein-lined channels. Larger molecules like glucose attach to a carrier molecule that aids their diffusion through the membrane. This is called **facilitated diffusion**.

In the animal's body diffusion is important for moving oxygen and carbon dioxide between the lungs and the blood, for moving digested food molecules from the gut into the blood and for the removal of waste products from the cell.

Osmosis

Although the word may be unfamiliar, you are almost certainly acquainted with the effects of osmosis. It is osmosis that plumps out dried fruit when you soak it before making a fruit cake or makes that wizened old carrot look almost like new when you soak it in water. Osmosis is in fact the diffusion of water across a membrane that allows water across but not larger molecules. This kind of membrane is called a **semi-permeable membrane**.

***Diagram 3.6**: Osmosis*

Take a look at side **A** of diagram 3.6. It shows a container divided into two parts by an artificial semi-permeable membrane. Water is poured into one part while a solution containing salt is poured into the other part. Water can cross the membrane but the salt cannot. The water crosses the semi-permeable membrane by diffusion until there is an equal amount of water on both sides of the membrane. The effect of this would be to make the salt solution more diluted and cause the level of the liquid in the right-hand side of the container to rise so it looked like side **B** of diagram 3.6. This movement of water across the semi-permeable membrane is called osmosis. It is a completely natural process that requires no outside energy.

Although it would be difficult to do in practice, imagine that you could now take a plunger and push down on the fluid in the right-hand side of container **B** so that it flowed back across the semi-permeable membrane until the level of fluid on both sides was equal again. If you could measure the pressure required to do this, this would be equal to the **osmotic pressure** of the salt solution. (This is a rather advanced concept at this stage but you will meet this term again when you study fluid balance later in the course).

***Diagram 3.7**: Osmosis in red cells placed in a hypotonic solution*

The plasma membrane of cells acts as a semi-permeable membrane. If red blood cells, for example, are placed in water, the water crosses the membrane to make the amount of water on both sides of it equal (see diagram 3.7). This means that the water moves into the cell causing it to swell. This can occur to such an extent that the cell actually bursts to release its contents. This bursting of red blood cells is called **haemolysis**. In a situation such as this when the solution on one side of a semi-permeable membrane has a lower concentration than that on the other side, the first solution is said to be **hypotonic** to the second.

***Diagram 3.8**: Osmosis in red cells placed in a hypertonic solution*

Now think what would happen if red blood cells were placed in a salt solution that has a higher salt concentration than the solution within the cells (see diagram 3.8). Such a bathing solution is called a **hypertonic** solution. In this situation the "concentration" of water within the cells would be higher than that outside the cells. Osmosis (diffusion of water) would then occur from the inside of the cells to the outside solution, causing the cells to shrink.

***Diagram 3.9**: Red cells placed in an isotonic solution*

A solution that contains 0.9% salt has the same concentration as body fluids and the solution within red cells. Cells placed in such a solution would neither swell nor shrink (see diagram 3.9). This solution is called an **isotonic** solution. This strength of salt solution is often called **normal saline** and is used when replacing an animal's body fluids or when cells like red blood cells have to be suspended in fluid.

Remember - osmosis is a special kind of diffusion. It is the diffusion of water molecules across a semi-permeable membrane. It is a completely passive process and requires no energy.

Sometimes it is difficult to remember which way the water molecules move. Although it is not strictly true in a biological sense, many students use the phrase **"SALT SUCKS"** to help them remember which way water moves across the membrane when there are two solutions of different salt concentrations on either side.

As we have seen water moves in and out of the cell by osmosis. All water movement from the intestine into the blood system and between the blood capillaries and the fluid around the cells (tissue or extra cellular fluid) takes place by osmosis. Osmosis is also important in the production of concentrated urine by the kidney.

Active Transport

When a substance is transported from a low concentration to a high concentration i.e. uphill against the concentration gradient, energy has to be used. This is called **active transport**.

Active transport is important in maintaining different concentrations of the ions sodium and potassium on either side of the nerve cell membrane. It is also important for removing valuable molecules such as glucose, amino acids and sodium ions from the urine.

***Diagram 3.10**: Phagocytosis*

d) Phagocytosis

Phagocytosis is sometimes called “cell eating”. It is a process that requires energy and is used by cells to move solid particles like bacteria across the plasma membrane. Finger-like projections from the plasma membrane surround the bacteria and engulf them as shown in diagram 3.10. Once within the cell, enzymes produced by the lysosomes of the cell (described later) destroy the bacteria.

The destruction of bacteria and other foreign substance by white blood cells by the process of phagocytosis is a vital part of the defense mechanisms of the body.

e) Pinocytosis

Pinocytosis or “cell drinking” is a very similar process to phagocytosis but is used by cells to move fluids across the plasma membrane. Most cells carry out pinocytosis (note the pinocytotic vesicle in diagram 3.3).

f) Exocytosis

Exocytosis is the process by means of which substances formed in the cell are moved through the plasma membrane into the fluid outside the cell (or extra-cellular fluid). It occurs in all cells but is most important in secretory cells (e.g. cells that produce digestive enzymes) and nerve cells.

This page titled 3.2: The Plasma Membrane is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.3: The Cytoplasm

Within the plasma membrane is the **cytoplasm**. It consists of a clear jelly-like fluid called the a) **cytosol** or **intracellular fluid** in which b) **cell inclusions**, c) **organelles** and d) **microfilaments** and **microtubules** are found.

a) Cytosol

The cytosol consists mainly of water in which various molecules are dissolved or suspended. These molecules include proteins, fats and carbohydrates as well as sodium, potassium, calcium and chloride ions. Many of the reactions that take place in the cell occur in the cytosol.

b) Cell inclusions

These are large particles of fat, glycogen and melanin that have been produced by the cell. They are often large enough to be seen with the light microscope. For example the cells of adipose tissue (as in the insulating fat layer under the skin) contain fat that takes up most of the cell.

c) Organelles

Organelles are the “little organs” of the cell - like the heart, kidney and liver are the organs of the body. They are structures with characteristic appearances and specific “jobs” in the cell. Most can not be seen with the light microscope and so it was only when the electron microscope was developed that they were discovered. The main organelles in the cell are the **ribosomes, endoplasmic reticulum, mitochondrion, Golgi complex** and **lysosomes**. A cell containing these organelles as seen with the electron microscope is shown in diagram 3.3.

Ribosomes

Diagram 3.11: Rough endoplasmic reticulum

Ribosomes are tiny spherical organelles that make proteins by joining amino acids together. Many ribosomes are found free in the cytosol, while others are attached to the rough endoplasmic reticulum.

Endoplasmic reticulum

The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** is a network of membranes that form channels throughout the cytoplasm from the nucleus to the plasma membrane. Various molecules are made in the ER and transported around the cell in its channels. There are two types of ER: smooth ER and rough ER.

> **Smooth ER** is where the fats in the cell are made and in some cells, where chemicals like alcohol, pesticides and carcinogenic molecules are inactivated.
>
> The **Rough ER** has ribosomes attached to its surface. The function of the Rough ER is therefore to make proteins that are modified stored and transported by the ER (Diagram 3.11).

Mitochondria

Diagram 3.12: A mitochondrion

Mitochondria (singular mitochondrion) are oval or rod shaped organelles scattered throughout the cytoplasm. They consist of two membranes, the inner one of which is folded to increase its surface area. (Diagram 3.12)

Mitochondria are the "power stations" of the cell. They make energy by "burning" food molecules like glucose. This process is called **cellular respiration**. The reaction requires oxygen and produces carbon dioxide which is a waste product. The process is very complex and takes place in a large number of steps but the overall word equation for cellular respiration is-

Glucose + oxygen = carbon dioxide + water + energy

or $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 = 6CO_2 + 6H_2O$ + **energy**

Note that cellular respiration is different from respiration or breathing. Breathing is the means by which air is drawn into and expelled from the lungs. Breathing is necessary to supply the cells with the oxygen required by the mitochondria and to remove the carbon dioxide produced as a waste product of cellular respiration.

Active cells like muscle, liver, kidney and sperm cells have large numbers of mitochondria.

Golgi Apparatus

Diagram 3.13: A Golgi body

The **Golgi bodies** in a cell together make up the **Golgi apparatus**. Golgi bodies are found near the nucleus and consist of flattened membranes stacked on top of each other rather like a pile of plates (see diagram 3.13). The Golgi apparatus modifies and sorts the proteins and fats made by the ER, then surrounds them in a membrane as **vesicles** so they can be moved to other parts of the cell.

Lysosomes

Lysosomes are large vesicles that contain digestive enzymes. These break down bacteria and other substances that are brought into the cell by phagocytosis or pinocytosis. They also digest worn-out or damaged organelles, the components of which can then be recycled by the cell to make new structures.

d) Microfilaments And Microtubules

Some cells can move and change shape and organelles and chemicals are moved around the cell. Threadlike structures called **microfilaments** and **microtubules** that can contract are responsible for this movement.

These structures also form the projections from the plasma membrane known as **flagella** (singular flagellum) as in the sperm tail, and **cilia** found lining the respiratory tract and used to remove mucus that has trapped dust particles (see chapter 4).

Microtubules also form the pair of cylindrical structures called **centrioles** found near the nucleus. These help organise the spindle used in cell division.

This page titled 3.3: The Cytoplasm is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.4: The Nucleus

Diagram 3.14: A cell with an enlarged chromosome

Diagram 3.15: A full set of human chromosomes

The **nucleus** is the largest structure in a cell and can be seen with the light microscope. It is a spherical or oval body that contains the **chromosomes**. The nucleus controls the development and activity of the cell. Most cells contain a nucleus although mature red blood cells have lost theirs during development and some muscle cells have several nuclei.

A double membrane similar in structure to the plasma membrane surrounds the nucleus (now called the nuclear envelope). Pores in this nuclear membrane allow communication between the nucleus and the cytoplasm.

Within the nucleus one or more spherical bodies of darker material can be seen, even with the light microscope. These are called **nucleoli** and are made of RNA. Their role is to make new ribosomes.

Chromosomes

Inside the nucleus are the chromosomes which:

- contain DNA;
- control the activity of the cell;
- are transmitted from cell to cell when cells divide;
- are passed to a new individual when sex cells fuse together in sexual reproduction.

In cells that are not dividing the chromosomes are very long and thin and appear as dark grainy material. They become visible just before a cell divides when they shorten and thicken and can then be counted (see diagram 3.14).

The number of chromosomes in the cells of different species varies but is constant in the cells of any one species (e.g. horses have 64 chromosomes, cats have 38 and humans 46). Chromosomes occur in pairs (i.e. 32 pairs in the horse nucleus and 19 in that of the cat). Members of each pair are identical in length and shape and if you look carefully at diagram 3.15, you may be able to see some of the pairs in the human set of chromosomes.

This page titled 3.4: The Nucleus is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.5: Cell Division

Diagram 3.16: Division by mitosis results in 2 new cells identical to each other and to parent cell

Diagram 3.17: Division by meiosis results in 4 new cells that are genetically different to each other

Cells divide when an animal grows, when its body repairs an injury and when it produces sperm and eggs (or ova). There are two types of cell division: **Mitosis** and **meiosis**.

Mitosis. This is the cell division that occurs when an animal grows and when tissues are repaired or replaced. It produces two new cells (daughter cells) each with a full set of chromosomes that are identical to each other and to the parent cell. All the cells of an animal's body therefore contain identical DNA.

Meiosis. This is the cell division that produces the ova and sperm necessary for sexual reproduction. It only occurs in the ovary and testis.

The most important function of meiosis it to halve the number of chromosomes so that when the sperm fertilises the ovum the normal number is regained. Body cells with the full set of chromosomes are called **diploid** cells, while **gametes** (sperm and ova) with half the chromosomes are called **haploid** cells.

Meiosis is a more complex process than mitosis as it involves two divisions one after the other and the four cells produced are all genetically different from each other and from the parent cell.

This fact that the cells formed by meiosis are all genetically different from each other and from the parent cell can be seen in litters of kittens where all the members of the litter are different from each other as well as being different from the parents although they display characteristics of both.

This page titled 3.5: Cell Division is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.6: The Cell As A Factory

To make the function of the parts of the cell easier to understand and remember you can compare them to a factory. For example:

- The nucleus (1) is the managing director of the factory consulting the blueprint (the chromosomes) (2);
- The mitochondria (3) supply the power
- The ribosomes (4) make the products;
- The chloroplasts of plant cells (5) supply the fuel (food)
- The Golgi apparatus (6) packages the products ready for dispatch;
- The ER (7) modifies, stores and transports the products around the factory;
- The plasma membrane is the factory wall and the gates (8);
- The lysosomes dispose of the waste and worn-out machinery.
- The cell compared to a factory

This page titled 3.6: The Cell As A Factory is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.7: Summary

- Cells consist of three parts: the **plasma membrane, cytoplasm** and **nucleus**.
- Substances pass through the plasma membrane by **diffusion**(gases, lipids), **osmosis** (water), **active transport** (glucose, ions), **phagocytosis** (particles), **pinocytosis** (fluids) and **exocytosis** (particles and fluids).
- **Osmosis** is the diffusion of **water** through a **semipermeable membrane**. Water diffuses from high water "concentration" to low water "concentration".
- The cytoplasm consists of **cytosol** in which are suspended **cell inclusions** and **organelles**.
- organelles include **ribosomes, endoplasmic reticulum, mitochondria, Golgi bodies** and **lysosomes**.
- The **nucleus** controls the activity of the cell. It contains the **chromosomes** that are composed of **DNA**.
- The cell divides by **mitosis** and **meiosis**

This page titled 3.7: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.8: Worksheets

There are several worksheets you can use to help you understand and learn about the cell.

Plasma Membrane Worksheet

Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1

Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2

Cell Division Worksheet

This page titled 3.8: Worksheets is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

1. The two most important functions of the plasma membrane are:

   1.
   2.

2. The best definition of Homeostasis is:

   a) Keeping a constant temperature inside a cell or organism despite external changes.

   b) Keeping constant conditions within a cell or organism despite external changes.

   c) Keeping a constant pH inside a cell or organism despite external changes.

   d) Keeping constant conditions outside a cell or organismdespite internal changes.

3. The two most abundant molecules in the plasma membrane are:

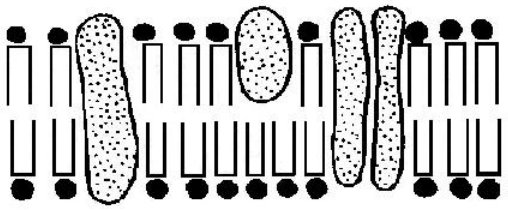
   1.
   2.

4. This is true of the structure of the plasma membrane:

   a) It is a double layer of protein molecules with phospholipid molecules randomly dotted through it
   b) It is single layer of phospholipid molecules
   c) It is a double layer of phospholipid molecules with protein molecules dotted in it.
   d) It is single layer of protein molecules with phospholipids dotted in it.

5. Add the following labels to the diagram of the plasma membrane shown below.

   protein molecules; protein channel; double layer of phospholipid molecules



This page titled 3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers

Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers

1. The two most important functions of the plasma membrane are two of:

    1. *The plasma membrane defines and encloses the cell;*
    2. *It is the boundary between intra and extracellular fluid;*
    3. *It is selectively permeable i.e. it maintains homeostasis.*

2. The best definition of Homeostasis is:

    a) Keeping a constant temperature inside a cell or organism despite external changes.

    b) Keeping constant conditions within a cell or organism despite external changes.

    c) Keeping a constant pH inside a cell or organism despite external changes.

    d) Keeping constant conditions outside a cell or organism despite internal changes.

3. The two most abundant molecules in the plasma membrane are:

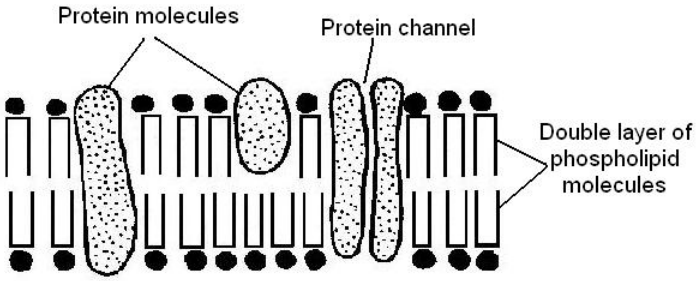
    1. *Proteins*
    2. *Phospholipids (or fats or lipids)*

4. This is true of the structure of the plasma membrane:

    a) It is a double layer of protein molecules with phospholipid molecules randomly dotted through it
    b) It is single layer of phospholipid molecules
    c) *It is a double layer of phospholipid molecules with protein molecules dotted in it.*
    d) It is single layer of protein molecules with phospholipids dotted in it.

5. Add the following labels to the diagram of the plasma membrane shown below.

    protein molecules; protein channel; double layer of phospholipid molecules



This page titled 3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

1. List 5 mechanisms by which molecules pass through the plasma membrane.

State whether these mechanisms are passive or active (ie use energy or not).

Mechanism for crossing plasma membrane	Passive or Active?
1.	?
2.	?
3.	?
4.	?
5.	?

2. Which mechanism:

a.) uses no energy and results in an even distribution of molecules?
b) uses no energy, and occurs across a semi-permeable membrane?
c) occurs across the membrane of red blood cells causing them to swell and burst when placed in distilled water?
d) uses energy and allows the cell to take into itself particles and bacteria?
e) moves substances across the plasma membrane from a low to a high concentration?
f) uses a carrier molecule to help substances across a membrane but does not require energy?

3. Circle the correct statements below.

Diffusion is a process that:

a) occurs in liquid and gases
b) only occurs in liquids
c) uses energy
d) uses no energy
e) occurs naturally
f) occurs from a lower concentration of molecules to a higher concentration
g) occurs from a higher concentration of molecules to a lower one
h) results in an even distribution of molecules
i) only occurs with small molecules like water
j) is more rapid at low temperatures
k) is more rapid at high temperatures

4. Circle the correct statements below.

Osmosis:

a) is a special kind of diffusion
b) only occurs in gases
c) is not a natural process
d) is the diffusion of water molecules only
e) is the diffusion of water molecules from a high concentration of water to a low concentration of water
f) requires a semi-permeable membrane
g) requires energy
h) results in an even dispersal of water molecules
i) results in an even distribution of salt molecules

5. A **semi-permeable membrane** is a membrane that:

a) allows some molecules to go through but not others
b) allows all molecules to go through
c) is different on each side
d) is partly made from permeable compounds

6. **Active transport**:

a) uses energy
b) uses no energy
c) occurs from a lower concentration of molecules to a higher concentration
d) occurs from a higher concentration of molecules to a lower one
e) results in an even distribution of molecules
f) only occurs with small molecules like water

7. **Oxygen** crosses the plasma membrane by:

a) diffusion via the channels
b) active transport
c) diffusion through the lipid bilayer
d) facilitated diffusion
e) osmosis

8. **Water** crosses the plasma membrane by:

a) diffusion via the channels
b) active transport
c) diffusion through the lipid bilayer
d) facilitated diffusion
e) osmosis

9. **Lipid soluble** molecules cross the plasma membrane by:

a) diffusion via the channels
b) active transport
c) diffusion through the lipid bilayer
d) facilitated diffusion
e) osmosis

f) pinocytosis

g) phagocytosis

10 **Sodium ions** move from a low to a high concentration across the plasma membrane by:

a) diffusion via the channels

b) active transport

c) diffusion through the lipid bilayer

d) facilitated diffusion

e) osmosis

f) pinocytosis

g) phagocytosis

11 **Glucose molecules** cross the plasma membrane by:

a) diffusion via the channels

b) active transport

c) diffusion through the lipid bilayer

d) facilitated diffusion

e) osmosis

f) pinocytosis

g) phagocytosis

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1 is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers

1. List 5 mechanisms by which molecules pass through the plasma membrane. State whether these mechanisms are passive or active (ie use energy or not).

Mechanism for crossing plasma membrane	Passive or Active?
1. Diffusion	Passive
2. Facilitated diffusion	Passive
3. Osmosis	Passive
4. Active transport	Active
5. Pinocytosis/phagocytosis/exocytosis	Active

2. Which mechanism:

a.) uses no energy and results in an even distribution of molecules? *Diffusion*

b) uses no energy, and occurs across a semi-permeable membrane? *Osmosis*

c) occurs across the membrane of red blood cells causing them to swell and burst when placed in distilled water? *Osmosis*

d) uses energy and allows the cell to take into itself particles and bacteria? *Phagocytosis*

e) moves substances across the plasma membrane from a low to a high concentration? *Active transport*

f) uses a carrier molecule to help substances across a membrane but does not require energy? *Facilitated diffusion*

3. Circle the correct statements below.

Diffusion is a process that:

a) *occurs in liquid and gases*

d) *uses no energy*

e) *occurs naturally*

g) *occurs from a higher concentration of molecules to a lower one*.

h) *results in an even distribution of molecules*

k) *is more rapid at high tempera*tures.

4. Circle the correct statements below.

Osmosis:

a) *is a special kind of diffusion*.

d) *is the diffusion of water molecules only*.

e) *is the diffusion of water molecules from a high concentration of water to a low concentration of water*.

f) *requires a semi-permeable membrane*.

h) *results in an even dispersal of water molecules*.

5. A **semi-permeable membrane** is a membrane that:

a) *allows some molecules to go through but not others*.

6. **Active transport**:

a) *uses energy*.

c) *occurs from a lower concentration of molecules to a higher concentration*.

7. **Oxygen** crosses the plasma membrane by:

c) *diffusion through the lipid bilayer*.

8. **Water** crosses the plasma membrane by:

e) *osmosis*.

9. **Lipid soluble** molecules cross the plasma membrane by:

c) *diffusion through the lipid bilayer*.

10 **Sodium ions** move from a low to a high concentration across the plasma membrane by:

b) *active transport*.

11 **Glucose molecules** cross the plasma membrane by:

d) *facilitated diffusion*.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

1. Circle the correct answer.

a) When red blood cells are placed in an isotonic solution they:

swell / stay the same / shrink.

b) Red blood cells are isotonic to:

distilled water / 0.2% salt solution / 0.9% salt solution / 2.0% salt solution.

c) Red blood cells placed in a 2.0% salts solution would:

swell / stay the same / shrink.

d) Red blood cells placed in distilled water would:

swell / stay the same / shrink.

e) When red blood cells are placed in distilled water:

the water enters the cells / the water leaves the cells / the water does not move / the salts in the cells leave the cells

f) Red blood cells placed in a 0.9% salt solution would:

swell / stay the same / shrink.

g) Red blood cells placed in distilled water are in a:

hypertonic / isotonic / hypotonic solution.

h) Red blood cells placed in 0.9% salt solution are in a:

hypotonic / isotonic / hypertonic solution.

i) Red blood cells placed in a 2.0% salt solution are in a:

hypotonic / isotonic / hypertonic solution.

j) A dialysis bag (made of an artificial semi-permeable membrane) filled with 0.5% salt solution and placed in a beaker containing 3.0% salt solution will:

swell / stay the same / shrink.

2. Three bottles are filled with three different solutions. One with distilled water, one with 0.9% salt solution and the third with 9.0% salt solution. A few dried apricots are placed in the three bottles and left in the solutions for an hour.

The apricots in bottle A stay the same.

The apricots in bottle B shrink

The apricots in bottle C swell.

Now answer the following questions:

i) Which bottle contains the most concentrated salt solution? A B C

ii) Which bottle contains water? A B C

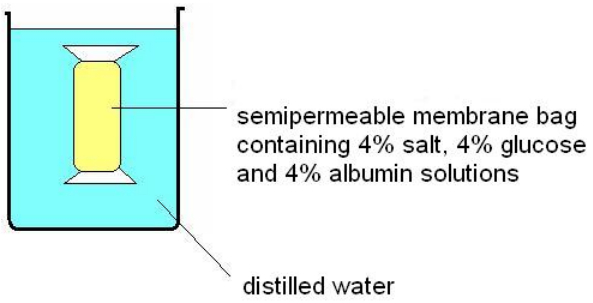
iii) Which bottle contains the isotonic salt solution? A B C

iv) Which bottle contains the hypotonic solution? A B C

v) Which bottle contains the hypertonic salt solution A B C

3. Now try this one!

A semi - permeable membrane (dialysis) bag, containing 4% salt, 4% glucose and 4% albumin is suspended in distilled water. Assume the bag is permeable to all substances except albumin.



Circle the correct answer in the statements below.

(Note that salt has quite a small molecule, glucose has a moderate sized molecule and albumin is a protein with a very large sized molecule.)

a) The **salt**: moves into the bag / moves out of the bag / does not move

b) The **water**: moves into the bag / moves out of the bag / does not move

c) The **albumin**: moves into the bag / moves out of the bag / does not move

d) The **glucose**: moves into the bag / moves out of the bag / does not move

e) The **salt** moves by: diffusion / osmosis / active transport / it does not move because the molecules are too large.

f) The **water** moves by: diffusion / osmosis / active transport / it does not move because the molecules are too large.

g) The **albumin** moves by: diffusion / osmosis / active transport / it does not move because the molecules are too large.

h) The **glucose** moves by: diffusion / osmosis / active transport / it does not move because the molecules are too large.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.14: Cell Division Worksheet

1. Complete these sentences with the choices below

78; chromosomes; 39; DNA; specific; haploid; diploid; gametes; inherited characteristics

a) Every cell has tiny rod shaped bodies called.....

b) Genes determine the .....of an animal.

c) Each cell of a dog has 39 pairs of chromosomes. This is a total of .....single chromosomes.

d) Every organism has a .....number of chromosomes.

e) The chemical compound that makes up the chromosomes is.....

f) A dog sperm or egg has .....single chromosomes.

g) Body cells have the chromosomes in pairs. These cells are known as .....cells.

h) Egg and sperm cells are known as .....

i) Egg and sperm cells have a single set of chromosomes. They are known as .....cells.

2. Add the type of cell division: **Mitosis, Meiosis or Both.**

a) The cell division that produces the sperm and egg is called .....

b) The cell division taking place in all tissues for growth and repair is called.....

c) The cell division that occurs immediately after the ovum is fertilised by the sperm is called .....

d) The cell division that produces haploid cells is called.....

e) The cell division that produces diploid cells is called .....

3. Circle the correct choice. **Meiosis** only occurs in the:

a) sperm cells
b) egg cells
c) ovary and testis
d) skin

4. Circle the correct choice. During **meiosis**:

a) the number of chromosomes are doubled
b) the number of chromosomes stay the same
c) the number of chromosomes are halved
d) the chromosomes become DNA

5. A gamete has: half / twice the number of chromosomes that a body cells has.

6. If the gamete of a mosquito has 3 chromosomes, how many chromosomes are there in the body cells?.....

7. If the body cells of chickens have 18 chromosomes, how many chromosomes are there in the sperm cells?.....

8. If the sperm and eggs cells of the housefly have 6 chromosomes, how many cells are there in the maggot?.....

9. If human gametes have 23 chromosomes, how many pairs of chromosomes are there in human body cells?.....

10. The tissue(s) where mitosis occurs most rapidly is the:

brain / muscle / skin / intestinal wall / adult bone / blood / bone marrow

11. Complete the following table:

	MITOSIS	**MEIOSIS**
Purpose of division	Growth and repair	.....
Where process occurs in body	.....	.....
Number of chromosomes in daughter cells after division	.....	Half original number
Daughter cells are:	Identical to parent cell	.....

This page titled 3.14: Cell Division Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers

1. Complete these sentence.

   a) Every cell has tiny rod shaped bodies called *chromosomes*

   b) Genes determine the *inherited characteristics* of an animal.

   c) Each cell of a dog has 39 pairs of chromosomes. This is a total of *78* single chromosomes.

   d) Every organism has a *specific* number of chromosomes.

   e) The chemical compound that makes up the chromosomes is *DNA*

   f) A dog sperm or egg has *39* single chromosomes.

   g) Body cells have the chromosomes in pairs. These cells are known as *diploid* cells.

   h) Egg and sperm cells are known as *gametes*

   i) Egg and sperm cells have a single set of chromosomes. They are known as *haploid* cells.

2. Add the type of cell division: **Mitosis, Meiosis or Both.**

   a) The cell division that produces the sperm and egg is called *Meiosis*

   b) The cell division taking place in all tissues for growth and repair is called *Mitosis*

   c) The cell division that occurs immediately after the ovum is fertilised by the sperm is called *Mitosis*

   d) The cell division that produces haploid cells is called *Meiosis*

   e) The cell division that produces diploid cells is called *Mitosis*

3. Circle to correct choice. **Meiosis** only occurs in the: *c) ovary and testis*
4. Circle to correct choice. During **meiosis**: c) the number of chromosomes are halved
5. A gamete has: *half* the number of chromosomes that a body cells has.
6. If the gamete of a mosquito has 3 chromosomes, how many chromosomes are there in the body cells? *6*
7. If the body cells of chickens have 18 chromosomes, how many chromosomes are there in the sperm cells? *9*
8. If the sperm and eggs cells of the housefly have 6 chromosomes, how many chromosomes are there in the maggot? *12*
9. If human gametes have 23 chromosomes, how many pairs of chromosomes are there in human body cells? *23*
10. The tissues where mitosis occurs most rapidly are the:

    skin / intestinal wall / bone marrow

11. Complete the following table:

	MITOSIS	MEIOSIS
Purpose of division	Growth and repair	Production of gametes/ sexual reproduction
Where process occurs in body	In all body cells	Only in gonads-ovary & testis
Number of chromosomes in daughter cells after division	Same as in parent call	Half the number in the parent cell
Daughter cells are:	Identical to parent cell & each other	Different to parent cell & to each other

This page titled 3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers

1. Circle the correct answer.

a) When red blood cells are placed in an isotonic solution they:*stay the same*

b) Red blood cells are isotonic to: *0.9% salt solution*

c) Red blood cells placed in a 2.0% salts solution would: *shrink.*

d) Red blood cells placed in distilled water would: *swell*

e) When red blood cells are placed in distilled water: *the water enters the cells*

f) Red blood cells placed in a 0.9% salt solution would: *stay the same*

g) Red blood cells placed in distilled water are in a: *hypotonic solution.*

h) Red blood cells placed in 0.9% salt solution are in an:*isotonic solution*

i) Red blood cells placed in a 2.0% salt solution are in a:*hypertonic solution.*

j) A dialysis bag (made of an artificial semi-permeable membrane) filled with 0.5% salt solution and placed in a beaker containing 3.0% salt solution will: *shrink.*

2. Three bottles are filled with three different solutions. One with distilled water, one with 0.9% salt solution and the third with 9.0% salt solution. A few dried apricots are placed in the three bottles and left in the solutions for an hour.

The apricots in bottle A stay the same.
The apricots in bottle B shrink
The apricots in bottle C swell.

Now answer the following questions:

i) Which bottle contains the most concentrated salt solution? *B*

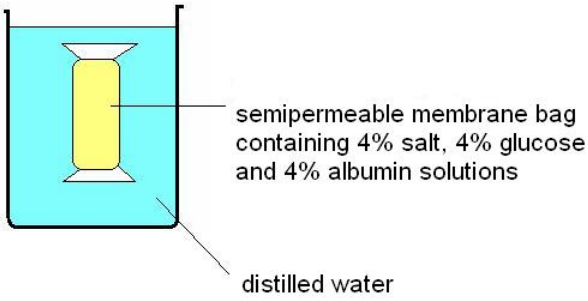
ii) Which bottle contains water? *C*

iii) Which bottle contains the isotonic salt solution? *A*

iv) Which bottle contains the hypotonic solution? *C*

v) Which bottle contains the hypertonic salt solution? *B*

3.A semi - permeable membrane (dialysis) bag, containing 4% salt, 4% glucose and 4% albumin is suspended in distilled water. Assume the bag is permeable to all substances except albumin.



a) The **salt**: *moves out of the bag*

b) The **water**: *moves into the bag*

c) The **albumin**: *does not move*

d) The **glucose**: *moves out of the bag*

e) The **salt** moves by: *diffusion*

f) The **water** moves by: *osmosis*

g) The **albumin** moves by: *it does not move because the molecules are too large.*

h) The **glucose** moves by: *diffusion*

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.17: Test Yourself

You can then test yourself to see how much you remember.

1. Complete the table below:

	Requires energy	Requires a semi permeable membrane?	Is the movement of water molecules only?	Molecules move from high to low concentration?	Molecules move from low to high concentration?
Diffusion	?	?	?	Yes	?
Osmosis	?	?	?	?	?
Active Transport	?	Yes	?	?	Yes

2. Red blood cells placed in a 5% salt solution would:

swell/stay the same/ shrink?

3. Red blood cells placed in a 0.9% solution of salt would be in a:

hypotonic/isotonic/hypertonic solution?

4. White blood cells remove foreign bodies like bacteria from the body by engulfing them. This process is known as ……

5. Match the organelle in the left hand column of the table below with its function in the right hand column.

Organelle	Function
a. Nucleus	1. Modifies proteins and fats
b. Mitochondrion	2. Makes, modifies and stores proteins
c. Golgi body	3. Digests worn out organelles
d. Rough endoplasmic reticulum	4. Makes fats
e. Lysosome	5. Controls the activity of the cell proteins
f. Smooth endoplasmic reticulum	6. Produces energy

6. The cell division that causes an organism to grow and repairs tissues is called:

7. The cell division that produces sperm and ova is called:

8. TWO important differences between the two types of cell division named by you above are:

a.

b.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 3.17: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.18: Websites

- http://www.cellsalive.com/ Cells alive

  Cells Alive gives good animations of the animal cell.

- Cell Wikipedia

  Wikipedia is good for almost anything you want to know about cells. Just watch as there is much more here than you need to know.

- personal.tmlp.com/Jimr57/text...3/chapter3.htm Virtual cell

  The Virtual Cell has beautiful pictures of lots of (virtual?) cell organelles.

- http://www.wisc-online.com/objects/i...?objid=AP11403 Typical animal cell

  Great interactive animal cell.

- http://www.wiley.com/college/apcentral/anatomydrill/ Anatomy drill and practice

  Cell to test yourself on by dragging labels.

- http://www.maxanim.com/physiology/index.htm Max Animations

  Great animations here of diffusion, osmosis, facilitated diffusion, endo- and exocytosis and the development and action of lysosomes. A bit higher level than you need but still not to be missed.

- http://www.stolaf.edu/people/giannin.../diffusion.swf Diffusion

  Diffusion animation - good and clear.

- www.tvdsb.on.ca/westmin/scien...ls/Osmosis.htm Osmosis

  Nice simple osmosis animation.

- zoology.okstate.edu/zoo_lrc/b..._Animation.htm Osmosis

  Diffusion and osmosis. Watch what happens to the water and the solute molecules.

- http://www.wisc-online.com/objects/i...?objid=NUR4004 Osmotic Pressure

  Do an online experiment to illustrate osmosis and osmotic pressure.

- http://www.stolaf.edu/people/giannini/flashanimat/transport/osmosis.swf Osmosis

  Even better osmosis demonstration - you get to add the salt.

Contributors and Attributions

- Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 3.18: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Body Organization

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the “Mrs Gren” characteristics of living organisms
- what a tissue is
- four basic types of tissues, their general function and where they are found in the body
- the basic organisation of the body of vertebrates including the main body cavities and the location of the following major organs: thorax, heart, lungs, thymus, abdomen, liver, stomach, spleen, intestines, kidneys, sperm ducts, ovaries, uterus, cervix, vagina, urinary bladder
- the 11 body systems
- what homeostasis is
- directional terms including dorsal, ventral, caudal, cranial, medial, lateral, proximal, distal, rostral, palmar and plantar. Plus transverse and longitudinal sections

In this chapter, the way the cells of the body are organised into different tissues is described. You will find out how these tissues are arranged into organs, and how the organs form systems such as the digestive system and the reproductive system. Also in this chapter, the important concept of homeostasis is defined. You are also introduced to those pesky things -- directional terms.

4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.3: Body Cavities
4.4: Organs
4.5: Generalised Plan Of The Mammalian Body
4.6: Body Systems
4.7: Homeostasis
4.8: Directional Terms
4.9: Summary
4.10: Worksheets
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
4.12: Directional Terms Worksheet 1 Answers
4.13: Directional Terms 2 (Worksheet)
4.14: Directional Terms Worksheet 2 Answers
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
4.17: Test Yourself
4.18: Websites
4.19: Skin Worksheet Answers

This page titled 4: Body Organization is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies

Living organisms move, feed, respire (burn food to make energy), grow, sense their environment, excrete and reproduce. These seven characteristics are sometimes summarized by the words “MRS GREN”. functions of:

Movement

Respiration

Sensitivity

Growth

Reproduction

Excretion

Nutrition

Living organisms are made from cells which are organised into tissues and these are themselves combined to form organs and systems.

Skin cells, muscle cells, skeleton cells and nerve cells, for example. These different types of cells are not just scattered around randomly but similar cells that perform the same function are arranged in groups. These collections of similar cells are known as **tissues**.

There are four main types of tissues in animals. These are:

- **Epithelial** tissues that form linings, coverings and glands,
- **Connective** tissues for transport and support
- **Muscle** tissues for movement and
- **Nervous** tissues for carrying messages.

Epithelial Tissues

Epithelium (plural epithelia) is tissue that covers and lines. It covers an organ or lines a tube or space in the body. There are several different types of epithelium, distinguished by the different shapes of the cells and whether they consist of only a single layer of cells or several layers of cells.

Simple Epithelia - with a single layer of cells

Diagram 4.1: Squamous epithelium

Squamous epithelium

Squamous epithelium consists of a single layer of flattened cells that are shaped rather like ‘crazy paving’. It is found lining the heart, blood vessels, lung alveoli and body cavities (see diagram 4.1). Its thinness allows molecules to diffuse across readily.

Diagram 4.2: Cuboidal epithelium

Cuboidal epithelium

Cuboidal epithelium consists of a single layer of cube shaped cells. It is rare in the body but is found lining kidney tubules (see diagram 4.2). Molecules pass across it by diffusion, osmosis and active transport.

Diagram 4.3: Columnar epithelium

Columnar epithelium

Columnar epithelium consists of column shaped cells. It is found lining the gut from the stomach to the anus (see diagram 4.3). Digested food products move across it into the blood stream.

Diagram 4.4: Columnar epithelium with cilia

Columnar epithelium with cilia on the free surface (also known as the apical side of the cell) lines the respiratory tract, fallopian tubes and uterus (see diagram 4.4). The cilia beat rhythmically to transport particles.

Diagram 4.5: Transitional epithelium

Transitional epithelium - with a variable number of layers

The cells in transitional epithelium can move over one another allowing it to stretch. It is found in the wall of the bladder (see diagram 4.5).

Stratified epithelia - with several layers of cells

Diagram 4.6: Stratified squamous epithelium

Epithelia with several layers of cells are found where toughness and resistance to abrasion are needed.

Stratified squamous epithelium

Stratified squamous epithelium has many layers of flattened cells. It is found lining the mouth, cervix and vagina. Cells at the base divide and push up the cells above them and cells at the top are worn or pushed off the surface (see diagram 4.6). This type of epithelium protects underlying layers and repairs itself rapidly if damaged.

Keratinised stratified squamous epithelium

Keratinised stratified squamous epithelium has a tough waterproof protein called **keratin** deposited in the cells. It forms the skin found covering the outer surface of mammals. (Skin will be described in more detail in Chapter 5).

Connective Tissues

Blood, bone, tendons, cartilage, fibrous connective tissue and fat (adipose) tissue are all classed as connective tissues. They are tissues that are used for supporting the body or transporting substances around the body. They also consist of three parts: they all have cells suspended in a ground substance or **matrix** and most have **fibres** running through it.

Blood

Blood consists of a matrix - plasma, with several types of cells and cell fragments suspended in it. The fibres are only evident in blood that has clotted. Blood will be described in detail in chapter 8.

Lymph

Lymph is similar in composition to blood plasma with various types of white blood cell floating in it. It flows in lymphatic vessels.

Connective tissue ‘proper’

Diagram 4.7: Loose connective tissue

Connective tissue 'proper' consists of a jelly-like matrix with a dense network of collagen and elastic fibres and various cells embedded in it. There are various different forms of ‘proper’ connective tissue (see 1, 2 and 3 below).

Loose connective tissue

Loose connective tissue is a sticky whitish substance that fills the spaces between organs. It is found in the dermis of the skin (see diagram 4.7).

Dense connective tissue

Dense connective tissue contains lots of thick fibres and is very strong. It forms tendons, ligaments and heart valves and covers bones and organs like the kidney and liver.

Adipose tissue

Adipose tissue consists of cells filled with fat. It forms the fatty layer under the dermis of the skin, around the kidneys and heart and the yellow marrow of the bones.

Diagram 4.8: Cartilage

Cartilage is the ‘gristle’ of the meat. It consists of a tough jelly-like matrix with cells suspended in it. It may contain collagen and elastic fibres. It is a flexible but tough tissue and is found at the ends of bones, in the nose, ear and trachea and between the vertebrae (see diagram 4.8).

Bone

Bone consists of a solid matrix made of calcium salts that give it its hardness. **Collagen** fibres running through it give it its strength. Bone cells are found in spaces in the matrix. Two types of bone are found in the skeleton namely **spongy** and **compact bone**. They differ in the way the cells and matrix are arranged. (See Chapter 6 for more details of bone).

Muscle Tissues

Muscle tissue is composed of cells that contract and move the body. There are three types of muscle tissue:

Diagram 4.9: Smooth muscle fibres

Smooth muscle

Smooth muscle consists of long and slender cells with a central nucleus (see diagram 4.9). It is found in the walls of blood vessels, airways to the lungs and the gut. It changes the size of the blood vessels and helps move food and fluid along. Contraction of smooth muscle fibres occurs without the conscious control of the animal.

Diagram 4.10: Skeletal muscle fibres

Skeletal muscle (sometimes called **striated**, **striped** or **voluntary muscle**) has striped fibres with alternating light and dark bands. It is attached to bones and is under the voluntary control of the animal (see diagram 4.10).

Diagram 4.11: Cardiac muscle fibres

Cardiac muscle is found only in the walls of the heart where it produces the 'heart beat'. Cardiac muscle cells are branched cylinders with central nuclei and faint stripes (see diagram 4.11). Each fibre contracts automatically but the heart beat as a whole is controlled by the **pacemaker** and the involuntary **autonomic nervous system**.

Diagram 4.12: A motor neuron

Nervous tissue forms the nerves, spinal cord and brain. Nerve cells or **neurons** consist of a cell body and a long thread or axon that carries the nerve impulse. An insulating sheath of fatty material (**myelin**) usually surrounds the axon. Diagram 4.12 shows a typical motor neuron that sends messages to muscles to contract.

This page titled 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.2: Vertebrate Bodies

We are so familiar with animals with backbones (i.e. vertebrates) that it seems rather unnecessary to point out that the body is divided into three sections. There is a well-defined **head** that contains the brain, the major sense organs and the mouth, a **trunk**that contains the other organs and a well-developed **tail**. Other features of vertebrates may be less apparent. For instance, vertebrates that live on the land have developed a flexible neck that is absent in fish where it would be in the way of the gills and interfere with streamlining. Mammals but not other vertebrates have a sheet of muscle called the **diaphragm** that divides the trunk into the chest region or **thorax** and the **abdomen**.

This page titled 4.2: Vertebrate Bodies is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.3: Body Cavities

In contrast to many primitive animals, vertebrates have spaces or **body cavities** that contain the body organs. Most vertebrates have a single body cavity but in mammals the diaphragm divides the main cavity into a **thoracic** and an **abdominal cavity**. In the thoracic cavity the heart and lungs are surrounded by their own membranes so that cavities are created around the heart - the **pericardial cavity**, and around the lungs – the **pleural cavity** (see diagram 4.13).

Diagram 4.13: The body cavities

This page titled 4.3: Body Cavities is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.4: Organs

Diagram 4.14: Cells, tissues and organs forming the digestive system

Just as the various parts of the cell work together to perform the cell's functions and a large number of similar cells make up a tissue, so many different tissues can "cooperate" to form an organ that performs a particular function. For example, connective tissues, epithelial tissues, muscle tissue and nervous tissue combine to make the organ that we call the stomach. In turn the stomach combines with other organs like the intestines, liver and pancreas to form the digestive system (see diagram 4.14).

This page titled 4.4: Organs is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.5: Generalised Plan Of The Mammalian Body

Diagram 4.15: The main organs of the vertebrate body

At this point it would be a good idea to make yourself familiar with the major organs and their positions in the body of a mammal like the rabbit. Diagram 4.15 shows the main body organs.

This page titled 4.5: Generalised Plan Of The Mammalian Body is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.6: Body Systems

Organs do not work in isolation but function in cooperation with other organs and body structures to bring about the MRS GREN functions necessary to keep an animal alive. For example the stomach can only work in conjunction with the mouth and oesophagus (gullet). These provide it with the food it breaks down and digests. It then needs to pass the food on to the intestines etc. for further digestion and absorption. The organs involved with the taking of food into the body, the digestion and absorption of the food and elimination of waste products are collectively known as the digestive system.

The 11 body systems

1. Skin

   The skin covering the body consists of two layers, the **epidermis** and **dermis**. Associated with these layers are hairs, feathers, claws, hoofs, glands and sense organs of the skin.

2. Skeletal System

   This can be divided into the bones of the skeleton and the joints where the bones move over each other.

3. Muscular System

   The muscles, in conjunction with the skeleton and joints, give the body the ability to move.

4. Cardiovascular System

   This is also known as the circulatory system. It consists of the heart, the blood vessels and the blood. It transports substances around the body.

5. Lymphatic System

   This system is responsible for collecting and “cleaning” the fluid that leaks out of the blood vessels. This fluid is then returned to the blood system. The lymphatic system also makes antibodies that protect the body from invasion by bacteria etc. It consists of lymphatic vessels, lymph nodes, the spleen and thymus glands.

6. Respiratory System

   This is the system involved with bringing oxygen in the air into the body and getting rid of carbon dioxide, which is a waste product of processes that occur in the cell. It is made up of the trachea, bronchi, bronchioles, lungs, diaphragm, ribs and muscles that move the ribs in breathing.

7. Digestive System

   This is also known as the **gastrointestinal system**, **alimentary system** or **gut**. It consists of the digestive tube and glands like the liver and pancreas that produce digestive secretions. It is concerned with breaking down the large molecules in foods into smaller ones that can be absorbed into the blood and lymph. Waste material is also eliminated by the digestive system.

8. Urinary System

   This is also known as the **renal system**. It removes waste products from the blood and is made up of the kidneys, ureters and bladder.

9. Reproductive System

   This is the system that keeps the species going by making new individuals. It is made up of the ovaries, uterus, vagina and fallopian tubes in the female and the testes with associated glands and ducts in the male.

10. Nervous System

    This system coordinates the activities of the body and responses to the environment. It consists of the sense organs (eye, ear, semicircular canals, and organs of taste and smell), the nerves, brain and spinal cord.

11. Endocrine System

    This is the system that produces chemical messengers or hormones. It consists of various **endocrine glands**(ductless glands) that include the pituitary, adrenal, thyroid and pineal glands as well as the testes and ovary.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.6: Body Systems is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.7: Homeostasis

All the body systems, except the reproductive system, are involved with keeping the conditions inside the animal more or less stable. This is called **homeostasis**. These constant conditions are essential for the survival and proper functioning of the cells, tissues and organs of the body. The skin, for example, has an important role in keeping the temperature of the body constant. The kidneys keep the concentration of salts in the blood within limits and the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas maintain the correct level of glucose in the blood through the hormone insulin. As long as the various body processes remain within normal limits, the body functions properly and is healthy. Once homeostasis is disturbed disease or death may result. (See Chapters 12 and16 for more on homeostasis).

This page titled 4.7: Homeostasis is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.8: Directional Terms

Diagram 4.16: The directional terms used with animals

Diagram 4.17: Transverse and longitudinal sections of a mouse

In the following chapters the systems of the body in the list above will be covered one by one. For each one the structure of the organs involved will be described and the way they function will be explained.

In order to describe structures in the body of an animal it is necessary to have a system for describing the position of parts of the body in relation to other parts. For example it may be necessary to describe the position of the liver in relation to the diaphragm, or the heart in relation to the lungs. Certainly if you work further with animals, in a veterinary clinic for example, it will be necessary to be able to accurately describe the position of an injury. The terms used for this are called **directional terms**.

The most common directional terms are **right** and **left**. However, even these are not completely straightforward especially when looking at diagrams of animals. The convention is to show the left side of the animal or organ on the right side of the page. This is the view you would get looking down on an animal lying on its back during surgery or in a post-mortem. Sometimes it is useful to

imagine ‘getting inside’ the animal (so to speak) to check which side is which. The other common and useful directional terms are listed below and shown in diagram 4.16.

Term	Definition	Example
Dorsal	Nearer the back of the animal than	The backbone is dorsal to the belly
Ventral	Nearer the belly of the animal than	The breastbone is ventral to the heart
Cranial (or anterior)	Nearer to the skull than	The diaphragm is cranial to the stomach
Caudal (or posterior)	Nearer to the tail than	The ribs are caudal to the neck
Proximal	Closer to the body than (only used for structures on limbs)	The shoulder is proximal to the elbow
Distal	Further from the body than (only used for structures on limbs)	The ankle is distal to the knee
Medial	Nearer to the midline than	The bladder is medial to the hips
Lateral	Further from the midline than	The ribs are lateral to the lungs
Rostral	Towards the muzzle	There are more grey hairs in the rostral part of the head
Palmar	The "walking" surface of the front paw	There is a small cut on the left palmar surface
Plantar	The "walking" surface of the hind paw	The pads are on the plantar side of the foot

Note that we don’t use the terms **superior** and **inferior** for animals. They are only used to describe the position of structures in the human body (and possibly apes) where the upright posture means some structures are above or superior to others.

In order to look at the structure of some of the parts or organs of the body it may be necessary to cut them open or even make thin slices of them that they can be examined under the microscope. The direction and position of slices or sections through an animal’s body have their own terminology.

If an animal or organ is sliced lengthwise this section is called a **longitudinal** or **sagittal section**. This is sometimes abbreviated to LS.

If the section is sliced crosswise it is called a **transverse** or **cross section**. This is sometimes abbreviated to TS or XS (see diagram 4.17).

This page titled 4.8: Directional Terms is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.9: Summary

- The characteristics of living organisms can be summarised by the words "**MRS GREN**."
- There are 4 main types of tissue namely: **epithelial, connective, muscle** and **nervous tissues**.
- **Epithelial tissues** form the skin and line the gut, respiratory tract, bladder etc.
- **Connective tissues** form tendons, ligaments, adipose tissue, blood, cartilage and bone, and are found in the dermis of the skin.
- **Muscular tissues** contract and consist of 3 types: **smooth, skeletal and cardiac**.
- Vertebrate bodies have a **head, trunk** and **tail**. Body organs are located in **body cavities**. 11 body systems perform essential body functions most of which maintain a stable environment or **homeostasis** within the animal.
- **Directional terms** describe the location of parts of the body in relation to other parts.

This page titled 4.9: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.10: Worksheets

Students often find it hard learning how to use directional terms correctly. There are two worksheets to help you with these and another on tissues.

This page titled 4.10: Worksheets is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)

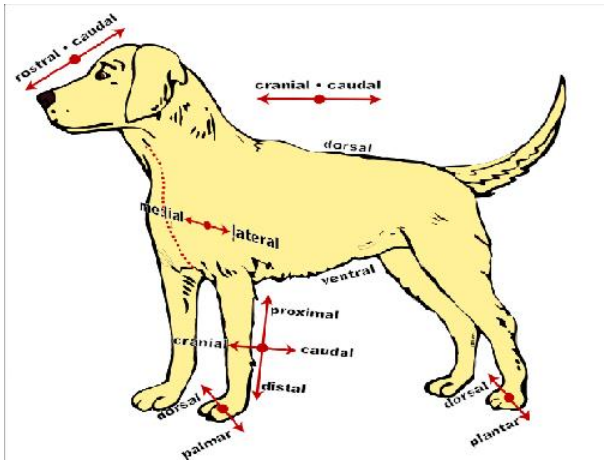
Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

Insert the missing directional terms in the blanks in the statements below the diagram.



1. The head is ..... to the tail

2. The spinal cord is .....to the vertebral column.

3. The thumb is .....to the elbow.

4. The humerus is.....to the ulna.

5. The lungs are .....to the heart.

6. The dorsal aorta is.....to the vertebral column.

7. The lumbar vertebrae are.....to the thoracic vertebrae.

8. The scapula is..... to the clavicle.

9. The bladder is.....to the small intestine.

10. The oesophagus is.....to the trachea.

11. The tibia is.....to the fibula

12. The patella is.....to the knee joint.

13. The pelvic girdle is .....to the vagina.

14. The intestines are.....to the liver.

15. The nasal cavity is.....to the mouth

16. The heart is.....to the elbow.

17. The heart is.....to the stomach

18. The atlas vertebra is.....to the axis vertebra

19. The fibula is.....to the femur

20. The radius is .....to the phalanges

Notes

Dorsal = Nearer to the back than

Ventral = Nearer to the belly than

Caudal = Nearer to the tail than (use inferior only for humans)

Cranial = nearer to the head than (use superior only for humans)

Medial = nearer to the mid point than

Lateral = nearer to the outside than

Distal = further away from the body than-use only for structures on limbs

Proximal = nearer to the body than –use only for structures on limbs

Rostral = nearer to the nose than

Contributors and Attributions

- Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.12: Directional Terms Worksheet 1 Answers

Insert the missing directional terms:

1. The head is *cranial* to the tail
2. The spinal cord is *medial* to the vertebral column.
3. The thumb is *distal* to the elbow.
4. The humerus is *proximal* to the ulna.
5. The lungs are *lateral* to the heart.
6. The dorsal aorta is *ventral* to the vertebral column.
7. The lumbar vertebrae are *caudal* to the thoracic vertebrae.
8. The scapula is *dorsal* to the clavicle.
9. The bladder is *caudal/ventral* to the small intestine.
10. The oesophagus is *dorsal/caudal* to the trachea.
11. The tibia is *cranial* to the fibula
12. The patella is *cranial* to the knee joint.
13. The pelvic girdle is *lateral* to the vagina.
14. The intestines are *caudal* to the liver.
15. The nasal cavity is *rostral* to the mouth
16. The heart is *medial* to the elbow.
17. The heart is *cranial* to the stomach
18. The atlas vertebra is *cranial* to the axis vertebra
19. The fibula is *distal* to the femur
20. The radius is *proximal* to the phalanges

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.12: Directional Terms Worksheet 1 Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.13: Directional Terms 2 (Worksheet)

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

Insert the missing directional terms:

1. The spleen is.....to the kidneys
2. The hock is.....to the stifle.
3. The adrenal gland is.....to the kidney.
4. The thymus is.....to the heart.
5. The thyroid is.....to the trachea.
6. The stomach is.....to the heart.
7. The withers region is.....to the sternum.
8. The stifle is .....to the fetlock
9. The lumbar vertebrae are.....to the sacrum
10. The sacrum is.....to the pelvic girdle
11. The fibula is.....to the tibia
12. The metacarpals are.....to the carpals
13. The pericardium is.....to the heart
14. The diaphragm is.....to the lungs
15. The hair follicle is.....to the hair shaft
16. The eyeball is.....to the orbit
17. The mandible is.....to the tongue
18. The tibia is.....to the femur
19. The radius is.....to the metacarpals

Contributors and Attributions

20. The uterus is.....to the intestines

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.13: Directional Terms 2 (Worksheet) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.14: Directional Terms Worksheet 2 Answers

Insert the missing directional terms:

1. The spleen is *ventral* to the kidneys
2. The hock is *distal* to the stifle.
3. The adrenal gland is *cranial* to the kidney.
4. The thymus is *cranial* to the heart.
5. The thyroid *is cranial/ventral* to the trachea.
6. The stomach is *caudal* to the heart.
7. The withers region is *dorsal* to the sternum.
8. The stifle is *proximal* to the fetlock
9. The lumbar vertebrae are *cranial* to the sacrum
10. The sacrum is *medial/dorsal* to the pelvic girdle
11. The fibula is *caudal/lateral* to the tibia
12. The metacarpals are *distal* to the carpals
13. The pericardium is *lateral* to the heart
14. The diaphragm is *caudal* to the lungs
15. The hair follicle is *lateral* to the hair shaft
16. The eyeball is *medial* to the orbit
17. The mandible is *caudal/ventral* to the tongue
18. The tibia is *distal* to the femur
19. The radius is *proximal* to the metacarpals
20. The uterus is *caudal/ventral* to the intestines

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.14: Directional Terms Worksheet 2 Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.15: Tissues Worksheet

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

Circle the correct answer

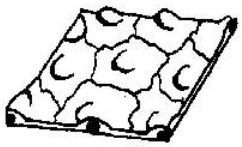
1. A tissue is: a collection of nuclei / a collection of organelles / a collection of cells / a collection of organs.

2. The four major tissue types are: epithelial / fat / connective / bone / muscle / nervous / blood.

3. Epidermal tissue: protects and supports the body / covers body surfaces / is responsible for movement / lines hollow organs / transmits nerve impulses / forms glands.

4. The inside of blood vessels is lined with: cuboidal epithelium / squamous epithelium / transitional epithelium / columnar epithelium.

5. The tissue illustrated below is: cuboidal epithelium / adipose tissue / squamous epithelium / loose connective tissue / blood.



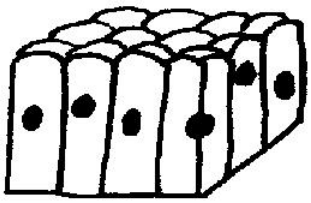
6. The kidney tubules are lined with: cuboidal epithelium / squamous epithelium / transitional epithelium / columnar epithelium?

7. Where is ciliated columnar epithelium NOT found : in the kidney tubule / lining the fallopian tubes / lining the trachea / lining the small intestine?

8. Stratified epithelia: were laid down many centuries ago / are more important than other tissues / consist of several layers of cells / always occur in straight lines.

9. Transitional epithelium allows the: arteries to expand / skin to stretch / uterus to contract / bladder to stretch.

10. The tissue illustrated below is: squamous epithelium / columnar epithelium / squamous stratified epithelium / transitional epithelium / lymph



11. Non keratinised stratified squamous epithelium does NOT OCCUR: lining the vagina / covering the body / lining the mouth / lining the uterus.

12. The surface cells of keratinised stratified squamous epithelium are continually: dying / changing shape / being recycled / being shed from the surface.

13. Which of the following are NOT found in connective tissue?:Cells / fibres / minerals / fluid matrix / cilia.

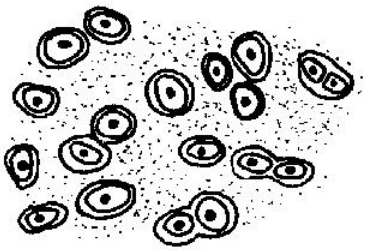
14. Which of the following are NOT connective tissues: blood / fingernails / tendon / bone / saliva / adipose tissue / cartilage?

15. Which of the following muscle tissues has branched fibres, intercalated discs between adjacent cells and contracts automatically: striated voluntary muscle / smooth involuntary muscle / cardiac muscle?

16. Which of the following muscle tissues has long fibres with cross bands and nuclei on the surface? Striated voluntary muscle / smooth involuntary muscle / cardiac muscle?

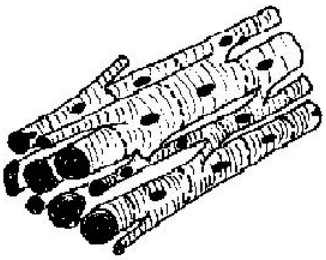
17. Which muscle tissue moves bones? striated voluntary muscle / smooth involuntary muscle / cardiac muscle.

18. The tissue illustrated below is: striated muscle / blood / squamous epithelium / cartilage / transitional epithelium



19. Which muscle tissue is found in blood vessel walls, in the gut wall and in glands? striated voluntary muscle / smooth involuntary muscle / cardiac muscle.

20. The tissue illustrated below is: striated muscle / tendon / smooth muscle / transitional epithelium / cardiac muscle



21. Match the tissue type with the function.

Tissue type	Function
a. Connective Tissue	A. Communicating
b. Muscle Tissue	B. Supporting & communicating
c. Epithelial Tissue	C. Contracting
d. Nervous Tissue	D. Covering and lining

Contributors and Attributions

- Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.15: Tissues Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers

Circle the correct answer:

1. A tissue is: *a collection of cells*

2. The four major tissue types are: *epithelial / connective / muscle / nervous*

3. Epidermal tissue: *covers body surfaces / lines hollow organs / forms glands.*

4. The inside of blood vessels is lined with: cuboidal epithelium / squamous epithelium / transitional epithelium / columnar epithelium?

5. The tissue illustrated below is: *squamous epithelium*

6. The kidney tubules are lined with: *cuboidal epithelium*

7. Where is ciliated columnar epithelium NOT found : Lining the kidney tubule / lining the small intestine? Note: the columnar epithelium lining the gut has microvilli on the surface. The difference between cilia and microvilli can be seen here.

8. Stratified epithelia: *consist of several layers of cells*

9. Transitional epithelium allows the: *bladder to stretch*.

10. The tissue illustrated below is: *squamous epithelium*

11. Non keratinised stratified squamous epithelium does NOT OCCUR: *covering the body*.

12. The surface cells of keratinised stratified squamous epithelium are continually: *being shed from the surface.*

13. Which of the following are NOT found in connective tissue?:*cilia.*

14. Which of the following are NOT connective tissues: *fingernails / saliva*

15. Which of the following muscle tissues has branched fibres, intercalated discs between adjacent cells and contracts automatically: *cardiac muscle*

16. Which of the following muscle tissues has long fibres with cross bands and nuclei on the surface? *Striated voluntary muscle*

17. Which muscle tissue moves bones and facial skin? *striated voluntary muscle*

18. The tissue illustrated below is: *cartilage*

19. Which muscle tissue is found in blood vessel walls, in the gut wall and in glands? *smooth involuntary muscle*

20. The tissue illustrated below is: *cardiac muscle*

21. Match the tissue type with the function.

Tissue type	Function
a. Connective Tissue	B. *Supporting & transporting*
b. Muscle Tissue	C. *Contracting*
c. Epithelial Tissue	D. *Covering and lining*
d. Nervous Tissue	A. *Communicating*

This page titled 4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.17: Test Yourself

1. Living organisms can be distinguished from non-living matter because they usually move and grow. Name 5 other functions of living organisms:

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

2. What tissue types would you find...

a) lining the intestine:
b) covering the body:
c) moving bones:
d) flowing through blood vessels:
e) linking the eye to the brain:
f) lining the bladder:

3. Name the body cavity in which the following organs are found:

a) heart:
b) bladder:
c) stomach:
d) lungs:

4. Name the body system that...

a) includes the bones and joints:
b) includes the ovaries and testes:
c) produces hormones:
d) includes the heart, blood vessels and blood:

5. What is homeostasis?

6. Circle which is correct:

a) The head is cranial | caudal to the neck
b) The heart is medial | lateral to the ribs
c) The elbow is proximal | distal to the fingers
d) The spine is dorsal | ventral to the heart

7. Indicate whether or not these statements are true.

a) The stomach is cranial to the diaphragm - true | false
b) The heart lies in the pelvic cavity - true | false
c) The spleen is roughly the same size as the stomach and lies near it - true | false
d) The small intestine is proximal to the kidneys - true | false

e) The bladder is medial to the hips - true | false

f) The liver is cranial to the heart - true | false

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 4.17: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.18: Websites

- Animal organ systems and homeostasis

Overview of the different organ systems (in humans) and their functions in maintaining homeostasis in the body.

www.emc.maricopa.edu/faculty/...NIMORGSYS.html

- Wikipedia

Directional terms for animals. A little more detail than required but still great.

http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Anatomi...ms_of_location

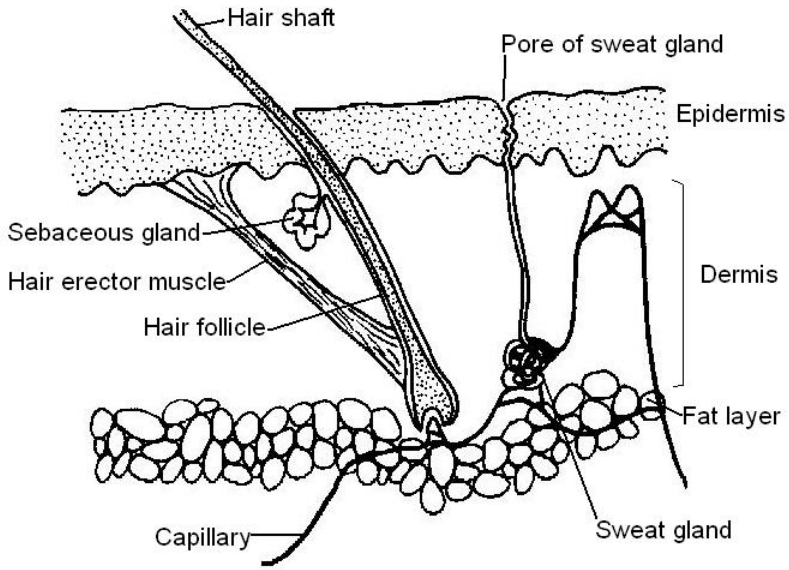
This page titled 4.18: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.19: Skin Worksheet Answers

1. The outermost layer of the skin is: *the epidermis*

2. Which is the thickest layer: the *dermis*

3. Add labels to the diagram of the skin shown below.



4. Which of the following happens to epidermal cells as they move up to the surface of the skin?

   Keratin is deposited in them / *they become flattened and scale-like* / *they die* / they become thicker / they become more active / *they are shed from the surface* / fat is deposited in them / they grow hairs

5. Keratin deposited in the epidermal cells: *makes it waterproof* / *kills the cells.*

6. Which of the following is NOT a keratin skin structure:

   antlers

7. The function of melanin in the skin is to: *protect underlying layers from the harmful rays of the sun*

8. The hair erector muscle: *gives humans goose bumps* / *makes animals hair stand on end*

9. Sebaceous glands secrete: *oils*

10. Sweat glands are: *exocrine glands*

11. Sense organs for touch, pressure, pain and temperature are found in the:

    dermis?

12. All vertebrates are homoiothermic (warm blooded) animals.*False Only mammals and birds can control their body temperature. ie they are warm blooded or homoiothermic*.

13. Temperature regulation is under the control of the: *hypothalamus*

14. Which of the following are NOT important in temperature regulation of the body: *sebaceous glands produce oil for waterproofing and protecting the hairs*

15. Which vitamin is produced in the skin in sunlight? *Vitamin D*

16. Large animals find it easier to keep warm than small ones because: *the ratio of the outside body surface area to the inner body volume is smaller*

17. Which of the following is NOT a function of the skin: *holding in the organs*

18. Frogs and other amphibians use their skin for: *gas exchangeattracting a mate*.

19. Match the skin structure with its function.

Structure	Function
A. Epidermis	f. *Protection from infection*
B. Hair erector muscle	g. *Makes hairs stand on end*
C. Fat cells	a. *Insulation*
D. Sebaceous gland	h. *Secretes oily substance to coat hairs*
E. Dermis	i. *Makes skin tough*
F. Melanin	c.*Protection from sun's rays*
G. Hair	d.*Heat retention*
H. Sweat gland	e. *Heat loss*
I. Blood capillaries in the dermis	j. *Constrict or dilate to control heat loss*
J. Keratin	b. *Water proofing*

This page titled 4.19: Skin Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: The Skin

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the general structure of the skin
- the function of the keratin deposited in the epidermis
- the structure and function of keratin skin structures including calluses, scales, nails, claws, hoofs and horns
- that antlers are not made either of keratin or in the epidermis
- the structure of hairs
- the structure of the different types of feathers and the function of preening
- the general structure and function of sweat, scent, preen and mammary glands
- the basic functions of the skin in sensing stimuli, temperature control and production of vitamin D
- the mechanisms by which the skin regulates body temperature

The skin is the first of the eleven body systems to be described. Each chapter from now on will cover one body system. The skin, sometimes known as the *Integumentary System* is, in fact, the largest organ of the body. It has a complex structure, being composed of many different tissues. It performs many functions that are important in maintaining homeostasis in the body. Probably the most important of these functions is the control of body temperature. The skin also protects the body from physical damage and bacterial invasion. The skin has an array of sense organs which sense the external environment, and also cells which can make vitamin D in sunlight. The skin is one of the first systems affected when an animal becomes sick so it is important for anyone working with animals to have a sound knowledge of the structure and functioning of the skin so they can quickly recognise signs of disease.

5.1: The Skin
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
5.3: Skin Glands
5.4: The Skin and Sun
5.5: The Dermis
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
5.7: Summary
5.8: Worksheet
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
5.10: Skin Worksheet Answers
5.11: Test Yourself
5.12: Websites

This page titled 5: The Skin is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.1: The Skin

Skin comes in all kinds of textures and forms. There is the dry warty skin of toads and crocodiles, the wet slimy skin of fish and frogs, the hard shell of tortoises and the soft supple skin of snakes and humans. Mammalian skin is covered with hair, that of birds with feathers, and fish and reptiles have scales. Pigment in the skin, hairs or feathers can make the outer surface almost any colour of the rainbow.

```
    Skin is one of the largest organs of the body, making up 6-8% of the total body we
```

The epidermis is the layer that bubbles up when we have a blister and as we know from this experience, it has no blood or nerves in it. The cells at the base of the epidermis continually divide and push the cells above them upwards. As these cells move up they die and become the dry flaky scales that fall off the skin surface. The cells in the epidermis die because a special protein called **keratin** is deposited in them. Keratin is an extremely important substance for it makes the skin waterproof. Without it land vertebrates like reptiles, birds and mammals would, like frogs, be able to survive only in damp places.

This page titled 5.1: The Skin is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

Claws, Nails and Hoofs

Reptiles, birds and mammals all have nails or claws on the ends of their toes. They protect the end of the toe and may be used for grasping, grooming, digging or in defense. They are continually worn away and grow continuously from a growth layer at their base (see diagram 5.2).

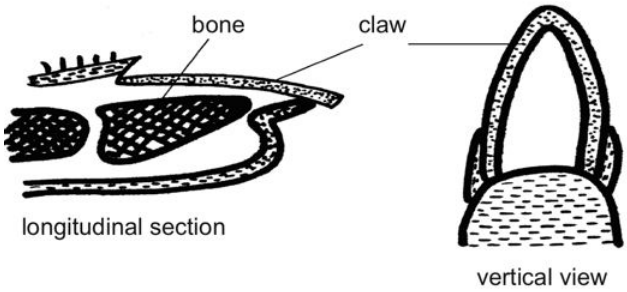


Diagram 5.2 - A carnivore's claw. Wikipedia

Hoofs are found in sheep, cows, horses etc. otherwise known as **ungulate mammals**. These are animals that have lost toes in the process of evolution and walk on the "nails" of the remaining toes. The hoof is a cylinder of horny material that surrounds and protects the tip of the toe (see diagram 5.3).

Anatomy and physiology of animal Horses hoof.jpg

Diagram 5.3 - A horse's hoof

Horns And Antlers

True horns are made of keratin and are found in sheep, goats and cattle. They are never branched and, once grown, are never shed. They consist of a core of bone arising in the dermis of the skin and are fused with the skull. The horn itself forms as a hollow cone-shaped sheath around the bone (see diagram 5.4).

Anatomy and physiology of animals A horn.jpg

Diagram 5.4 - A horn

The **antlers** of male deer have quite a different structure. They are not formed in the epidermis and do not consist of keratin but are entirely of bone. They are shed each year and are often branched, especially in older animals. When growing they are covered in skin called **velvet** that forms the bone. Later the velvet is shed to leave the bony antler. The velvet is often removed artificially to be sold in Asia as a traditional medicine (see diagram 5.5).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Deer antler.jpg

Diagram 5.5 - A deer antler

Other animals have projections on their heads that are not true horns either. The horns on the head of giraffes are made of bone covered with skin and hair, and the 'horn' of a rhinoceros is made of modified and fused hair-like structures.

Hair

Hair is also made of keratin and develops in the epidermis. It covers the body of most mammals where it acts as an insulator and helps to regulate the temperature of the body (see below). The colour in hairs is formed from the same pigment, **melanin** that colours the skin. Coat colour may help camouflage animals and sometimes acts to attract the opposite sex.

Anatomy and physiology of animals A hair.jpg

Diagram 5.6 - A hair

Hairs lie in a **follicle** and grow from a **root** that is well supplied with blood vessels. The hair itself consists of layers of dead keratin - containing cells and usually lies at a slant in the skin. A small bundle of smooth muscle fibres (the **hair erector muscle**) is attached to the side of each hair and when this contracts the hair stands on end. This increases the insulating power of the coat and is also used by some animals to make them seem larger when confronted by a foe or a competitor(see diagram 5.6).

The whiskers of cats and the spines of hedgehogs are examples of special types of hairs.

Feathers

The lightness and stiffness of keratin is also a key to bird flight. In the form of feathers it provides the large airfoils necessary for flapping and gliding flight. In another form, the light fluffy down feathers,also made of keratin, are some of the best natural insulators known. This superior insulation is necessary to help maintain the high body temperatures of birds.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Contour feather.jpg

Diagram 5.7 - A Contour Feather

Countour feathers are large feathers that cover the body, wings and tail. They have an expanded **vane** that provides the smooth, continuous surface that is required for effective flight. This surface is formed by **barbs** that extend out from the central shaft. If you look carefully at a feather you can see that on either side of each barb are thousands of **barbules** that lock together by a complex system of hooks and notches. if this arrangement becomes disrupted, the bird uses its beak to draw the barbs and barbules together again in an action known as **preening** (see diagram 5.7).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Down feather.jpg

Diagram 5.8 - A Down Feather

Anatomy and physiology of animals Pin feather.jpg

Diagram 5.9 - A Pin Feather

Down feathers are the only feathers covering a chick and form the main insulation layer under the contour feathers of the adult. They have no shaft but consist of a spray of simple, slender branches (see diagram 5.8).

Pin feathers have a slender hair-like shaft often with a tiny tuft of barbs on the end. They are found between the other feathers and help tell a bird how its feathers are lying (see diagram 5.9).

This page titled 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.5: The Dermis

The underlying layer of the skin, known as the dermis, is much thicker but much more uniform in structure than the epidermis (see diagram 5.1). It is composed of loose connective tissue with a felted mass of **collagen** and **elastic fibres**. It is this part of the skin of cattle and pigs etc. that becomes commercial leather when treated,. The dermis is well supplied with blood vessels, so cuts and burns that penetrate down into the dermis will bleed or cause serious fluid loss. There are also numerous nerve endings and touch receptors in the dermis because, of course, the skin is sensitive to touch, pain and temperature.

When looking at a section of the skin under the microscope you can see hair follicles, sweat and sebaceous glands dipping down into the dermis. However, these structures do not originate in the dermis but are derived from the epidermis.

In the lower levels of the dermis is a layer of fat or **adipose tissue** (see diagram 5.1). This acts as an energy store and is an excellent insulator especially in mammals like whales with little hair.

This page titled 5.5: The Dermis is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation

Vertebrates can be divided into two groups depending on whether or not they control their internal temperature. Amphibia (frogs) and reptiles are said to be ”**cold blooded**” (**poikilothermic**) because their body temperature approximately follows that of the environment. Birds and mammals are said to be **warm blooded (homoiothermic**) because they can maintain a roughly constant body temperature despite changes in the temperature of the environment.

Heat is produced by the biochemical reactions of the body (especially in the liver) and by muscle contraction. Most of the heat loss from the body occurs via the skin. It is therefore not surprising that many of the mechanisms for controlling the temperature of the body operate here.

Reduction Of Heat Loss

When an animal is in a cold environment and needs to reduce heat loss the erector muscles contract causing the hair or feathers to rise up and increase the layer of insulating air trapped by them.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Hair muscle.jpg

Diagram 5.11a) Hair muscle relaxed.....Diagram 5.11b) Hair muscle contracted

Heat loss from the skin surface can also be reduced by the contraction of the abundant blood vessels that lie in the dermis. This takes blood flow to deeper levels, so reducing heat loss and causing pale skin (see diagram 5.12a).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Reduction of heat loss by skin.jpg

Diagram 5.12a) Reduction of heat loss by skin

Shivering caused by twitching muscles produces heat that also helps raise the body temperature.

Increase Of Heat Loss

There are two main mechanisms used by animals to increase the amount of heat lost from the skin when they are in a hot environment or high levels of activity are increasing internal heat production. The first is the expansion of the blood vessels in the dermis so blood flows near the skin surface and heat loss to the environment can take place. The second is by the production of sweat from the sweat glands (see diagram 5.12b). The evaporation of this liquid on the skin surface produces a cooling effect.

The mechanisms for regulating body temperature are under the control of a small region of the brain called the **hypothalamus**. This acts like a thermostat.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Increase heat loss by skin.jpg

Diagram 5.12b) - Increase of heat loss by skin

Heat Loss And Body Size

The amount of heat that can be lost from the surface of the body is related to the area of skin an animal has in relation to the total volume of its body.

Small animals like mice have a very large skin area compared to their total volume. This means they tend to loose large amounts of heat and have difficulty keeping warm in cold weather. They may need to keep active just to maintain their body temperature or may hibernate to avoid the problem.

Large animals like elephants have the opposite problem. They have only a relatively small skin area in relation to their total volume and may have trouble keeping cool. This is one reason that these large animals tend to have sparse coverings of hair.

This page titled 5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.7: Summary

- Skin consists of two layers: the thin **epidermis** and under it the thicker **dermis.**
- The **Epidermis** is formed by the division of base cells that push those above them towards the surface where they die and are shed.
- **Keratin**, a protein, is deposited in the epidermal cells. It makes skin waterproof.
- Various skin structures formed in the epidermis are made of keratin. These include: claws, nails, hoofs, horn, hair and feathers.
- Various **Exocrine Glands** (with ducts) formed in the epidermis include sweat, sebaceous, and mammary glands.
- **Melanin** deposited in cells at the base of the epidermis protects deeper cells from the harmful effects of the sun.
- The **Dermis** is composed of loose connective tissue and is well supplied with blood.
- Beneath the dermis is insulating **adipose tissue**.
- Body Temperature is controlled by: sweat, hair erection, dilation and contraction of dermal capillaries and shivering.

This page titled 5.7: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.8: Worksheet

Name: _____

Section: _____

Student ID#:_____

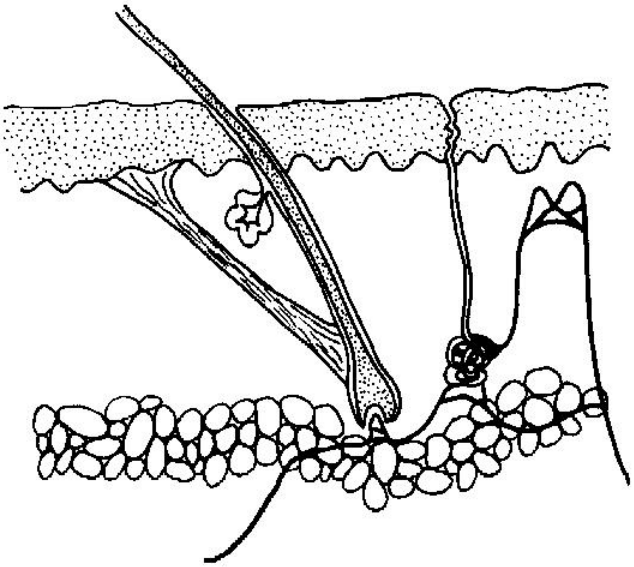
Work in groups on these problems. You should try to answer the questions without referring to your textbook. If you get stuck, try asking another group for help.

1. The outermost layer of the skin is: the dermis / the epidermis / fat layer

2. Which is the thickest layer: the dermis / the epidermis?

3. Add the following labels to the diagram of the skin shown below:

Epidermis, dermis, fat cells, hair shaft, hair follicle, hair erector muscle, sweat gland, pore of sweat gland, sebaceous gland, blood capillaries



4. Which of the following happens to epidermal cells as they move up to the surface of the skin?

   Keratin is deposited in them / they become flattened and scale-like / they die / they become thicker / they become more active / they are shed from the surface / fat is deposited in them / they grow hairs

5. Keratin deposited in the epidermal cells:

   makes it stronger / gives it color / makes it waterproof / makes it flexible / kills the cells.

6. Which of the following is NOT a keratin skin structure:

   foot pads / hair / nails / feathers / antlers / reptilian scales / horns?

7. The function of melanin in the skin is to:

   cause cancer / give the skin a nice color / protect underlying layers from the harmful rays of the sun / make the skin tough.

8. The hair erector muscle:

gives humans goose bumps / squeezes out sweat / makes animals hair stand on end / reduces blood flow in the skin / makes animals shiver.

9. Sebaceous glands secrete:

   sweat / milk / oils / scent

10. Sweat glands are:

    exocrine glands / endocrine glands.

11. Sense organs for touch, pressure, pain and temperature are found in the:

    epidermis / subcutaneous fat layers / dermis?

12. All vertebrates are homoiothermic (warm blooded) animals. True or false?
13. Temperature regulation is under the control of the:

    medulla oblongata / pituitary gland / hypothalamus / sympathetic nervous system.

14. Which of the following are NOT important in temperature regulation of the body:

    smooth muscle around capillaries / adipose tissue / sweat glands / sebaceous glands / hair / shivering / panting.

15. Which vitamin is produced in the skin in sunlight?

    Vitamin A / Vitamin B12 / Vitamin C / Vitamin D / Vitamin E / Vitamin K.

16. Large animals find it easier to keep warm than small ones because:

    they lose less heat through their lungs / they are more active / the ratio of the outside body surface to the inner volume is smaller?

17. Which of the following is NOT a function of the skin:

    holding in the organs / temperature regulation / protection/ water proofing / sensing stimuli / excretion of waste products?

18. Frogs and other amphibians use their skin for:

    maintaining their temperature / gas exchange / preventing water loss / attracting a mate.

19. Match the skin structure with its function.

Structure	Function
A. Epidermis	a. Insulation
B. Hair erector muscle	b. Water proofing
C. Fat cells	c. Protection from sun's rays
D. Sebaceous gland	d. Heat retention
E. Dermis	e. Heat loss
F. Melanin	f. Protection from infection
G. Hair	g. Makes hairs stand on end
H. Sweat gland	h. Secretes oily substance to coat hairs
I. Blood capillaries in the dermis	i. Makes skin tough
J. Keratin	k. Constrict or dilate to control heat loss

This page titled 5.8: Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

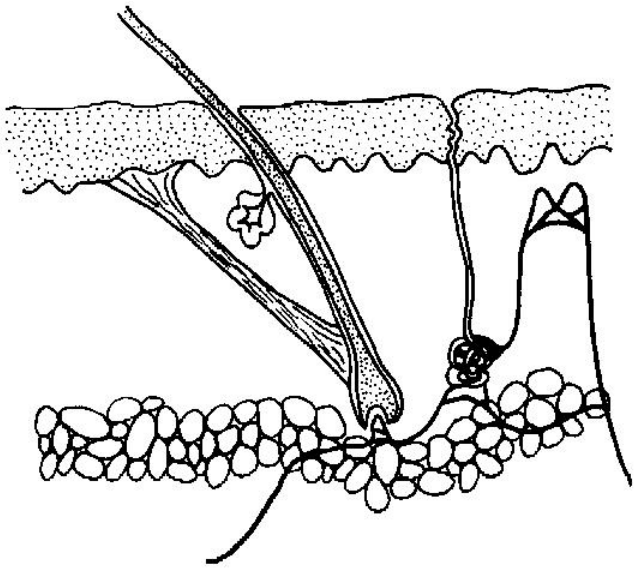
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)

1. The outermost layer of the skin is: the dermis / the epidermis / fat layer

2. Which is the thickest layer: the dermis / the epidermis?

3. Add the following labels to the diagram of the skin shown below.

Epidermis, dermis, fat cells, hair shaft, hair follicle, hair erector muscle, sweat gland, pore of sweat gland, sebaceous gland, blood capillaries



4. Which of the following happens to epidermal cells as they move up to the surface of the skin?

   Keratin is deposited in them / they become flattened and scale-like / they die / they become thicker / they become more active / they are shed from the surface / fat is deposited in them / they grow hairs

5. Keratin deposited in the epidermal cells:

   makes it stronger / gives it colour / makes it waterproof / makes it flexible / kills the cells.

6. Which of the following is NOT a keratin skin structure:

   foot pads / hair / nails / feathers / antlers / reptilian scales / horns?

7. The function of melanin in the skin is to:

   cause cancer / give the skin a nice colour / protect underlying layers from the harmful rays of the sun / make the skin tough.

8. The hair erector muscle:

   gives humans goose bumps / squeezes out sweat / makes animals hair stand on end / reduces blood flow in the skin / makes animals shiver.

9. Sebaceous glands secrete:

   sweat / milk / oils / scent

10. Sweat glands are:

exocrine glands / endocrine glands.

11. Sense organs for touch, pressure, pain and temperature are found in the:

    epidermis / subcutaneous fat layers / dermis?

12. All vertebrates are homoiothermic (warm blooded) animals. True or false?
13. Temperature regulation is under the control of the:

    medulla oblongata / pituitary gland / hypothalamus / sympathetic nervous system.

14. Which of the following are NOT important in temperature regulation of the body:

    smooth muscle around capillaries / adipose tissue / sweat glands / sebaceous glands / hair / shivering / panting.

15. Which vitamin is produced in the skin in sunlight?

    Vitamin A / Vitamin B12 / Vitamin C / Vitamin D / Vitamin E / Vitamin K.

16. Large animals find it easier to keep warm than small ones because:

    they lose less heat through their lungs / they are more active / the ratio of the outside body surface to the inner volume is smaller?

17. Which of the following is NOT a function of the skin:

    holding in the organs / temperature regulation / protection/ water proofing / sensing stimuli / excretion of waste products?

18. Frogs and other amphibians use their skin for:

    maintaining their temperature / gas exchange / preventing water loss / attracting a mate.

19. Match the skin structure with its function.

Structure	Function
A. Epidermis	a. Insulation
B. Hair erector muscle	b. Water proofing
C. Fat cells	c. Protection from sun's rays
D. Sebaceous gland	d. Heat retention
E. Dermis	e. Heat loss
F. Melanin	f. Protection from infection
G. Hair	g. Makes hairs stand on end
H. Sweat gland	h. Secretes oily substance to coat hairs
I. Blood capillaries in the dermis	i. Makes skin tough
J. Keratin	k. Constrict or dilate to control heat loss

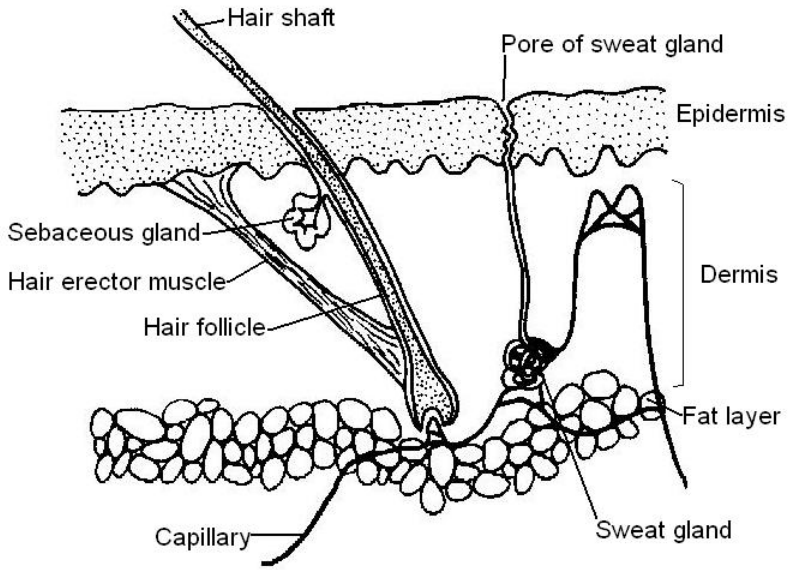
This page titled 5.9: Skin (Worksheet) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.10: Skin Worksheet Answers

1. The outermost layer of the skin is: *the epidermis*

2. Which is the thickest layer: the *dermis*

3. Add labels to the diagram of the skin shown below.



4. Which of the following happens to epidermal cells as they move up to the surface of the skin?

   Keratin is deposited in them / *they become flattened and scale-like* / *they die* / they become thicker / they become more active / *they are shed from the surface* / fat is deposited in them / they grow hairs

5. Keratin deposited in the epidermal cells: *makes it waterproof* / *kills the cells.*

6. Which of the following is NOT a keratin skin structure:

   antlers

7. The function of melanin in the skin is to: *protect underlying layers from the harmful rays of the sun*

8. The hair erector muscle: *gives humans goose bumps* / *makes animals hair stand on end*

9. Sebaceous glands secrete: *oils*

10. Sweat glands are: *exocrine glands*

11. Sense organs for touch, pressure, pain and temperature are found in the:

    dermis?

12. All vertebrates are homoiothermic (warm blooded) animals.*False Only mammals and birds can control their body temperature. ie they are warm blooded or homoiothermic*.

13. Temperature regulation is under the control of the: *hypothalamus*

14. Which of the following are NOT important in temperature regulation of the body: *sebaceous glands produce oil for waterproofing and protecting the hairs*

15. Which vitamin is produced in the skin in sunlight? *Vitamin D*

16. Large animals find it easier to keep warm than small ones because: *the ratio of the outside body surface area to the inner body volume is smaller*

17. Which of the following is NOT a function of the skin: *holding in the organs*

18. Frogs and other amphibians use their skin for: *gas exchangeattracting a mate*.

19. Match the skin structure with its function.

Structure	Function
A. Epidermis	f. *Protection from infection*
B. Hair erector muscle	g. *Makes hairs stand on end*
C. Fat cells	a. *Insulation*
D. Sebaceous gland	h. *Secretes oily substance to coat hairs*
E. Dermis	i. *Makes skin tough*
F. Melanin	c.*Protection from sun's rays*
G. Hair	d.*Heat retention*
H. Sweat gland	e. *Heat loss*
I. Blood capillaries in the dermis	j. *Constrict or dilate to control heat loss*
J. Keratin	b. *Water proofing*

This page titled 5.10: Skin Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.11: Test Yourself

Now use this Skin Test Yourself to see how much you have learned and remember.

1. The two layers that form the skin are the a) _____ and b) _____

2. The special protein deposited in epidermal cells to make them waterproof is:

3. Many important skin structures are made of keratin. These include:

4. Sweat, sebaceous and mammary glands all have ducts to the outside. These kind of glands are known as: _____

5. What is the pigment deposited in skin cells that protects underlying skin layers from the harmful effects of the sun?

6. How does the skin help cool an animal down when it is active or in a hot environment?

7. Name two mechanisms by means of which the skin helps prevent heat loss when an animal is in a cold environment.

This page titled 5.11: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.12: Websites

- www.auburn.edu/academic/class...c6/Topic6.html Comparative anatomy

Good on keratin skin structures - hairs, feathers, horns etc.

- http://www.olympusmicro.com/micd/galleries/brightfield/skinhairymammal.html Hairy mammal skin

All about hairy mammalian skin.

- http://www.earthlife.net/birds/feathers.html The wonder of bird feathers

Fantastic article on bird feathers with great pictures.

- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Skin Wikipedia

Wikipedia on (human) skin. Good as usual, but more information than you need.

This page titled 5.12: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: The Skeleton

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the functions of the skeleton
- the basic structure of a vertebrae and the regions of the vertebral column
- the general structure of the skull
- the difference between ‘true ribs’ and ‘floating ribs
- the main bones of the fore and hind limbs, and their girdles and be able to identify them in a live cat, dog, or rabbit

6.1: The vertebral column
6.2: The Skull
6.3: The Ribs
6.4: The Forelimb
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.6: The Girdles
6.7: Categories of Bones
6.8: Bird Skeletons
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.10: Compact bone
6.11: Spongy Bone
6.12: Bone Growth
6.13: Broken Bones
6.14: Joints
6.15: Common Names of Joints
6.16: Locomotion
6.17: Summary
6.18: Worksheet
6.19: Prelude
6.20: Skeleton Worksheet
6.21: Skeleton Worksheet Answers
6.22: Test Yourself
6.23: Websites

This page titled 6: The Skeleton is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.1: The vertebral column

The vertebral column consists of a series of bones called **vertebrae** linked together to form a flexible column with the skull at one end and the tail at the other. Each vertebra consists of a ring of bone with spines (spinous process) protruding dorsally from it. The spinal cord passes through the hole in the middle and muscles attach to the spines making movement of the body possible (see diagram 6.2).

Vertebra.JPG

Diagram 6.2 - Cross section of a lumbar vertebre

The shape and size of the vertebrae of mammals vary from the neck to the tail. In the neck there are **cervical vertebrae** with the two top ones, the **atlas** and **axis**, being specialized to support the head and allow it to nod “Yes” and shake “No”. **Thoracic vertebrae** in the chest region have special surfaces against which the ribs move during breathing. Grazing animals like cows and giraffes that have to support weighty heads on long necks have extra large spines on their cervical and thoracic vertebrae for muscles to attach to. **Lumbar vertebrae** in the loin region are usually large strong vertebrae with prominent spines for the attachment of the large muscles of the lower back. The **sacral vertebrae** are usually fused into one solid bone called the **sacrum** that sits within the **pelvic girdle**. Finally there are a variable number of small bones in the tail called the **coccygeal vertebrae** (see diagram 6.3).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Regions of a vertebral column.jpg

Diagram 6.3 - The regions of the vertebral column dik

This page titled 6.1: The vertebral column is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.2: The Skull

The skull of mammals consists of 30 separate bones that grow together during development to form a solid case protecting the brain and sense organs. The “box “enclosing and protecting the brain is called the **cranium** (see diagram 6.4). The bony wall of the cranium encloses the middle and inner ears, protects the organs of smell in the nasal cavity and the eyes in sockets known as **orbits**. The teeth are inserted into the upper and lower jaws (see Chapter 5 for more on teeth) The lower jaw is known as the **mandible**. It forms a joint with the skull moved by strong muscles that allow an animal to chew. At the front of the skull is the nasal cavity, separated from the mouth by a plate of bone called the **palate**. Behind the nasal cavity and connecting with it are the **sinuses**. These are air spaces in the bones of the skull which help keep the skull as light as possible. At the base of the cranium is the **foramen magnum**, translated as “big hole”, through which the spinal cord passes. On either side of this are two small, smooth rounded knobs or **condyles** that **articulate** (move against) the first or Atlas vertebra.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Dogs skull.jpg

Diagram 6.4 - A dog’s skull

This page titled 6.2: The Skull is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.3: The Ribs

Paired ribs are attached to each thoracic vertebra against which they move in breathing. Each rib is attached ventrally either to the **sternum** or to the rib in front by cartilage to form the rib cage that protects the heart and lungs. In dogs one pair of ribs is not attached ventrally at all. They are called **floating ribs** (see diagram 6.5). Birds have a large expanded sternum called the **keel** to which the flight muscles (the ‘breast” meat of a roast chicken) are attached.

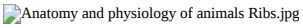


Diagram 6.5 - The rib

This page titled 6.3: The Ribs is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.4: The Forelimb

The forelimb consists of: **Humerus, radius** and **ulna, carpals, metacarpals, digits** or **phalanges** (see diagram 6.6). The top of the humerus moves against (articulates with) the **scapula** at the shoulder joint. By changing the number, size and shape of the various bones, fore limbs have evolved to fit different ways of life. They have become wings for flying in birds and bats, flippers for swimming in whales, seals and porpoises, fast and efficient limbs for running in horses and arms and hands for holding and manipulating in primates (see diagram 6.8).

Forelimb dog corrected.JPG

Diagram 6.6 - Forelimb of a dog

Hind limb dog corrected.JPG

Diagram 6.7. Hindlimb of a dog

Anatomy and physiology of animals Various vertebrate limbs.jpg

Diagram 6.8 - Various vertebrate limbs

Anatomy and physiology of animals Forelimb of a horse.jpg

Diagram 6.9 - Forelimb of a horse

In the horse and other equines, the third toe is the only toe remaining on the front and real limbs. Each toe is made up of a proximal phalange, a middle phalange, and distal phalange (and some small bones often referred to as sesamoids. In this image, the proximal phalange is labeled P3 and the distal phalange is labeled hoof. (which is more properly the name of the keratin covering that we see in the living animal).

The legs of the horse are highly adapted to give it great galloping speed over long distances. The bones of the lower leg and foot are greatly elongated and the hooves are actually the tips of the third fingers and toes, the other digits having been lost or reduced (see diagram 6.9).

This page titled 6.4: The Forelimb is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.5: The Hindlimb

The hind limbs have a similar basic pattern to the forelimb. They consist of: **femur, tibia** and **fibula, tarsals, metatarsals, digits** or **phalanges**(see diagram 6.7). The top of the femur moves against (articulates with) the pelvis at the hip joint.

This page titled 6.5: The Hindlimb is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.6: The Girdles

The girdles pass on the “push” produced by the limbs to the body. The shoulder girdle or **scapula** is a triangle of bone surrounded by the muscles of the back but not connected directly to the spine (see diagram 6.1). This arrangement helps it to cushion the body when landing after a leap and gives the forelimbs the flexibility to manipulate food or strike at prey. Animals that use their forelimbs for grasping, burrowing or climbing have a well-developed **clavicle** or collar bone. This connects the shoulder girdle to the sternum. Animals like sheep, horses and cows that use their forelimbs only for supporting the body and locomotion have no clavicle. The **pelvic girdle** or hipbone attaches the sacrum and the hind legs. It transmits the force of the leg-thrust in walking or jumping directly to the spine (see diagram 6.10).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Pelvic girdle.jpg

Diagram 6.10 - The pelvic girdle

This page titled 6.6: The Girdles is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.7: Categories of Bones

People who study skeletons place the different bones of the skeleton into groups according to their shape or the way in which they develop. Thus we have **long bones** like the femur, radius and finger bones, **short bones** like the ones of the wrist and ankle, **irregular bones** like the vertebrae and **flat bones** like the shoulder blade and bones of the skull. Finally there are bones that develop in tissue separated from the main skeleton. These include **sesamoid bones** which include bones like the patella or kneecap that develop in tendons and **visceral bones** that develop in the soft tissue of the penis of the dog and the cow's heart.

This page titled 6.7: Categories of Bones is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.8: Bird Skeletons

Although the skeleton of birds is made up of the same bones as that of mammals, many are highly adapted for flight. The most noticeable difference is that the bones of the forelimbs are elongated to act as wings. The large flight muscles make up as much as 1/5th of the body weight and are attached to an extension of the sternum called the **keel**. The vertebrae of the lower back are fused to provide the rigidity needed to produce flying movements. There are also many adaptations to reduce the weight of the skeleton. For instance birds have a beak rather than teeth and many of the bones are hollow (see diagram 6.11).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Birds skeleton.jpg

Diagram 6.11 - A bird's skeleton

This page titled 6.8: Bird Skeletons is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.9: The Structure of Long Bones

A long bone consists of a central portion or **shaft** and two ends called **epiphyses** (see diagram 6.12). Long bones move against or articulate with other bones at joints and their ends have flattened surfaces and rounded protuberances (condyles) to make this possible. If you carefully examine a long bone you may also see raised or rough surfaces. This is where the muscles that move the bones are attached. You will also see holes (a hole is called a **foramen**) in the bone. Blood vessels and nerves pass into the bone through these. You may also be able to see a fine line at each end of the bone. This is called the **growth plate** or **epiphyseal line** and marks the place where increase in length of the bone occurred (see diagram 6.16).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Femur.jpg

Diagram 6.12 - A femur

Anatomy and physiology of animals l-s section long bone.jpg

6.13 - A longitudinal section through a long bone

If you cut a long bone lengthways you will see it consists of a hollow cylinder (see diagram 6.13). The outer shell is covered by a tough fibrous sheath to which the tendons are attached. Under this is a layer of hard, dense **compact bone** (see below). This gives the bone its strength. The central cavity contains fatty **yellow marrow**, an important energy store for the body, and the ends are made from honeycomb-like bony material called **spongy bone** (see box below). Spongy bone contains **red marrow** where red blood cells are made.

This page titled 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.10: Compact bone

Compact bone is not the lifeless material it may appear at first glance. It is a living dynamic tissue with blood vessels, nerves and living cells that continually rebuild and reshape the bone structure as a result of the stresses, bends and breaks it experiences. Compact bone is composed of microscopic hollow cylinders that run parallel to each other along the length of the bone. Each of these cylinders is called a **Haversian system**. Blood vessels and nerves run along the central canal of each Haversian system. Each system consists of concentric rings of bone material (the **matrix**) with minute spaces in it that hold the bone cells. The hard matrix contains crystals of calcium phosphate, calcium carbonate and magnesium salts with collagen fibres that make the bone stronger and somewhat flexible. Tiny canals connect the cells with each other and their blood supply (see diagram 6.14).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Haversian system compact bone.jpg

Diagram 6.14 - Haversian systems of compact bone

This page titled 6.10: Compact bone is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.11: Spongy Bone

Spongy bone gives bones lightness with strength. It consists of an irregular lattice that looks just like an old fashioned loofah sponge (see diagram 6.15). It is found on the ends of long bones and makes up most of the bone tissue of the limb girdles, ribs, sternum, vertebrae and skull. The spaces contain red marrow, which is where red blood cells are made and stored.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Spongy bone.jpg

Diagram 6.15 - Spongy bone

This page titled 6.11: Spongy Bone is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.12: Bone Growth

The skeleton starts off in the foetus as either cartilage or fibrous connective tissue. Before birth and, sometimes for years after it, the cartilage is gradually replaced by bone. The long bones increase in length at the ends at an area known as the **epiphyseal plate** where new cartilage is laid down and then gradually converted to bone. When an animal is mature, bone growth ceases and the epiphyseal plate converts into a fine **epiphyseal line** (see diagram 6.16).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Growing bone.jpg

Diagram 6.16 - A growing bone

This page titled 6.12: Bone Growth is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.13: Broken Bones

A fracture or break dramatically demonstrates the dynamic nature of bone. Soon after the break occurs blood pours into the site and cartilage is deposited. This starts to connect the broken ends together. Later spongy bone replaces the cartilage, which is itself replaced by compact bone. Partial healing to the point where some weight can be put on the bone can take place in 6 weeks but complete healing may take 3–4 months.

This page titled 6.13: Broken Bones is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.14: Joints

Joints are the structures in the skeleton where 2 or more bones meet. There are several different types of joints. Some are **immovable** once the animal has reached maturity. Examples of these are those between the bones of the skull and the midline joint of the pelvic girdle. Some are **slightly moveable** like the joints between the vertebrae but most joints allow free movement and have a typical structure with a fluid filled cavity separating the articulating surfaces (surfaces that move against each other) of the two bones. This kind of joint is called a **synovial joint** (see diagram 6.17). The joint is held together by bundles of white fibrous tissue called **ligaments** and a fibrous **capsule** encloses the joint. The inner layers of this capsule secrete the **synovial fluid** that acts as a lubricant. The articulating surfaces of the bones are covered with **cartilage** that also reduces friction and some joints, e.g. the knee, have a pad of cartilage between the surfaces that articulate with each other.

The shape of the articulating bones in a joint and the arrangement of ligaments determine the kind of movement made by the joint. Some joints only allow a to and from **gliding movement** e.g. between the ankle and wrist bones; the joints at the elbow, knee and fingers are **hinge joints** and allow movement in two dimensions and the axis vertebra **pivots** on the atlas vertebra. **Ball and socket joints**, like those at the shoulder and hip, allow the greatest range of movement.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Synovial joint.jpg

Diagram 6.17 - A synovial joint

This page titled 6.14: Joints is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.15: Common Names of Joints

Some joints in animals are given common names that tend to be confusing. For example:

1. The joint between the femur and the tibia on the hind leg is our knee but the **stifle** in animals.
2. Our ankle joint (between the tarsals and metatarsals) is the **hock** in animals
3. Our knuckle joint (between the metacarpals or metatarsals and the phalanges) is the **fetlock** in the horse.
4. The **"knee"** on the horse is equivalent to our wrist (ie on the front limb between the radius and metacarpals) see diagrams 6.6, 6.7, 6.8, 6.17 and 6.18.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Common horse joints.jpg

Diagram 6.18 - The names of common joints of a horse

Anatomy and physiology of animals Common dog joints.jpg

Diagarm 6.19 - The names of common joints of a dog

This page titled 6.15: Common Names of Joints is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.16: Locomotion

Different animals place different parts of the foot or forelimb on the ground when walking or running.

Humans and bears put the whole surface of the foot on the ground when they walk. This is known as **plantigrade locomotion**. Dogs and cats walk on their toes (**digitigrade locomotion**) while horses and pigs walk on their “toenails” or hoofs. This is called **unguligrade locomotion** (see diagram 6.20).

1. **Plantigrade locomotion** (on the “palms of the hand) as in humans and bears
2. **Digitigrade locomotion** (on the “fingers”) as in cats and dogs
3. **Unguligrade locomotion** (on the “fingernails”) as in horses

Anatomy and physiology of animals Locomotion.jpg

Diagram 6.20 - Locomotion

This page titled 6.16: Locomotion is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.17: Summary

- The skeleton maintains the shape of the body, protects internal organs and makes locomotion possible.
- The **vertebrae** support the body and protect the spinal cord. They consist of: **cervical vertebrae** in the neck, **thoracic vertebrae** in the chest region which articulate with the ribs, **lumbar vertebrae** in the loin region, **sacral vertebrae** fused to the pelvis to form the sacrum and **tail** or **coccygeal vertebrae**.
- The **skull** protects the brain and sense organs. The **cranium** forms a solid box enclosing the brain. The **mandible** forms the jaw.
- The forelimb consists of the **humerus, radius, ulna, carpals, metacarpals** and **phalanges**. It moves against or **articulates** with the **scapula** at the shoulder joint.
- The hindlimb consists of the **femur, patella, tibia, fibula, tarsals, metatarsals** and **digits**. It moves against or articulates with the **pelvis** at the hip joint.
- Bones articulate against each other at **joints**.
- **Compact bone** in the shaft of long bones gives them their strength. **Spongy bone** at the ends reduces weight. Bone growth occurs at the **growth plate**.

This page titled 6.17: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.18: Worksheet

Use the Skeleton Worksheet to learn the main parts of the skeleton.

This page titled 6.18: Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.19: Prelude

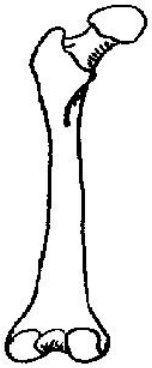
Fish, frogs, reptiles, birds and mammals are called **vertebrates**, a name that comes from the bony column of vertebrae (the spine) that supports the body and head. The rest of the skeleton of all these animals (except the fish) also has the same basic design with a skull that houses and protects the brain and sense organs and ribs that protect the heart and lungs and, in mammals, make breathing possible. Each of the four limbs is made to the same basic pattern. It is joined to the spine by means of a flat, broad bone called a **girdle** and consists of one long upper bone, two long lower bones, several smaller bones in the wrist or ankle and five digits (see diagrams 6.1 18,19 and 20).

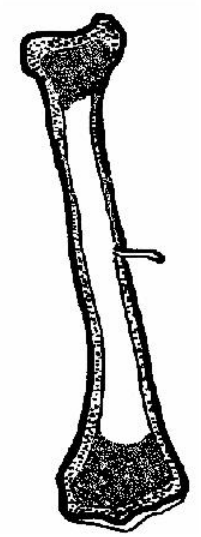
Anatomy and physiology of animals Mamalian skeleton.jpg

Diagram 6.1 - The mammalian skeleton

This page titled 6.19: Prelude is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.20: Skeleton Worksheet





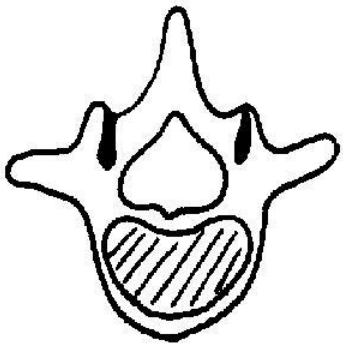
2. Add the following labels to the diagram of the vertebra shown below:

h) Dorsal (neural) spine

i) Transverse process

j) Body

k) Neural (central) canal



3. Add the following labels to the diagram of the dog skeleton shown below:

l) Atlas vertebra
m) Cervical vertebrae
n) Lumbar vertebrae
o) Sacrum
p) Thoracic vertebrae
q) Scapula
r) Mandible
s) Tibia
t) Fibula
u) Femur
v) Carpals
w) Metacarpals
x) Tarsals
y) Metatarsals
z) Hip bone or pelvis
aa) Humerus
bb) Radius
cc) Ulna
dd) Ribs
ee) Sternum

Unlabelled dog skeleton from Wikipedia.JPG

4. Cross out the statement(s) that are NOT true.

The skeleton:

- supports and protects the organs of the body
- provides a means of locomotion
- grows throughout the life of the animal
- helps keep the level of calcium ions in the body constant
- develops from the cartilage laid down in the fetus

5. True or False. If false indicate the correct answer.

- The elbow joint is a synovial joint
- The patella is a compact bone
- The joints in the skull are fixed (immovable joints)
- Unguligrade locomotion is walking on the toenails or hoofs
- Flexion means increasing the angle between two bones
- The joint between the axis and the atlas is a hinge joint
- The articular surface of a joint is covered with spongy bone
- Ligaments join two bones together at a joint
- Plantigrade locomotion is walking on the digits only.
- The hip joint is a hinge joint.

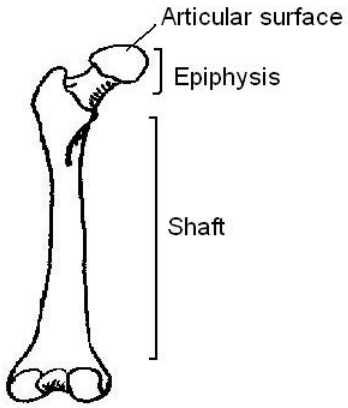
Contributors and Attributions

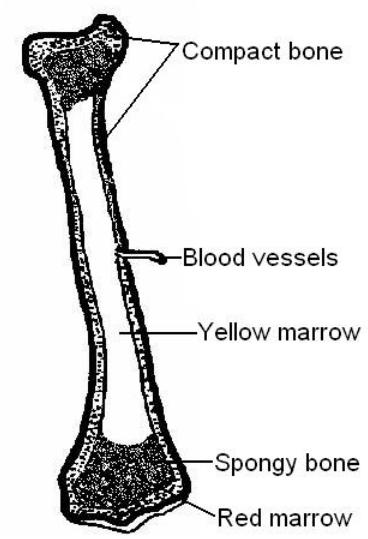
Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 6.20: Skeleton Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

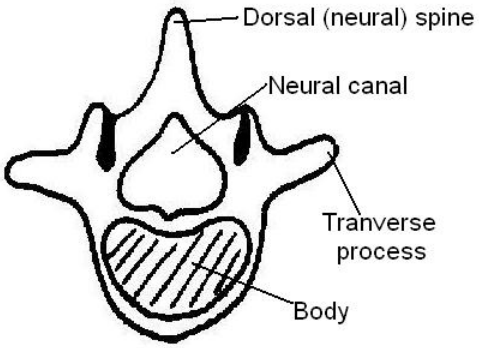
6.21: Skeleton Worksheet Answers

1. Add the labels to the diagrams of the long bone below.

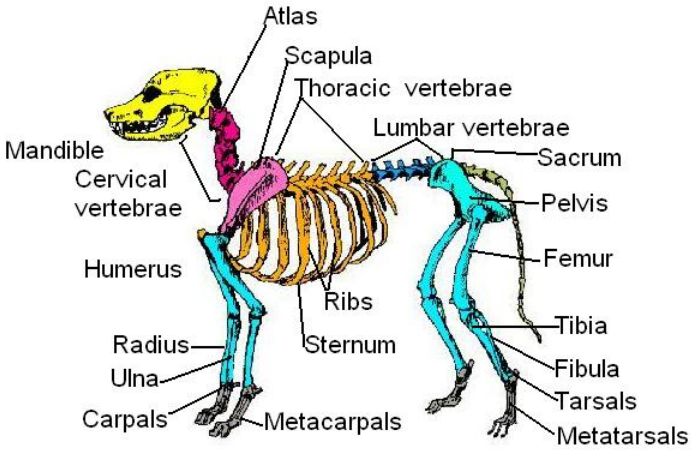




2. Add the labels to the diagram of the vertebra shown below:



3. Add the labels to the diagram of the dog skeleton shown below:



4. Cross out the statements that are NOT correct.

The skeleton:

- supports and protects the organs of the body
- provides a means of locomotion
- ~~grows throughout the life of the animal~~
- helps keep the level of calcium ions in the body constant
- develops from the cartilage laid down in the fetus

5. True or False. If false indicate the correct answer.

- The elbow joint is a synovial joint T
- The patella is a compact bone F *It is a sesamoid bone*
- The joints in the skull are fixed (immovable joints) T

- Unguligrade locomotion is walking on the toenails or hoofs T
- Flexion means increasing the angle between two bones F *It is decreasing the angle of the joint.*
- The joint between the axis and the atlas is a hinge joint. F *It is a pivot joint.*
- The articular surface of a joint is covered with spongy bone F *It is covered in compact bone which itself has a covering of cartilage.*
- Ligaments join two bones together at a joint. T
- Plantigrade locomotion is walking on the digits only. F *It is walking on the "palms" of the fore or hindlimb.*
- The hip joint is a hinge joint. F *It is ball and socket joint.*

This page titled 6.21: Skeleton Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.22: Test Yourself

1. Name the bones which move against (articulate with)...

    a) the humerus:the scapula at the proximal end and the ulna at the distal end
    b) the thoracic vertebrae:ribs
    c) the pelvis:the femur

2. Name the bones in the forelimb:humerus, ulna, radius, carpals, matacarpals and phallanges

3. Where is the patella found?at the point where the femur articulates with the tibia

4. Where are the following joints located?

    a) The stifle joint:between the femur and tibia
    b) The elbow joint:between the humerus and tibia
    c) The hock joint:between the tibia, tarsals and metatarsals
    d) The hip joint:between the pelvis and femur

5. Attach the following labels to the diagram of the long bone shown below.

    a) compact bone
    b) spongy bone
    c) growth plate
    d) fibrous sheath
    e) red marrow
    f) blood vessel

Section through long bone.JPG

6. Attach the following labels to the diagram of a joint shown below

    a) bone
    b) articular cartilage
    c) joint cavity
    d) capsule
    e) ligament
    f) synovial fluid.

Joint no labels.JPG

This page titled 6.22: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.23: Websites

- http://www.infovisual.info/02/056_en.html Bird skeleton

A good diagram of the bird skeleton.

- http://www.earthlife.net/mammals/skeleton.html Earth life

A great introduction to the mammalian skeleton. A little above the level required but it has so much interesting information it's worth reading it.

- www.klbschool.org.uk/interact...e/skeleton.htm The human skeleton

Test yourself on the names of the bones of the (human) skeleton.

- www.shockfamily.net/skeleton/JOINTS.HTML The joints

Quite a good article on the different kinds of joints with diagrams.

- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Bone Wikipedia

Wikipedia is disappointing where the skeleton is concerned. Most articles stick entirely to the human skeleton or have far too much detail. However this one on compact and spongy bone and the growth of bone is quite good although still much above the level required.

This page titled 6.23: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Muscles

Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- The structure of smooth, cardiac and skeletal muscle and where they are found.
- What the insertion and origin of a muscle is.
- What flexion and extension of a muscle means.
- That muscles usually operate as antagonistic pairs.
- What tendons attach muscles to bones.

7.1: Website
7.2: Muscles
7.3: Smooth Muscle
7.4: Cardiac Muscle

This page titled 7: Muscles is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.1: Website

- http://health.howstuffworks.com/muscle.htm How muscles work

Description of the three types of muscles and how skeletal muscles work.

This page titled 7.1: Website is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.2: Muscles

Muscles make up the bulk of an animal's body and account for about half its weight. The meat on the chop or roast is muscle and is composed mainly of protein. The cells that make up muscle tissue are elongated and able to contract to a half or even a third of their length when at rest. There are three different kinds of muscle based on appearance and function: smooth, cardiac and skeletal muscle.

Types of Muscle

- **Smooth muscle**: Smooth or Involuntary muscle carries out the unconscious routine tasks of the body such as moving food down the digestive system, keeping the eyes in focus and adjusting the diameter of blood vessels. The individual cells are spindle-shaped, being fatter in the middle and tapering off towards the ends with a nucleus in the center of the cell. They are usually found in sheets and are stimulated by the non-conscious or autonomic nervous system as well as by hormones (see Chapter 3).
- **Cardiac muscle**: Cardiac muscle is only found in the wall of the heart. It is composed of branching fibers that form a three-dimensional network. When examined under the microscope, a central nucleus and faint stripes or striations can be seen in the cells. Cardiac muscle cells contract spontaneously and rhythmically without outside stimulation, but the sinoatrial node (natural pacemaker) coordinates the heart beat. Nerves and hormones modify this rhythm (see Chapter 3).
- **Skeletal muscle**: Skeletal muscle is the muscle that is attached to and moves the skeleton, and is under voluntary control. It is composed of elongated cells or fibers lying parallel to each other. Each cell is unusual in that it has several nuclei and when examined under the microscope appears striped or striated. This appearance gives the muscle its names of striped or striated muscle. Each cell of striated muscle contains hundreds, or even thousands, of microscopic fibers each one with its own striped appearance. The stripes are formed by two different sorts of protein that slide over each other making the cell contract (see diagram 7.1).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Striped muscle cell.jpg

Diagram 7.1 - A striped muscle cell

Muscle Contraction

Muscle contraction requires energy and muscle cells have numerous mitochondria. However, only about 15% of the energy released by the mitochondria is used to fuel muscle contraction. The rest is released as heat. This is why exercise increases body temperature and makes animals sweat or pant to rid themselves of this heat.

What we refer to as a muscle is made up of groups of muscle fibers surrounded by connective tissue. The connective tissue sheaths join together at the ends of the muscle to form tough white bands of fiber called **tendons**. These attach the muscles to the bones. Tendons are similar in structure to the **ligaments** that attach bones together across a joint (see diagrams 7.2a and b).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Structure of a muscle.jpg

Diagram 7.2 a and b - The structure of a muscle

Remember

Tendons Tie muscles to bones and **Ligaments Link** bones at joints

Structure of a muscle

A single muscle is fat in the middle and tapers towards the ends. The middle part, which gets fatter when the muscle contracts, is called the **belly** of the muscle. If you contract your biceps muscle in your upper arm you may feel it getting fatter in the middle. You may also notice that the biceps is attached at its top end to bones in your shoulder while at the bottom it is attached to bones in your lower arm. Notice that the bones at only one end move when you contract the biceps. This end of the muscle is called the **insertion**. The other end of the muscle, the **origin**, is attached to the bone that moves the least (see diagram 7.3).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Antagonistic muscles, flexion&tension.jpg

Diagram 7.3 - Antagonistic muscles, flexion and extension

Antagonistic muscles

Skeletal muscles usually work in pairs. When one contracts the other relaxes and vice versa. Pairs of muscles that work like this are called **antagonistic muscles**. For example the muscles in the upper forearm are the biceps and triceps (see diagram 7.3). Together they bend the elbow. When the biceps contracts (and the triceps relaxes) the lower forearm is raised and the angle of the joint is reduced. This kind of movement is called **flexion**. When the triceps is contracted (and the biceps relaxes), the angle of the elbow increases. The term for this movement is **extension**.

When you or animals contract skeletal muscle it is a voluntary action. For example, you make a conscious decision to walk across the room, raise the spoon to your mouth, or smile. There is however, another way in which contraction of muscles attached to the skeleton happens that is not under voluntary control. This is during a **reflex action**, such as jerking your hand away from the hot stove you have touched by accident. This is called a **reflex arc** and will be described in detail in chapter 14-15.

This page titled 7.2: Muscles is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.3: Smooth Muscle

There are three different kinds of muscle tissue: **smooth muscle** in the walls of the gut and blood vessels; **cardiac muscle** in the heart and **skeletal muscle** attached to the skeleton.

- **Tendons** attach skeletal muscles to the skeleton.
- **Ligaments** link bones together at a joint.
- Skeletal muscles work in pairs known as **antagonistic pairs.** As one contracts the other in thepair relaxes.
- **Flexion** is the movement that reduces the angle of a joint. **Extension** increases the angle of a joint.

This page titled 7.3: Smooth Muscle is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.4: Cardiac Muscle

1. What kind of muscle tissue:

    a) moves bones

    b) makes the heart pump blood:

    c) pushes food along the intestine:

    d) makes your mouth form a smile:

    e) makes the hair stand up when cold:

    f) makes the diaphragm contract for breathing in:

2. What structure connects a muscle to a bone?

3. What is the insertion of a muscle?

4. Which muscle is antagonistic to the biceps?

5. Name 3 other antagonistic pairs and tell what they do.

6. When you bend your knee what movement are you making?

7. When you straighten your ankle joint what movement happens?

8. What organelles provide the energy that muscles need?

9. State the difference between a tendon and a ligament.

10.In the section "Skeletal Muscle" there are 2 proteins mentioned. Name these proteins, state their size difference, and tell what they actually do to help produce movement.

This page titled 7.4: Cardiac Muscle is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Cardiovascular System

This chapter on the Cardiovascular system is divided into 3 sections. These are: Blood, The Heart, and Blood circulation.

8.1: Plasma
8.2: Red Blood Cells
8.3: White Blood Cells
8.4: Platelets
8.5: Transport of Oxygen
8.6: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning
8.7: Transport of Carbon Dioxide
8.8: Transport of Other Substances
8.9: Blood Clotting
8.10: Serum and Plasma
8.11: Anticoagulants
8.12: Haemolysis
8.13: Blood groups
8.14: Blood Volume
8.15: Summary
8.16: Test Yourself
8.17: Websites
8.18: Answers
8.19: The Heart Objectives
8.20: The Heart
8.21: Valves
8.22: The Heartbeat
8.23: Cardiac Muscle
8.24: Control of the Heartbeat
8.25: The Coronary Vessels
8.26: Blood Circulation Objectives
8.27: Blood Circulation
8.28: Arteries
8.29: The Pulse
8.30: Capillaries
8.31: The Formation of Tissue Fluid and Lymph
8.32: Veins
8.33: Regulation of Blood Flow
8.34: Edema and fluid loss
8.35: The Spleen
8.36: Important Blood Vessels
8.37: Blood Pressure
8.38: Summary
8.39: Test Yourself

8.40: Websites
8.41: Answers

This page titled 8: Cardiovascular System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.1: Plasma

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.1: Plasma is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.2: Red Blood Cells

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.2: Red Blood Cells is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.3: White Blood Cells

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.3: White Blood Cells is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.4: Platelets

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.4: Platelets is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.5: Transport of Oxygen

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.5: Transport of Oxygen is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.6: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.6: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.7: Transport of Carbon Dioxide

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.7: Transport of Carbon Dioxide is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.8: Transport of Other Substances

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.8: Transport of Other Substances is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.9: Blood Clotting

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.9: Blood Clotting is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.10: Serum and Plasma

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.10: Serum and Plasma is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.11: Anticoagulants

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.11: Anticoagulants is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.12: Haemolysis

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.12: Haemolysis is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.13: Blood groups

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.13: Blood groups is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.14: Blood Volume

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.14: Blood Volume is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.15: Summary

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

- Edit page

  Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

- Drag and drop

  Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

- Classifications

  Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

- Working with templates

  CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

- Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.15: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.16: Test Yourself

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.16: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.17: Websites

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.17: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.18: Answers

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.18: Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.19: The Heart Objectives

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.19: The Heart Objectives is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.20: The Heart

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.20: The Heart is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.21: Valves

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.21: Valves is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.22: The Heartbeat

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.22: The Heartbeat is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.23: Cardiac Muscle

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.23: Cardiac Muscle is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.24: Control of the Heartbeat

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.24: Control of the Heartbeat is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.25: The Coronary Vessels

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.25: The Coronary Vessels is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.26: Blood Circulation Objectives

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.26: Blood Circulation Objectives is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.27: Blood Circulation

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.27: Blood Circulation is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.28: Arteries

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.28: Arteries is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.31: The Formation of Tissue Fluid and Lymph

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.31: The Formation of Tissue Fluid and Lymph is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.32: Veins

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.32: Veins is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.33: Regulation of Blood Flow

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.33: Regulation of Blood Flow is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.34: Edema and fluid loss

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.34: Edema and fluid loss is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.35: The Spleen

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.35: The Spleen is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.36: Important Blood Vessels

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.36: Important Blood Vessels is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.37: Blood Pressure

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.37: Blood Pressure is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.38: Summary

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

- Edit page

  Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

- Drag and drop

  Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

- Classifications

  Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

- Working with templates

  CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

- Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.38: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.39: Test Yourself

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.39: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.40: Websites

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.40: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.41: Answers

Your page has been created!

Remove this content and add your own.

Edit page

Click the Edit page button in your user bar. You will see a suggested structure for your content. Add your content and hit Save.

Tips:

Drag and drop

Drag one or more image files from your computer and drop them onto your browser window to add them to your page.

Classifications

Tags are used to link pages to one another along common themes. Tags are also used as markers for the dynamic organization of content in the CXone Expert framework.

Working with templates

CXone Expert templates help guide and organize your documentation, making it flow easier and more uniformly. Edit existing templates or create your own.

Visit for all help topics.

This page titled 8.41: Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Respiratory System

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- why animals need energy and how they make it in cells
- why animals require oxygen and need to get rid of carbon dioxide
- what the term gas exchange means
- the structure of alveoli and how oxygen and carbon dioxide pass across their walls
- how oxygen and carbon dioxide are carried in the blood
- the route air takes in the respiratory system (i.e. the nose, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchus, bronchioles, alveoli)
- the movements of the ribs and diaphragm to bring about inspiration
- what tidal volume, minute volume and vital capacity are
- how the rate of breathing is controlled and how this helps regulate the acid-base balance of the blood

9.1: Overview
9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen
9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide
9.4: The Air Passages
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.6: Breathing
9.7: Summary
9.8: Worksheet
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
9.10: Respiration Worksheet Answers
9.11: Test Yourself
9.12: Websites

This page titled 9: Respiratory System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.1: Overview

Diagram 9.1: Alveoli with blood supply

Animals require a supply of energy to survive. This energy is needed to build large molecules like proteins and glycogen, make the structures in cells, move chemicals through membranes and around cells, contract muscles, transmit nerve impulses and keep the body warm. Animals get their energy from the large molecules that they eat as food. Glucose is often the energy source but it may also come from other carbohydrates, as well as fats and protein. The energy is made by the biochemical process known as **cellular respiration** that takes place in the **mitochondria** inside every living cell.

The overall reaction can be summarised by the word equation given below.

Charbohydrate Food (glucose) + Oxygen = Carbon Dioxide + Water + energy

As you can see from this equation, the cells need to be supplied with **oxygen** and **glucose** and the waste product, **carbon dioxide**, which is poisonous to cells, needs to be removed. The way the digestive system provides the glucose for cellular respiration will be described in Chapter 11 ("The Gut and Digestion"), but here we are only concerned with the two gases, oxygen and carbon dioxide, that are involved in cellular respiration. These gases are carried in the blood to and from the tissues where they are required or produced.

Oxygen enters the body from the air (or water in fish)and carbon dioxide is usually eliminated from the same part of the body. This process is called **gas exchange**. In fish gas exchange occurs in the gills, in land dwelling vertebrates lungs are the gas exchange organs and frogs use gills when they are tadpoles and lungs, the mouth and the skin when adults.

Mammals (and birds) are active and have relatively high body temperatures so they require large amounts of oxygen to provide sufficient energy through cellular respiration. In order to take in enough oxygen and release all the carbon dioxide produced they need a very large surface area over which gas exchange can take place. The many minute air sacs or **alveoli** of the lungs provide this. When you look at these under the microscope they appear rather like bunches of grapes covered with a dense network of fine capillaries (see diagram 9.1). A thin layer of water covers the inner surface of each alveolus. There is only a very small distance - just 2 layers of thin cells - between the air in the alveoli and the blood in the capillaries. The gases pass across this gap by **diffusion**.

This page titled 9.1: Overview is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen

Diagram 9.2: Cross section of an alveolus

The air in the alveoli is rich in oxygen while the blood in the capillaries around the alveoli is deoxygenated. This is because the haemoglobin in the red blood cells has released all the oxygen it has been carrying to the cells of the body. Oxygen diffuses from high concentration to low concentration. It therefore crosses the narrow barrier between the alveoli and the capillaries to enter the blood and combine with the haemoglobin in the red blood cells to form **oxyhaemoglobin**.

The narrow diameter of the capillaries around the alveoli means that the blood flow is slowed down and that the red cells are squeezed against the capillary walls. Both of these factors help the oxygen diffuse into the blood (see diagram 9.2).

When the blood reaches the capillaries of the tissues the oxygen splits from the haemoglobin molecule. It then diffuses into the tissue fluid and then into the cells.

This page titled 9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide

Blood entering the lung capillaries is full of carbon dioxide that it has collected from the tissues. Most of the carbon dioxide is dissolved in the plasma either in the form of **sodium bicarbonate** or **carbonic acid**. A little is transported by the red blood cells. As the blood enters the lungs the carbon dioxide gas diffuses through the capillary and alveoli walls into the water film and then into the alveoli. Finally it is removed from the lungs during breathing out (see diagram 9.2). (See chapter 8 for more information about how oxygen and carbon dioxide are carried in the blood).

This page titled 9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.4: The Air Passages

When air is breathed in it passes from the nose to the alveoli of the lungs down a series of tubes (see diagram 9.3). After entering the nose the air passes through the **nasal cavity**, which is lined with a moist membrane that adds warmth and moisture to the air as it passes. The air then flows through the **pharynx** or throat, a passage that carries both food and air, to the **larynx** where the voice-box is located. Here the passages for food and air separate again. Food must pass into the oesophagus and the air into the windpipe or **trachea**. To prevent food entering this, a small flap of tissue called the **epiglottis** closes the opening during swallowing (see chapter 11). A reflex that inhibits breathing during swallowing also (usually) prevents choking on food.

The trachea is the tube that ducts the air down the throat. Incomplete rings of cartilage in its walls help keep it open even when the neck is bent and head turned. The fact that acrobats and people that tie themselves in knots doing yoga still keep breathing during the most contorted manoeuvres shows how effective this arrangement is. The air passage now divides into the two **bronchi** that take the air to the right and left lungs before dividing into smaller and smaller **bronchioles** that spread throughout the lungs to carry air to the alveoli. Smooth muscles in the walls of the bronchi and bronchioles adjust the diameter of the air passages.

The tissue lining the respiratory passages produces **mucus** and is covered with miniature hairs or **cilia.** Any dust that is breathed into the respiratory system immediately gets entangled in the mucous and the cilia move it towards the mouth or nose where it can be coughed up or blown out.

This page titled 9.4: The Air Passages is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities

Diagram 9.3: The respiratory system

The lungs fill most of the chest or **thoracic cavity**, which is completely separated from the abdominal cavity by the **diaphragm**. The lungs and the spaces in which they lie (called the **pleural cavities)** are covered with membranes called the **pleura**. There is a thin film of fluid between the two membranes. This lubricates them as they move over each other during breathing movements.

Collapsed Lungs

The pleural cavities are completely airtight with no connection with the outside and if they are punctured by accident (a broken rib will often do this), air rushes in and the lung collapses. Separating the two lungs is a region of tissue that contains the oesophagus, trachea, aorta, vena cava and lymph nodes. This is called the **mediastinum**. In humans and sheep it separates the cavity completely so that puncturing one pleural cavity leads to the collapse of only one lung. In dogs, however, this separation is incomplete so a puncture results in a complete collapse of both lungs.

This page titled 9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.6: Breathing

The process of breathing moves air in and out of the lungs. Sometimes this process is called **respiration** but it is important not to confuse it with the chemical process, **cellular respiration**, that takes place in the mitochondria of cells. Breathing is brought about by the movement of the diaphragm and the ribs.

Diagram 9.4a: Inspiration; **Diagram 9.4b**: Expiration

Inspiration

The diaphragm is a thin sheet of muscle that completely separates the abdominal and thoracic cavities. When at rest it domes up into the thoracic cavity but during breathing in or **inspiration** it flattens. At the same time special muscles in the chest wall move the ribs forwards and outwards. These movements of both the diaphragm and the ribs cause the volume of the thorax to increase. Because the pleural cavities are airtight, the lungs expand to fill this increased space and air is drawn down the trachea into the lungs (see diagram 9.4a).

Expiration

Expiration or breathing out consists of the opposite movements. The ribs move down and in and the diaphragm resumes its domed shape so the air is expelled (see diagram 9.4b). Expiration is usually passive and no energy is required (unless you are blowing up a balloon).

Lung Volumes

Diagram 9.5: Lung volumes

As you sit here reading this just pay attention to your breathing. Notice that your in and out breaths are really quite small and gentle (unless you have just rushed here from somewhere else!). Only a small amount of the total volume that your lungs hold is breathed in and out with each breath. This kind of gentle “at rest” breathing is called **tidal breathing** and the volume breathed in or out (they should be the same) is the **tidal volume** (see diagram 9.5). Sometimes people want to measure the volume of air inspired or expired during a minute of this normal breathing. This is called the **minute volume**. It could be estimated by measuring the volume of one tidal breath and then multiplying that by the number of breaths in a minute. Of course it is possible to take a deep breath and

breathe in as far as you can and then expire as far as possible. The volume of the air expired when a maximum expiration follows a maximum inspiration is called the **vital capacity** (see diagram 9.5).

Composition Of Air

The air animals breathe in consists of 21% oxygen and 0.04% carbon dioxide. Expelled air consists of 16% oxygen and 4.4% carbon dioxide. This means that the lungs remove only a quarter of the oxygen contained in the air. This is why it is possible to give someone (or an animal) artificial respiration by blowing expired air into their mouth.

Breathing is usually an unconscious activity that takes place whether you are awake or asleep, although, humans at least, can also control it consciously. Two regions in the hindbrain called the **medulla oblongata** and **pons** control the rate of breathing. These are called **respiratory centres**. They respond to the concentration of carbon dioxide in the blood. When this concentration rises during a bout of activity, for example, nerve impulses are automatically sent to the diaphragm and rib muscles that increase the rate and the depth of breathing. Increasing the rate of breathing also increases the amount of oxygen in the blood to meet the needs of this increased activity.

The Acidity Of The Blood And Breathing

The degree of acidity of the blood (the **acid-base balance**) is critical for normal functioning of cells and the body as a whole. For example, blood that is too acidic or alkaline can seriously affect nerve function causing a coma, muscle spasms, convulsions and even death. Carbon dioxide carried in the blood makes the blood acidic and the higher the concentration of carbon dioxide the more acidic it is. This is obviously dangerous so there are various mechanisms in the body that bring the acid-base balance back within the normal range. Breathing is one of these homeostatic mechanisms. By increasing the rate of breathing the animal increases the amount of dissolved carbon dioxide that is expelled from the blood. This reduces the acidity of the blood.

Breathing In Birds

Birds have a unique respiratory system that enables them to respire at the very high rates necessary for flight. The lungs are relatively solid structures that do not change shape and size in the same way as mammalian lungs do. Tubes run through them and connect with a series of air sacs situated in the thoracic and abdominal body cavities and some of the bones. Movements of the ribs and breastbone or sternum expand and compress these air sacs so they act rather like bellows and pump air through the lungs. The evolution of this extremely efficient system of breathing has enabled birds to migrate vast distances and fly at altitudes higher than the summit of Everest.

This page titled 9.6: Breathing is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.7: Summary

- Animals need to breathe to supply the cells with **oxygen** and remove the waste product **carbon dioxide**.
- The lungs are situated in the **pleural cavities** of the **thorax**.
- **Gas exchange** occurs in the **alveoli** of the lungs that provide a large surface area. Here oxygen diffuses from the alveoli into the red blood cells in the capillaries that surround the alveoli. Carbon dioxide, at high concentration in the blood, diffuses into the alveoli to be breathed out.
- **Inspiration** occurs when muscle contraction causes the ribs to move up and out and the diaphragm to flatten. These movements increase the volume of the pleural cavity and draw air down the respiratory system into the lungs.
- The air enters the nasal cavity and passes to the **pharynx** and **larynx** where the **epiglottis** closes the opening to the lungs during swallowing. the air passes down the trachea kept open by rings of cartilage to the **bronchi** and **bronchioles** and then to the alveoli.
- **Expiration** is a passive process requiring no energy as it relies on the relaxation of the muscles and recoil of the elastic tissue of the lungs.
- The rate of breathing is determined by the concentration of carbon dioxide in the blood. As carbon dioxide makes blood acidic, the rate of breathing helps control the **acid/base balance** of the blood.
- The cells lining the respiratory passages produce mucus which traps dust particles, which are wafted into the nose by cilia.

This page titled 9.7: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.8: Worksheet

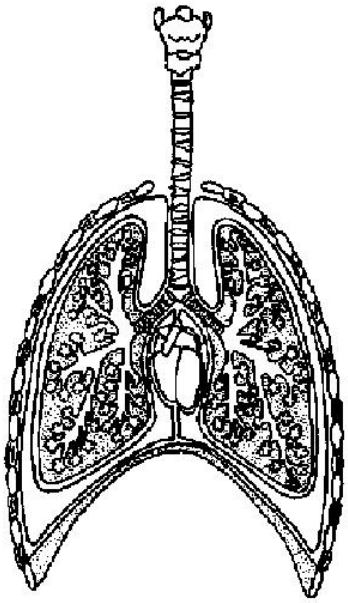
Work through the Respiratory System Worksheet to learn the main structures of the respiratory system and how they contribute to inspiration and gas exchange.

This page titled 9.8: Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

1. Add the following labels to the diagram of the respiratory system of a dog below:

trachea; bronchioles; diaphragm; bronchi; ribs; larynx; pleural membranes; pleural cavity; rings of cartilage around trachea; alveoli.



2. List the structures below in the order in which air passes them as it travels from the nose to the lungs

alveoli; trachea; bronchi; bronchioles; larynx; pharynx.

3. Which is the odd one out?

trachea; oesophagus; nasal cavity; larynx; bronchi; bronchioles

4. How are dust particles that enter the respiratory system in the air expelled?

5. Add the correct terms from the list below to the following descriptions.

A. Alveoli; B. Trachea; C. Bronchioles; D. Palate; E. Pleura; F. Diaphragm;

G. Pharynx; H. Expiration; I. Epiglottis; J. Tidal volume.

a) Smallest respiratory passageways.
b) Separates the mouth from the nose.
d) Windpipe.
e) Where gas exchange takes place.
f) Stops food “going the wrong way” ie choking during swallowing.
g) Both air and food pass through this.
h) The movement of air out of the lungs.
i) The main muscle involved in inspiration.

j) Membranes that cover the lungs and line the pleural cavity.

k) The volume of air inhaled or exhaled at each normal breath.

6. Arrange these statements in the right order to describe inspiration.

A. The air pressure in the air tight pleural cavities decreases

B. The muscles between the ribs contract to move the ribs up and out

C. Air is drawn down the trachea into the lungs

D. The diaphragm contracts and domes up into the thoracic cavity

E. The lungs expand to fill the space created

7. True or false?

a) The pericardium is the membrane surrounding the lungs. T / F

b) The tidal volume describes the maximum amount of air that can be inhaled into the lungs. T / F

c) Tidal volume can be measured with a peak flow meter T / F

d) Inspiration takes up energy but expiration (during normal at rest breathing) is a passive process not normally requiring energy. T / F

e) The diaphragm is made of smooth muscle. T / F

f) The epiglottis closes off the larynx during swallowing. T / F

g) The rate of breathing is controlled by the pituitary gland. T / F

h) When an animal exercises the rate of breathing increases because the carbon dioxide in the blood increases. T / F

i) Carbon dioxide dissolved in the blood makes the blood alkaline. T / F

j) Carbon dioxide in the blood is mainly carried in the blood plasma.T / F

k) Oxygen moves from the alveoli into the capillaries by the process of osmosis. T / F

l) Expired air contains about 16% oxygen. T / F

8. Add the following labels to the diagram of a section cut across lung alveoli shown below.

alveoli; thin layer of water; area of high oxygen concentration; area of high carbon dioxide concentration; movement of oxygen; movement of carbon dioxide; air flowing in and out of alveoli; blood flowing along capillary.

9. Which of the statements below gives the best definition of gas exchange?

a) swapping oxygen for digested food in the gut capillaries.

b) using energy to breathe.

c) exchanging inhaled air for exhaled air in the lungs.

d) exchanging oxygen for carbon dioxide in the lung alveoli.

10. Which of the following help the lungs to be such good gas exchange organs? (Choose at least 4).

- They are close to the heart.
- They are surrounded by pleural membranes.
- They have a large surface area.
- The air in the alveoli and blood in the capillaries are separated by a 2 very thin layers of cells.
- The blood flows more slowly in the lung capillaries as they are so narrow.
- The haemoglobin carries lots of oxygen.
- Breathing constantly changes the air in the alveoli.
- Active transport increases the rate at which the two gases move.

11. Add the terms from the list below to the blanks in the following statements.

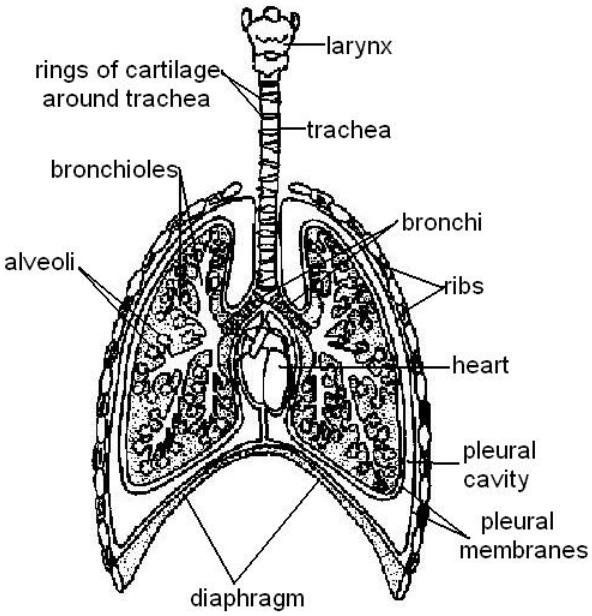
Active transport ; B. Air of alveoli; C. Carbon dioxide -poor and oxygen –rich; D. Capillary blood to alveolar air; E. Capillary blood to tissue cells; F. Diffusion; G. Higher concentration; H. Lower concentration; I. Oxygen-poor and carbon dioxide – rich; J. Tissue cells to capillary blood.

The process of gas exchange is by (1) .....…When substances pass in this manner, they move from areas of (2) ..... to areas of their (3)..... Thus oxygen continually passes from the (4)..... and then from the (5)..... Conversely carbon dioxide moves from the(6)..... and from (7)..... From there it passes out of the body during expiration. As a result of such exchanges, arterial blood tends to be (8)..... while venous blood is (9) .....

This page titled 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.10: Respiration Worksheet Answers

1. Add labels to the diagram of the respiratory system of a dog below:



2. List the structures below in the order in which air passes them as it travels from the nose to the lungs

pharynx; larynx; trachea; bronchi; bronchioles; alveoli

3. Which is the odd one out?

trachea; *oesophagus*; nasal cavity; larynx; bronchi; bronchioles.

The oesophagus is part of the digestive system. The rest are parts of the respiratory system.

4. How are dust particles that enter the respiratory system in the air expelled? *They become enmeshed in the mucus produced by cells lining the respiratory tract. They are then transported to the nose by the beating of the cilia that also line the trachea, bronchi and bronchioles.*

5. Add the correct terms from the list below to the following descriptions.

a) Smallest respiratory passageways. *C. Bronchioles*

b) Separates the mouth from the nose. *D. Palate*

d) Windpipe. *B. Trachea*

e) Where gas exchange takes place. *A. Alveoli*

f) Stops food “going the wrong way” i.e. choking during swallowing. *I. Epiglottis*

g) Both air and food pass through this. *G. Pharynx*

h) The movement of air out of the lungs. *H. Expiration*

i) The main muscle involved in inspiration. *F. Diaphragm*

j) Membranes that cover the lungs and line the pleural cavity. *E. Pleura*

k) The volume of air inhaled or exhaled at each normal breath. *J. Tidal volume*

6. Arrange these statements in the right order to describe inspiration.

B. The muscles between the ribs contract to move the ribs up and out

D. The diaphragm contracts and flattens

A. The air pressure in the air tight pleural cavities decreases

E. The lungs expand to fill the space created

C. Air is drawn down the trachea into the lungs

Note: B and D occur together so the order can be BDAEC or DBAEC

7. True or false?

a) The pericardium is the membrane surrounding the lungs. *F. The membrane surrounding the lungs is the pleural membrane. The pericardium surrounds the heart.*

b) The tidal volume describes the maximum amount of air that can be inhaled into the lungs. *F. This is the vital capacity. The tidal volume is the volume of air that is inhaled or exhaled in one normal at rest breath.*

c) Tidal volume can be measured with a peak flow meter *F. A peak flow meter measures the force with which air can be blown out of the lungs.It does not measure volume. Tidal volume can be measured with any device that traps and then measures the volume of air expelled from the lungs during a normal "at rest" breath.*

d) Inspiration takes up energy but expiration (during normal at rest breathing) is a passive process not normally requiring energy. *T.*

e) The diaphragm is made of smooth muscle. *F. The diaphragm is made of skeletal muscle. The contraction of the diaphragm is under conscious control and skeletal muscle is the only muscle under conscious control.*

f) The epiglottis closes off the larynx during swallowing. *T*

g) The rate of breathing is controlled by the pituitary gland. *F. It is controlled by respiratory centres in the medulla oblongata (and the pons).*

h) When an animal exercises the rate of breathing increases because the carbon dioxide in the blood increases. *T.*

i) Carbon dioxide dissolved in the blood makes the blood alkaline. *F. Dissolved CO_2 makes blood acidic.*

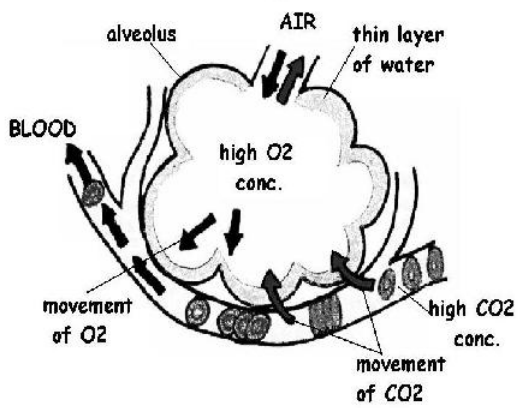
j) Carbon dioxide in the blood is mainly carried in the blood plasma. *T*

k) Oxygen moves from the alveoli into the capillaries by the process of osmosis. *F. Oxygen moves by diffusion.*

l) Expired air contains about 16% oxygen. *T.*

8. Add the following labels to the diagram of lung alveoli below.

alveolus; thin layer of water; area of high oxygen concentration;
area of high carbon dioxide concentration; movement of oxygen; movement of carbon dioxide;
air moves in and out of alveoli; blood flowing along capillary.



9. Which of the statements below gives the best definition of gas exchange? *:d) exchanging oxygen for carbon dioxide in the lung alveoli.*

10. Which of the following help the lungs to be such good gas exchange organs? (Choose at least 4).

- *They have a large surface area.*
- *The air in the alveoli and blood in the capillaries are separated by a 2 very thin layers of cells.*
- *The blood flows more slowly in the lung capillaries as they are so narrow.*
- *Breathing constantly changes the air in the alveoli.*

11. Add the terms from the list below to the blanks in the following statements.

The process of gas exchange is by (1)*F. Diffusion*. When substances pass in this manner, they move from areas of (2) *G. Higher concentration* to areas of their (3)*H. Lower concentration*. Thus oxygen continually passes from the (4)B. *Air of alveoli* and then from the (5)*E. Capillary blood to tissue cells*. Conversely carbon dioxide moves from the(6) *J. Tissue cells to capillary blood* and from (7)*D. Capillary blood to alveolar air*. From there it passes out of the body during expiration. As a result of such exchanges, arterial blood tends to be (8)*C. Carbon dioxide -poor and oxygen –rich* while venous blood is (9) *I. Oxygen-poor and carbon dioxide – rich*.

This page titled 9.10: Respiration Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.11: Test Yourself

Then use the Test Yourself below to see how much you remember and understand.

1. What is meant by the phrase “gas exchange”?

2. Where does gas exchange take place?

3. What is the process by which oxygen moves from the alveoli into the blood?

4. Why does this process occur?

5. How does the structure of the alveoli make gas exchange efficient?

6. How is oxygen carried in the blood?

7. List the structures that air passes on its way from the nose to the alveoli:

8. What is the function of the mucus and cilia lining the respiratory passages?

9. How do movements of the ribs and diaphragm bring about inspiration? Circle the correct statement below.

   a) The diaphragm domes up into the thorax and ribs move in and down
   b) The diaphragm flattens and ribs move up and out
   c) The diaphragm domes up into the thorax and the ribs move up and out.
   d) The diaphragm flattens and the ribs move in and down

10. What is the function of the epiglottis?

11. What controls the rate of breathing?

This page titled 9.11: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.12: Websites

- http://www.biotopics.co.uk/humans/resyst.html Bio topics

A good interactive explanation of breathing and gas exchange in humans with diagrams to label, animations to watch and questions to answer.

- www.schoolscience.co.uk/conte...hma/asth3.html School Science

Although this is of the human respiratory system there is a good diagram that gives the functions of the various parts as you move your mouse over it. Also an animation of gas exchange and a quiz to test your understanding of it.

- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Lung Wikipedia

Wikipedia on the lungs. Lots of good information on the human respiratory system with all sorts of links if you are interested.

This page titled 9.12: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Lymphatic System

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the function of the lymphatic system
- what the terms tissue fluid, lymph, lymphocyte and lymphatic mean
- how lymph is formed and what is in it
- the basic structure and function of a lymph node and the position of some important lymph nodes in the body
- the route by which lymph circulates in the body and is returned to the blood system
- the location and function of the spleen, thymus and lacteals

10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
10.6: Test Yourself
10.7: Websites

This page titled 10: Lymphatic System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System

When **tissue fluid** enters the small blind-ended **lymphatic capillaries**that form a network between the cells it becomes **lymph**. Lymph is a clear watery fluid that is very similar to blood plasma except that it contains large numbers of white blood cells, mostly **lymphocytes**. It also contains protein, cellular debris, foreign particles and bacteria. Lymph that comes from the intestines also contains many fat globules following the absorption of fat from the digested food into the lymphatics (**lacteals**) of the villi (see chapter 11 for more on these). From the lymph capillaries the lymph flows into larger tubes called **lymphatic vessels.**These carry the lymph back to join the blood circulation (see diagrams 10.1 and 10.2).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Capillary bed with lymphatic capilaries.jpg

Diagram 10.1 - A capillary bed with lymphatic capillaries

Lymphatic vessels

Lymphatic vessels have several similarities to veins. Both are thin walled and return fluid to the right hand side of the heart. The movement of the fluid in both is brought about by the contraction of the muscles that surround them and both have valves to prevent backflow. One important difference is that lymph passes through at least one **lymph node** or gland before it reaches the blood system (see diagram 10.2). These filter out used cell parts, cancer cells and bacteria and help defend the body from infection.

Lymph nodes are of various sizes and shapes and found throughout the body and the more important ones are shown in diagram 10.3. They consist of lymph tissue surrounded by a fibrous sheath. Lymph flows into them through a number of incoming vessels. It then trickles through small channels where white cells called **macrophages** (derived from **monocytes**) remove the bacteria and debris by engulfing and digesting them (see diagram 10.4). The lymph then leaves the lymph nodes through outgoing vessels to continue its journey towards the heart where it rejoins the blood circulation (see diagrams 10.2 and 10.3).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Lymphatic system.jpg

Diagram 10.2 - The lymphatic system

Anatomy and physiology of animals Circulation of lymph w major lymph nodes.jpg

Diagram 10.3 - The circulation of lymph with major lymph nodes

Anatomy and physiology of animals Lymph node.jpg

Diagram 10.4 - A lymph node

As well as filtering the lymph, lymph nodes produce the white cells known as **lymphocytes**. Lymphocytes are also produced by the **thymus**, **spleen** and **bone marrow**. There are two kinds of lymphocyte. The first attack invading micro organisms directly while others produce **antibodies** that circulate in the blood and attack them.

The function of the lymphatic system can therefore be summarized as transport and defense. It is important for returning the fluid and proteins that have escaped from the blood capillaries to the blood system and is also responsible for picking up the products of fat digestion in the small intestine. Its other essential function is as part of the immune system, defending the body against infection.

Problems with lymph nodes and the lymphatic system

During infection of the body the lymph nodes often become swollen and tender because of their increased activity. This is what causes the swollen ‘glands’ in your neck during throat infections, mumps and tonsillitis. Sometimes the bacteria multiply in the lymph node and cause inflammation. Cancer cells may also be carried to the lymph nodes and then transported to other parts of the body where they may multiply to form a secondary growth or **metastasis**. The lymphatic system may therefore contribute to the spread of cancer. Inactivity of the muscles surrounding the lymphatic vessels or blockage of these vessels causes tissue fluid to ‘back up’ in the tissues resulting in swelling or **oedema**.

This page titled 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System

The **spleen** is an important part of the lymphatic system. It is a deep red organ situated in the abdomen caudal to the stomach (see diagram 10.3). It is composed of two different types of tissue. The first type makes and stores lymphocytes, the cells of the immune system. The second type of tissue destroys worn out red blood cells, breaking down the haemoglobin into iron, which is recycled, and waste products that are excreted. The spleen also stores red blood cells. When severe blood loss occurs, it contracts and releases them into the circulation.

The **thymus** is a large pink organ lying just under the sternum (breastbone) just cranial to the heart (see diagram 10.1). It has an important function processing lymphocytes so they are capable of recognising and attacking foreign invaders like bacteria.

Other lymph organs are the **bone marrow** of the long bones where lymphocytes are produced and **lymph nodules**, which are like tiny lymph nodes. Large clusters of these are found in the wall of the small intestine (called Peyer's Patches) and in the tonsils.

This page titled 10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

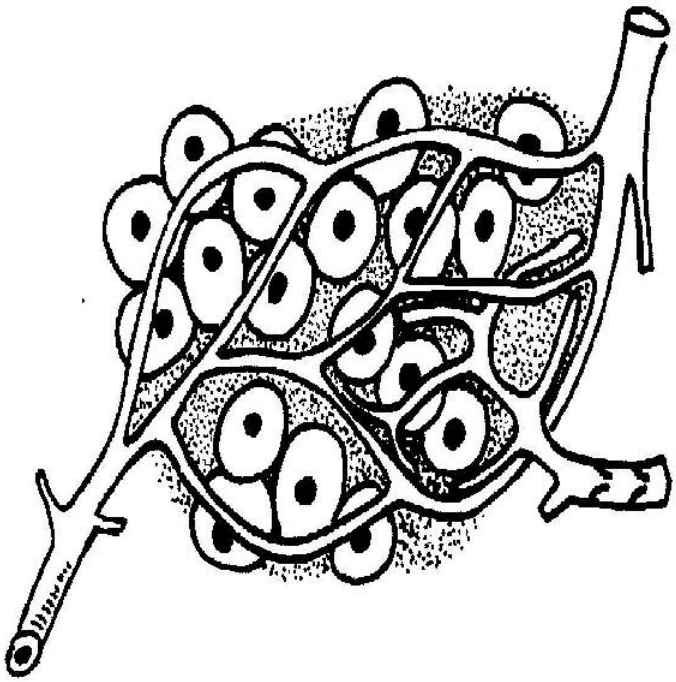
10.3: Summary

- Fluid leaks out of the thin walled capillaries as they pass through the tissues. This is called **tissue fluid**.
- Much of tissue fluid passes back into the capillaries. Some enters the blind-ended lymphatic capillaries that form a network between the cells of the tissues. This fluid is called **lymph**.
- Lymph flows from the **lymphatic capillaries** to **lymph vessels**, passing through **lymph nodes** and along the thoracic duct to join the blood system.
- Lymph nodes filter the lymph and produce **lymphocytes**.
- Other organs of the lymphatic system are the **spleen, thymus, bone marrow**, and **lymph nodules**.

This page titled 10.3: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet

the lymphatic capillaries - dark green; the tissue fluid – light green

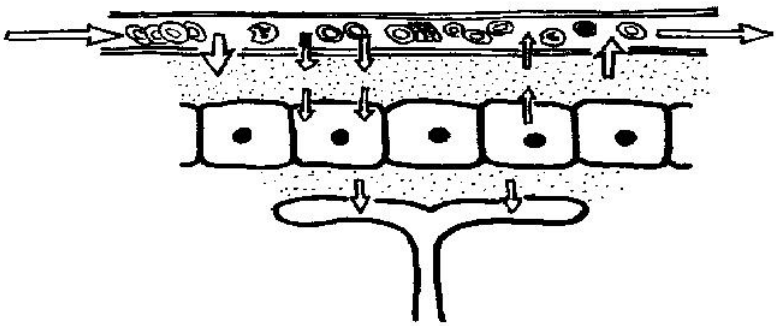


Also add arrows to show the direction of flow of the blood and the direction of flow of the lymph.

2. How is tissue fluid formed?

3. Add the following labels to the diagram showing the formation of lymph below.

Blood capillary; blood entering capillary at high pressure; blood leaving capillary at low pressure
tissue fluid; lymph; lymphatic vessel; cells of tissue



4. Compare plasma, serum, tissue fluid and lymph by filling in the cells in the table below.

	Blood plasma	Serum	Tissue fluid	Lymph
Definition/where found	Clear fluid part of blood	?	?	Fluid in lymphatic vessels

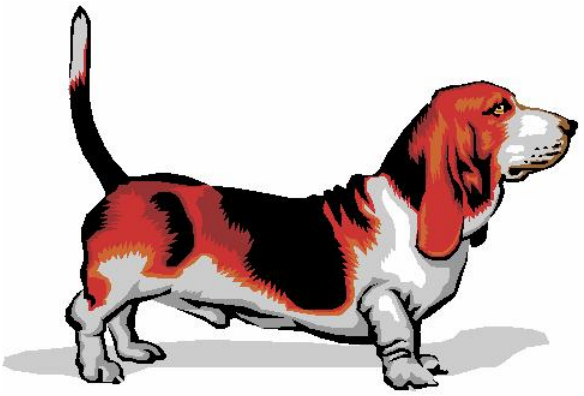
5. When lymph has entered the lymphatics, how does it make its way back to the blood stream?

6. This is a function of lymph nodes:

a) Adding protein to lymph
b) Filtering bacteria and debris from lymph
c) Producing granulocytes
d) Helping blood to clot

7. Mark the positions of the following lymph nodes on the picture of the dog below.

Popliteal; superficial inguinal; prescapular; parotid



8. Name three organs of the lymphatic system (other than lymph nodes).

i. .....
ii. .....
iii .....

9. List three functions of the lymphatic system

i. .....
ii.....
iii.....

10. True or false?

i. A major function of lymph nodes is to filter foreign substances from the lymph. T / F

ii. Lymphatic vessels are identical in structure to veins. T / F

iii. The heart beat helps push lymph along lymphatic vessels. T / F

iv. The cisterna chyli and thoracic duct are parts of the lymphatic system. T / F

v. The spleen is the largest lymphatic organ. T / F

vi. The spleen is an important store of white blood cells. T / F

vii. The thymus gland is located cranially to the heart T / F

viii. A major function of the thymus is to produce monocytes. T / F

ix. Peyers patches are located in the wall of the stomach. T / F

x. The lymphatic system sometimes transports cancer cells around the body. T / F

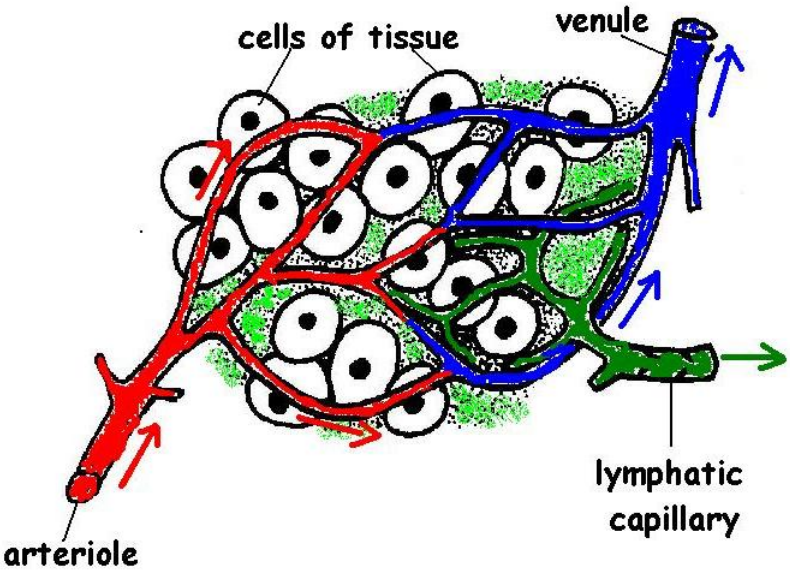
Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.5: Lymphatic System Answers

1. a. Add labels or colour in the diagram of a capillary bed and associated lymphatic vessels.

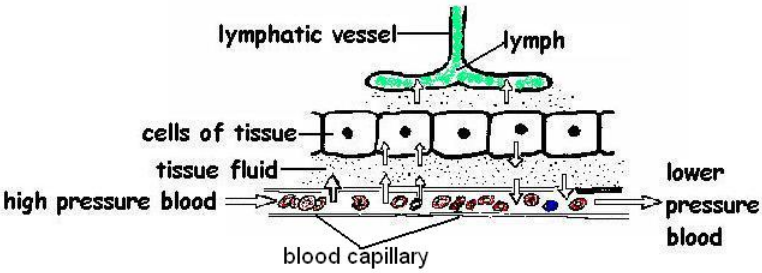


2. How is tissue fluid formed? *Tissue fluid is the fluid that leaves the capillaries to surround the cells of the tissues. Water leaves the capillaries by osmosis and substances like salts, amino acids and glucose generally move by diffusion.*

3. Add the following labels to the diagram showing the formation of lymph below.

Blood capillary; blood entering capillary at high pressure; blood leaving capillary at low pressure

tissue fluid; lymph; lymphatic vessel; cells of tissue



4. Compare plasma, serum, tissue fluid and lymph by filling in the cells in the table below.

	Blood plasma	Serum	Tissue fluid	Lymph
Definition/where found	*Clear fluid* part of blood	*Fluid left when blood clots*	*Fluid surrounding cells. Formed from plasma*	*Fluid in lymphatic vessels*

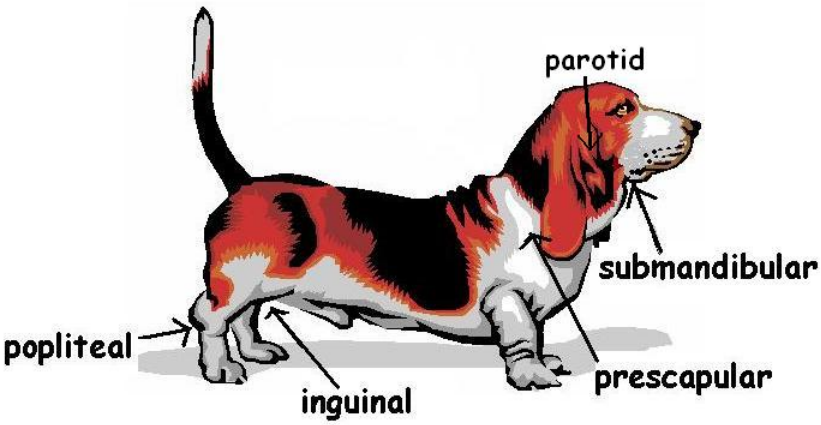
5. When lymph has entered the lymphatics, how does it make its way back to the blood stream? *Lymph flows along the lymphatic vessels pushed along by the contraction of the muscles surrounding them. Valves prevent it flowing backwards. It flows through at least one lymph node before rejoining the blood circulation via a vessel cranial to the heart.*

6. This is a function of lymph nodes:

b) Filtering bacteria and debris from lymph

7. Mark the positions of the following lymph nodes on the picture of the dog below.

Popliteal; superficial inguinal; submandibular prescapular; parotid



8. Name three organs of the lymphatic system (other than lymph nodes).

i. *Spleen*
ii. *Thymus*
iii *Lymph nodules e.g Peyer's patches*
iv *Bone marrow*

9. List three functions of the lymphatic system

i. *Filtering debris, bacteria etc. from the lymph.*
ii. *Producing lymphocytes*.
iii.*Returning fluid to the circulatory system.*

10. True or false?

i. A major function of lymph nodes is to filter foreign substances from the lymph. *T*

ii. Lymphatic vessels are identical in structure to veins. *F The walls of lymphatics are much thinner (1 cell thick) than those of veins (many cells thick).*

iii. The heart beat helps push lymph along lymphatic vessels. *F The heart beat has no effect on lymph flow. The contraction of the muscles surrounding the lymphatic vessels is the main mechanism that pushes lymph along.*

iv. The cisterna chyli and thoracic duct are parts of the lymphatic system. *T*

v. The spleen is the largest lymphatic organ. *T*

vi. The spleen is an important store of white blood cells. *F The spleen stores red blood cells.*

vii. The thymus gland is located cranially to the heart *T*

viii. A major function of the thymus is to produce monocytes. *F The thymus produces and modifies lymphocytes.*

ix. Peyers patches are located in the wall of the stomach. *F Peyer's patches are small lymph nodes located in the wall of the small intestine.*

x. The lymphatic system sometimes transports cancer cells around the body. *T*

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 10.5: Lymphatic System Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.6: Test Yourself

1. What is the difference between tissue fluid and lymph?

2. By what route does lymph make its way back to join the blood of the circulatory system?

3. As the lymphatic system has no heart to push the lymph along what makes it flow?

4. What happens to the lymph as it passes through a lymph node?

5. Where is the spleen located in the body?

6. Where is the thymus located in the body?

7. What is the function of lymphocytes?

This page titled 10.6: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.7: Websites

- http://www.cancerhelp.org.uk/help/de...=117Cancerhelp

A nice clear explanation here with great diagrams of the (human) lymphatic system.

- www.jdaross.cwc.net/lymphatics2.htm Lymphatic system

Introduction to the Lymphatic System. A good description of lymph circulation with an animation.

- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Lymphatic_system Wikipedia

Good information here on the (human) lymphatic system, lymph circulation and lymphoid organs.

This page titled 10.7: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: The Gut and Digestion

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- what is meant by the terms: ingestion, digestion, absorption, assimilation, egestion, peristalsis and chyme
- the characteristics, advantages and disadvantages of a herbivorous, carnivorous and omnivorous diet
- the 4 main functions of the gut
- the parts of the gut in the order in which the food passes down it

Plant cells are made of organic molecules using energy from the sun. This process is called photosynthesis. Animals rely on these ready-made organic molecules to supply them with their food. Some animals (herbivores) eat plants; some (carnivores) eat the herbivores.

11.1: Herbivores
11.2: Carnivores
11.3: Omnivores
11.4: Treatment of Food
11.5: The Gut
11.6: Mouth
11.7: Teeth
11.8: Oesophagus
11.9: Stomach
11.10: Small Intestine
11.11: The Rumen
11.12: Large Intestine
11.13: Functional Caecum
11.14: The Gut Of Birds
11.15: Digestion
11.16: Pancreatic juice
11.17: Intestinal Juice
11.18: Absorption
11.19: The Liver
11.20: Summary
11.21: Worksheet
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
11.23: Digestive System Answers
11.24: Test Yourself
11.25: Websites

This page titled 11: The Gut and Digestion is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.1: Herbivores

Herbivores *eat plant material. While no animal produces the digestive enzymes to break down the large* ***cellulose*** *molecules in the plant cell walls, micro-organisms' like bacteria, on the other hand, can break them down. Therefore herbivores employ micro-organisms to do the job for them.*

There are three types of herbivore:

1. The first, **ruminants** like cattle, sheep and goats, house these bacteria in a special compartment in the enlarged stomach called the **rumen**.
2. The second group has an enlarged large intestine and caecum, called a **functional caecum**, occupied by cellulose digesting micro-organisms. These non-ruminant herbivores include the horse, rabbit and rat.
3. Humans also have a cecum and can be classified as the third type of herbivorous class, along with orangutans and gorillas.

Plants are a primary pure and good source of nutrients, however they aren't digested very easily and therefore herbivores have to eat large quantities of food to obtain all they require. Herbivores like cows, horses and rabbits typically spend much of their day feeding. To give the micro-organisms access to the cellulose molecules, the plant cell walls need to be broken down. This is why herbivores have teeth that are adapted to crush and grind. Their guts also tend to be lengthy and the food takes a long time to pass through it.

Eating plants have other advantages. Plants are immobile so herbivores normally have to spend little energy collecting them. This contrasts with another main group of animals - the carnivores that often have to chase their prey.

This page titled 11.1: Herbivores is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.2: Carnivores

Carnivorous animals like those in the cat and dog families, polar bears, seals, crocodiles and birds of prey catch and eat other animals. They often have to use large amounts of energy finding, stalking, catching and killing their prey. However, they are rewarded by the fact that meat provides a very concentrated source of nutrients. Carnivores in the wild therefore tend to eat distinct meals often with long and irregular intervals between them. Time after feeding is spent digesting and absorbing the food.

The guts of carnivores are usually shorter and less complex than those of herbivores because meat is easier to digest than plant material. Carnivores usually have teeth that are specialised for dealing with flesh, gristle and bone. They have sleek bodies, strong, sharp claws and keen senses of smell, hearing and sight. They are also often cunning, alert and have an aggressive nature.

This page titled 11.2: Carnivores is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.3: Omnivores

Many animals feed on both animal and vegetable material – they are **omnivorous.** Most primates are herbivorous but a few, such as chimpanzees, belong to this category as do pigs and rats. Their food is diverse, ranging from plant material to animals they have either killed themselves or scavenged from other carnivores. Omnivores lack the specialised teeth and guts of carnivores and herbivores but are often highly intelligent and adaptable reflecting their varied diet.

This page titled 11.3: Omnivores is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.4: Treatment of Food

Whether an animal eats plants or flesh, the **carbohydrates**, **fats** and **proteins** in the food it eats are generally giant molecules (see chapter 1). These need to be split up into smaller ones before they can pass into the blood and enter the cells to be used for energy or to make new cell constituents.

For example:

Carbohydrates like cellulose, starch, and glycogen need to be split into **glucose** and other **monosaccharides**;

Proteins need to be split into **amino acids**;

Fats or **lipids** need to be split into **fatty acids** and **glycerol**.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 11.4: Treatment of Food is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.5: The Gut

The **digestive tract, alimentary canal** or **gut** is a hollow tube stretching from the mouth to the anus. It is the organ system concerned with the treatment of foods.

At the mouth the large food molecules are taken into the gut - this is called **ingestion**. They must then be broken down into smaller ones by digestive enzymes - **digestion**, before they can be taken from the gut into the blood stream - **absorption**. The cells of the body can then use these small molecules - **assimilation**. The indigestible waste products are eliminated from the body by the act of **egestion** (see diagram 11.1).

Anatomy and physiology of animals From ingestion to egestion.jpg

Diagram 11.1 - From ingestion to egestion

The 4 major functions of the gut are:

1. Transporting the food;
2. Processing the food physically by breaking it up (chewing), mixing, adding fluid etc.
3. Processing the food chemically by adding digestive enzymes to split large food molecules into smaller ones.
4. Absorbing these small molecules into the blood stream so the body can use them.

The regions of a typical mammals gut (for example a cat or dog) are shown in diagram 11.2.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Typical mammalian gut.jpg

Diagram 11.2 - A typical mammalian gut

The food that enters the **mouth** passes to the **oesophagus**, then to the **stomach**, **small intestine**, **cecum**, **large intestine**, **rectum** and finally undigested material exits at the **anus**. The **liver** and **pancreas** produce secretions that aid digestion and the **gall bladder** stores **bile**. Herbivores have an appendix which they use for the digestion of cellulose. Carnivores have an appendix but is not of any function anymore due to the fact that their diet is not based on cellulose anymore.

This page titled 11.5: The Gut is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.6: Mouth

The mouth takes food into the body. The lips hold the food inside the mouth during chewing and allow the baby animal to suck on its mother's teat. In elephants the lips (and nose) have developed into the trunk which is the main food collecting tool. Some mammals, e.g. hamsters, have stretchy cheek pouches that they use to carry food or material to make their nests.

The sight or smell of food and its presence in the mouth stimulates the **salivary glands**to secrete **saliva**. There are four pairs of these glands in cats and dogs (see diagram 11.3). The fluid they produce moistens and softens the food making it easier to swallow. It also contains the enzyme, **salivary amylase**, which starts the digestion of starch.

The **tongue** moves food around the mouth and rolls it into a ball for swallowing. **Taste buds** are located on the tongue and in dogs and cats it is covered with spiny projections used for grooming and lapping. The cow's tongue is prehensile and wraps around grass to graze it.

Swallowing is a complex reflex involving 25 different muscles. It pushes food into the oesophagus and at the same time a small flap of tissue called the **epiglottis** closes off the windpipe so food doesn't go 'down the wrong way' and choke the animal (see diagram 11.4).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Salivary glands.jpg

Diagram 11.3 - Salivary glands

Anatomy and physiology of animals Section through head of a dog.jpg

Diagram 11.4 - Section through the head of a dog

This page titled 11.6: Mouth is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.7: Teeth

Teeth seize, tear and grind food. They are inserted into sockets in the bone and consist of a crown above the gum and root below. The crown is covered with a layer of **enamel**, the hardest substance in the body. Below this is the **dentine**, a softer but tough and shock resistant material. At the centre of the tooth is a space filled with **pulp** which contains blood vessels and nerves. The tooth is cemented into the **socket** and in most teeth the tip of the root is quite narrow with a small opening for the blood vessels and nerves (see diagram 11.5).

In teeth that grow continuously, like the incisors of rodents, the opening remains large and these teeth are called **open rooted teeth**. Mammals have 2 distinct sets of teeth. The first the **milk teeth** are replaced by the **permanent teeth**.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Stucture of tooth.jpg

Diagram 11.5 - Structure of a tooth

Types Of Teeth

All the teeth of fish and reptiles are similar but mammals usually have four different types of teeth.

The **incisors** are the chisel-shaped 'biting off' teeth at the front of the mouth. In rodents and rabbits the incisors never stop growing (open-rooted teeth). They must be worn or ground down continuously by gnawing. They have hard enamel on one surface only so they wear unevenly and maintain their sharp cutting edge.

The largest incisors in the animal kingdom are found in elephants, for tusks are actually giant incisors. Sloths have no incisors at all, and sheep have no incisors in the upper jaw (see diagram 11.6). Instead there is a horny pad against which the bottom incisors cut.

The **canines** or 'wolf-teeth' are long, cone-shaped teeth situated just behind the incisors. They are particularly well developed in the dog and cat families where they are used to hold, stab and kill the prey (see diagram 11.7).

The tusks of boars and walruses are large canines while rodents and herbivores like sheep have no (or reduced) canines. In these animals the space where the canines would normally be is called the **diastema**. In rodents like the rat and beaver it allows the debris from gnawing to be expelled easily.

The cheek teeth or **premolars** and **molars** crush and grind the food. They are particularly well developed in herbivores where they have complex ridges that form broad grinding surfaces (see diagram 11.6). These are created from alternating bands of hard enamel and softer dentine that wear at different rates.

In carnivores the premolars and molars slice against each other like scissors and are called **carnassial** teeth see diagram 11.7). They are used for shearing flesh and bone.

Dental Formula

The numbers of the different kinds of teeth can be expressed in a **dental formula**. This gives the numbers of incisors, canines, premolars and molars in **one half** of the mouth. The numbers of these four types of teeth in the left **or** right **half of the upper jaw** are written above a horizontal line and the four types of teeth in the right **or** left **half of the lower jaw** are written below it.

Thus the dental formula for the sheep is:

$$\begin{array}{c} 0.0.3.3 \\ \hline 3.1.3.3 \end{array}$$

It indicates that in the upper right (or left) **half** of the jaw there are no incisors or canines (i.e. there is a **diastema**), three premolars and three molars. In the lower right (or left) **half** of the jaw are three incisors, one canine, three premolars and three molars (see diagram 11.6).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Sheeps skull.jpg

Diagram 11.6 - A sheep's skull

The dental formula for a dog is:

3.1.4.2

3.1.4.3

The formula indicates that in the right (or left) **half** of the upper jaw there are three incisors, one canine, four premolars and two molars. In the right (or left) **half** of the lower jaw there are three incisors, one canine, four premolars and three molars (see diagram 11.7).

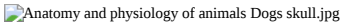


Diagram 11.7 - A dog's skull

This page titled 11.7: Teeth is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.8: Oesophagus

The **oesophagus** transports food to the stomach. Food is moved along the oesophagus, as it is along the small and large intestines, by contraction of the smooth muscles in the walls that push the food along rather like toothpaste along a tube. This movement is called **peristalsis** (see diagram 11.8).

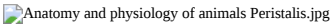


Diagram 11.8 - Peristalsis

This page titled 11.8: Oesophagus is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.9: Stomach

The **stomach** stores and mixes the food. Glands in the wall secrete **gastric juice** that contains enzymes to digest protein and fats as well as **hydrochloric acid** to make the contents very acidic. The walls of the stomach are very muscular and churn and mix the food with the gastric juice to form a watery mixture called **chyme** (pronounced kime). Rings of muscle called **sphincters** at the entrance and exit to the stomach control the movement of food into and out of it (see diagram 11.9).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Stomach.jpg

Diagram 11.9 - The stomach

This page titled 11.9: Stomach is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.10: Small Intestine

Most of the breakdown of the large food molecules and absorption of the smaller molecules take place in the long and narrow small intestine. The total length varies but it is about 6.5 metres in humans, 21 metres in the horse, 40 metres in the ox and over 150 metres in the blue whale.

It is divided into 3 sections: the duodenum (after the stomach), jejunum and ileum. The duodenum receives 3 different secretions:

1) **Bile** from the liver;
2) **Pancreatic juice** from the pancreas and
3) **Intestinal juice** from glands in the intestinal wall.

These complete the digestion of starch, fats and protein. The products of digestion are absorbed into the blood and lymphatic system through the wall of the intestine, which is lined with tiny finger-like projections called **villi** that increase the surface area for more efficient absorption (see diagram 11.10).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Wall of small intestine showing villi.jpg

Diagram 11.10 - The wall of the small intestine showing villi

This page titled 11.10: Small Intestine is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.11: The Rumen

In ruminant herbivores like cows, sheep and antelopes the stomach is highly modified to act as a “fermentation vat”. It is divided into four parts. The largest part is called the **rumen**. In the cow it occupies the entire left half of the abdominal cavity and can hold up to 270 litres. The **reticulum** is much smaller and has a honeycomb of raised folds on its inner surface. In the camel the reticulum is further modified to store water. The next part is called the **omasum** with a folded inner surface. Camels have no omasum. The final compartment is called the **abomasum**. This is the ‘true’ stomach where muscular walls churn the food and gastric juice is secreted (see diagram 11.11).

Anatomy and physiology of animals The rumen.jpg

Diagram 11.11 - The rumen

Ruminants swallow the grass they graze almost without chewing and it passes down the oesophagus to the rumen and reticulum. Here liquid is added and the muscular walls churn the food. These chambers provide the main fermentation vat of the ruminant stomach. Here bacteria and single-celled animals start to act on the cellulose plant cell walls. These organisms break down the cellulose to smaller molecules that are absorbed to provide the cow or sheep with energy. In the process, the gases methane and carbon dioxide are produced. These cause the “burps” you may hear cows and sheep making.

Not only do the micro-organisms break down the cellulose but they also produce the **vitamins E, B and K** for use by the animal. Their digested bodies provide the ruminant with the majority of its protein requirements.

In the wild grazing is a dangerous activity as it exposes the herbivore to predators. They crop the grass as quickly as possible and then when the animal is in a safer place the food in the rumen can be regurgitated to be chewed at the animal’s leisure. This is ‘chewing the cud’ or **rumination**. The finely ground food may be returned to the rumen for further work by the microorganisms or, if the particles are small enough, it will pass down a special groove in the wall of the oesophagus straight into the omasum. Here the contents are kneaded and water is absorbed before they pass to the abomasum. The abomasum acts as a “proper” stomach and gastric juice is secreted to digest the protein.

This page titled 11.11: The Rumen is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.12: Large Intestine

The **large intestine** consists of the **caecum**, **colon** and **rectum**. The chyme from the small intestine that enters the colon consists mainly of water and undigested material such as cellulose (fibre or roughage). In omnivores like the pig and humans the main function of the colon is absorption of water to give solid faeces. Bacteria in this part of the gut produce vitamins B and K.

The caecum, which forms a dead-end pouch where the small intestine joins the large intestine, is small in pigs and humans and helps water absorption. However, in rabbits, rodents and horses, the caecum is very large and called the **functional caecum**. It is here that cellulose is digested by micro-organisms. The **appendix**, a narrow dead end tube at the end of the caecum, is particularly large in primates but seems to have no digestive function.

This page titled 11.12: Large Intestine is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.13: Functional Caecum

The caecum in the rabbit, rat and guinea pig is greatly enlarged to provide a “fermentation vat” for micro-organisms to break down the cellulose plant cell walls. This is called a **functional caecum** (see diagram 11.12). In the horse both the caecum and the colon are enlarged. As in the rumen, the large cellulose molecules are broken down to smaller molecules that can be absorbed. However, the position of the functional caecum after the main areas of digestion and absorption, means it is potentially less effective than the rumen. This means that the small molecules that are produced there can not be absorbed by the gut but pass out in the faeces. The rabbit and rodents (and foals) solve this problem by eating their own faeces so that they pass through the gut a second time and the products of cellulose digestion can be absorbed in the small intestine. Rabbits produce two kinds of faeces. Softer night-time faeces are eaten directly from the anus and the harder pellets you are probably familiar with, that have passed through the gut twice.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Gut of a rabbit.jpg

Diagram 11.12 - The gut of a rabbit

This page titled 11.13: Functional Caecum is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.14: The Gut Of Birds

Birds' guts have important differences from mammals' guts. Most obviously, birds have a **beak** instead of teeth. Beaks are much lighter than teeth and are an adaptation for flight. Imagine a bird trying to take off and fly with a whole set of teeth in its head! At the base of the oesophagus birds have a bag-like structure called a **crop**. In many birds the crop stores food before it enters the stomach, while in pigeons and doves glands in the crop secretes a special fluid called **crop-milk** which parent birds regurgitate to feed their young. The stomach is also modified and consists of two compartments. The first is the true stomach with muscular walls and enzyme secreting glands. The second compartment is the **gizzard**. In seed eating birds this has very muscular walls and contains pebbles swallowed by the bird to help grind the food. This is the reason why you must always supply a caged bird with grit. In birds of prey like the falcon the walls of the gizzard are much thinner and expand to accommodate large meals (see diagram 11.13).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Stomach & small intestine of hen.jpg

Diagram 11.13 - The stomach and small intestine of a hen

This page titled 11.14: The Gut Of Birds is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.15: Digestion

During digestion the large food molecules are broken down into smaller molecules by **enzymes**. The three most important groups of enzymes secreted into the gut are:

1. **Amylases** that split carbohydrates like starch and glycogen into monosaccharides like glucose.
2. **Proteases** that split proteins into amino acids.
3. **Lipases** that split lipids or fats into fatty acids and glycerol.

Glands produce various secretions which mix with the food as it passes along the gut.

These secretions include:

1. **Saliva** secreted into the mouth from several pairs of **salivary glands** (see diagram 11.3). Saliva consists mainly of water but contains salts, mucous and salivary amylase. The function of saliva is to lubricate food as it is chewed and swallowed and salivary amylase begins the digestion of starch.
2. **Gastric juice** secreted into the stomach from glands in its walls. Gastric juice contains **pepsin** that breaks down protein and hydrochloric acid to produce the acidic conditions under which this enzyme works best. In baby animals rennin to digest milk is also produced in the stomach.
3. **Bile** produced by the liver. It is stored in the **gall bladder** and secreted into the duodenum via the **bile duct** (see diagram 11.14). (Note that the horse, deer, parrot and rat have no gall bladder). Bile is not a digestive enzyme. Its function is to break up large globules of fat into smaller ones so the fat splitting enzymes can gain access the fat molecules.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Liver, gall bladder & pancreas.jpg

Diagram 11.14 - The liver, gall bladder and pancreas

This page titled 11.15: Digestion is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.16: Pancreatic juice

The **pancreas** is a gland located near the beginning of the duodenum (see diagram 11.14). In most animals it is large and easily seen but in rodents and rabbits it lies within the membrane linking the loops of the intestine (the **mesentery**) and is quite difficult to find. **Pancreatic juice** is produced in the pancreas. It flows into the duodenum and contains **amylase** for digesting starch, **lipase** for digesting fats and **protease** for digesting proteins.

This page titled 11.16: Pancreatic juice is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.17: Intestinal Juice

Intestinal juice is produced by glands in the lining of the small intestine. It contains enzymes for digesting disaccharides and proteins as well as mucus and salts to make the contents of the small intestine more alkaline so the enzymes can work.

This page titled 11.17: Intestinal Juice is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.18: Absorption

The small molecules produced by digestion are absorbed into the **villi** of the wall of the **small intestine**. The tiny finger-like projections of the villi increase the surface area for absorption. Glucose and amino acids pass directly through the wall into the blood stream by diffusion or active transport. Fatty acids and glycerol enter vessels of the lymphatic system (**lacteals**) that run up the centre of each villus.

This page titled 11.18: Absorption is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.19: The Liver

The liver is situated in the abdominal cavity adjacent to the diaphragm (see diagrams 2 and 14). It is the largest single organ of the body and has over 100 known functions. Its most important digestive functions are:

1. the production of **bile** to help the digestion of fats (described above) and
2. the control of **blood sugar** levels

Glucose is absorbed into the capillaries of the villi of the intestine. The blood stream takes it directly to the liver via a blood vessel known as the **hepatic portal vessel** or **vein** (see diagram 11.15).

The liver converts this glucose into glycogen which it stores. When glucose levels are low the liver can convert the glycogen back into glucose. It releases this back into the blood to keep the level of glucose constant. The hormone **insulin**, produced by special cells in the **pancreas**, controls this process.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Control of glucose by the liver.jpg

Diagram 11.15 - The control of blood glucose by the liver

Other functions of the liver include:

3. making **vitamin A**,
4. making the **proteins** that are found in the **blood plasma** (**albumin, globulin** and **fibrinogen**),
5. storing **iron**,
6. removing **toxic substances** like alcohol and poisons from the blood and converting them to safer substances,
7. producing **heat** to help maintain the temperature of the body.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Summary of the main functions of the different regions of the gut.jpg

Diagram 11.16 - Summary of the main functions of the different regions of the gut

This page titled 11.19: The Liver is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.20: Summary

- The **gut** breaks down plant and animal materials into nutrients that can be used by animals' bodies.
- Plant material is more difficult to break down than animal tissue. The gut of **herbivores** is therefore longer and more complex than that of **carnivores**. Herbivores usually have a compartment (the **rumen** or **functional caecum**) housing micro-organisms to break down the **cellulose** wall of plants.
- Chewing by the teeth begins the food processing. There are 4 main types of teeth: **incisors, canines, premolars** and **molars**. In dogs and cats the premolars and molars are adapted to slice against each other and are called **carnassial** teeth.
- **Saliva** is secreted in the mouth. It lubricates the food for swallowing and contains an enzyme to break down starch.
- Chewed food is swallowed and passes down the **oesophagus** by waves of contraction of the wall called **peristalsis.** The food passes to the stomach where it is churned and mixed with acidic **gastric juice** that begins the digestion of protein.
- The resulting **chyme** passes down the small intestine where enzymes that digest fats, proteins and carbohydrates are secreted. **Bile** produced by the liver is also secreted here. It helps in the breakdown of fats. **Villi** provide the large surface area necessary for the absorption of the products of digestion.
- In the **colon** and **caecum** water is absorbed and micro organisms produce some **vitamin B and K**. In rabbits, horses and rodents the caecum is enlarged as a **functional caecum** and micro-organisms break down cellulose cell walls to simpler carbohydrates. Waste products exit the body via the **rectum** and **anus**.
- The **pancreas** produces **pancreatic juice** that contains many of the enzymes secreted into the small intestine.
- In addition to producing bile the liver regulates blood sugar levels by converting glucose absorbed by the villi into glycogen and storing it. The liver also removes toxic substances from the blood, stores iron, makes vitamin A and produces heat.

This page titled 11.20: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.23: Digestive System Answers

1. Add the labels to the diagram of a mammal's gut below.

Digestive system labelled.JPG

2. Match the region of the digestive system in the list below with the correct function.

Region/organ	Function
B. *Pancreas*	Produces the enzymes to digest proteins, fats and carbohydrates in the small intestine. Also produces the hormone insulin
H. *Tongue*	Organ that mixes food in the mouth and makes swallowing happen
N. *Rumen*	Micro-organisms digest cellulose in this modified part of the stomach
L. *Salivary glands*	Produce saliva containing salivary amylase
K. *Oesophagus*	Carries the food from the mouth to the stomach
F. *Gall bladder*	Stores bile
M. *Pyloric sphincter*	This muscle controls the passage of food out of the stomach
D. Pharynx	Both food and air pass along this
A. *Rectum*	Indigestible matter held here before defecation
I. *Liver*	Produces bile
E. *Stomach*	A bag made of muscle where food is held. Gastric juice and hydrochloric acid are added here.
J. *Small intestine*	Where food is mixed with bile and digestion of proteins, fats and carbohydrates takes place
G. *Colon*	Water and salt are absorbed here
C. *Functional caecu*m ?	Where micro-organisms digest fibre in rabbits and horses

3. True or False?

a) Carnivores eat meat, herbivores eat plants and omnivores eat both. *T*

b) These are all herbivores: cows, horses, goats, giraffes, rabbits and guinea pigs. *T*

c) Plant material has high food value and animals need to eat only a little to get all the nutrients they need.

F. Plants have a low food value and animals need to eat a large volume to obtain sufficient nutrients.

d) Herbivores have well developed teeth for crushing and grinding plant cell walls. *T*

e) Herbivores have glands that produce enzymes to digest plant material.

F. No mammals produce their own enzymes to digest the cellulose cell walls of plants. Herbivores rely on microorganisms that can digest cellulose to do this for them.

f) The rumen holds micro-organisms that digest cellulose. *T*

g) Animals with a rumen also have a functional caecum to help digest cellulose.

F. Herbivores either have a rumen or a functional caecum, not both.

h) Carnivores need to eat most of the day to get enough nutrients.

F. Meat has a high food value and is easily digested so carnivores can eat a quick meal and spend the rest of the day (and even the next) resting.

i) Carnassial teeth are modified canines for shearing flesh and bone.

F. Carnassials are modified combined premolars and molars.

j) Open rooted teeth are found in rats and rabbits and grow throughout the animal's life.*T*

k) The numbers in a dental formula indicate the numbers of different kinds of teeth in one side only of the mouth of an animal. *T*

l) Dentine is the hardest substance in a tooth.

F. No, enamel found on the outside of the tooth is the hardest substance in the body.

4. Match the terms in the list below with the descriptions in the table

Term	Description
Enamel	Hardest substance in the body; covers the tooth
Dentine	Found under the enamel of the tooth
Incisors	Chisel-shaped teeth at the front of the mouth
Dental formula	The way in which the number of the different kinds of teeth of mammals can be expressed
Diastema	A space in the mouth of rodents and herbivores where the canines would normally be.
Open rooted	These teeth keep growing through the life of the animal. (E.g. in rodents).
Premolars and molars	These teeth are used for grinding food.
Premolars and molars	These teeth are also used for grinding food.
Canines	Long cone shaped teeth, well developed in carnivores, form tusks in male pigs (boars).
Carnassial teeth	These teeth are found in carnivores. They are formed from premolars and molars and are used for shearing flesh

5. Circle the odd one out.

a) Rabbit, guinea pig, horse, *goat*, rat, zebra.

All are herbivores with a functional caecum except the goat which has a rumen

b) Sheep, cow, goat, antelope, giraffe, *pig*, camel.

All have rumens except for the pig which has an unmodified stomach with a single compartment - monogastric.

c) Incisors, canines, *carnassials*, molars, premolars.

All are teeth types as given in the dental formula. Carnassials are modified premolars and molars.

d) Stomach, oesophagus, *liver*, small intestine, rectum, caecum.

All are parts of the digestive tube or tract except for the liver which is a gland supplying secretions to the gut (among many other functions).

e) Saliva, bile, pancreatic juice, *chyme*, gastric juice.

All are secretions into the gut except chyme which is the name given for the liquid "food" as it passes down the gut.

f) Pancreas, salivary glands, liver; *gall bladder*; intestinal glands.

All are glands that produce secretions into the gut except the gall bladder that stores the bile produced by the liver.

g) Pepsin, amylase, lipase, *bile*, protease.

All are digestive enzymes that break down large food molecules into smaller ones except for bile that breaks down the large "globs" of fat into smaller ones so the digestive enzymes can be effective.

h) Reticulum, *functional caecum*, omassum, abomassum, rumen.

All are parts of the rumen except for functional caecum.

6. The dental formula below is of a rabbit.

2 0 3 3
1 0 2 3

This formula indicates that the rabbit:

b) has a diastema

7. **Peristalsis** is: *:a) the rhythmic contraction of the smooth muscle in the gut wall to push food along*

8. Colour in (and label) the diagram of a villus in the small intestine using the colours suggested below.

Villus labeled and coloured.JPG

Outer layer of columnar epithelium - Yellow:Artery - Red
Vein - Blue:Lymphatic vessel - Green
Capillaries - Red turning to blue
Label the **lacteal; lumen of the gut; artery; vein; lymphatic vessel**

9. Arrange the following parts of the digestive system in the order in which food passes through on the way from the mouth to the anus.

mouth	A. pharynx	H. oesophagus	D. stomach	B. pyloric sphincter	F. small intestine	E. caecum	G. colon	C. rectum	anus

10. The digestive enzymes in the gut break down the large food molecules into smaller ones that can be absorbed through the walls of the villi.

Complete the table below showing the large food molecules, the enzymes that digest them and the product of that breakdown.

Large molecule	Digestive enzyme	Small molecule after digestion
Carbohydrates e.g. Starch	Amylase	Glucose
Fats or lipids	Lipase	Fatty acids and glycerol
Proteins	Pepsin, protease	Amino acids

11. Some of these are functions of the liver: (Circle seven)

- *Making bile*
- *Producing heat*
- *Storing vitamin A*
- *Storing glycogen*
- *Storing iron*
- *Removing toxic molecules like alcohol from the blood*
- *Making blood proteins*

12. Just for fun!

There are a number of errors in the description of digestion below. Correct as many as you can find.

> Food ~~egested~~ *ingested* by the animal is bitten off by the ~~canine teeth~~ *incisors* and chewed by the ~~incisors~~ *premolars and molars*. Saliva, an ~~acid~~ *alkaline* solution secreted by the ~~tonsil~~ *salivary* glands, contains the enzyme ~~pepsin~~ *salivary amylase*which begins the digestion of ~~fats~~ *starch/carbohydrates.*
>
> In the stomach ~~pyloric~~ *gastric* juice is secreted which contains enzymes to digest ~~starch~~ *protein*. In ~~all~~ some herbivore animals the ~~small intestine~~ *stomach* is modified into a ~~two~~ *four* chambered organ called the ~~gizzard~~ *rumen*. Here the grass etc. is mixed with micro-organisms that break down the ~~protein~~ *cellulose* plant walls.
>
> A ring of muscle called a ~~rictus~~ *sphincter* controls the passage of food from the stomach into the ~~caecum~~ *small intestine*, where ~~gall~~ *bile* and pancreatic juice are secreted. ~~Hydrochloric acid~~ *sodium bicarbonate* is also secreted here to make the ~~chyle~~ *chyme* ~~acidic~~ *alkaline*.
>
> In the small intestine ~~villas~~ *villi* increase the surface area for absorption of the digested material. Food then passes into the ~~colon~~ *caecum* on its way to the ~~caecum~~*colon*.
>
> In horses and sheep the ~~facultative colon~~ *functional caecum* holds micro-organisms which break down ~~animal~~ *plant* cell walls. In the ~~reticulum~~ *colon* gas is ~~absorbed~~*produced* and the waste material passes out of the digestive system via the ~~urethra~~*rectum/anus*.

Total possible corrections to find 27

This page titled 11.23: Digestive System Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.24: Test Yourself

Then work through the Test Yourself below to see if you have understood and remembered what you learned.

1. Name the four different kinds of teeth

2. Give 2 facts about how the teeth of cats and dogs are adapted for a carnivorous diet:

    1.
    2.

3. What does saliva do to the food?

4. What is peristalsis?

5. What happens to the food in the stomach?

6. What is chyme?

7. Where does the chyme go after leaving the stomach?

8. What are villi and what do they do?

9. What happens in the small intestine?

10. Where is the pancreas and what does it do?

11. How does the caecum of rabbits differ from that of cats?

12. How does the liver help control the glucose levels in the blood?

13. Give 2 other functions of the liver:

    1.
    2.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 11.24: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.25: Websites

- http://www.second-opinions.co.uk/carn_herb_comparison.html Second opinion. A good comparison of the guts of carnivores and herbivores
- www.chu.cam.ac.uk/~ALRF/giintro.htm The gastrointestinal system. A good comparison of the guts of carnivores and herbivores with more advanced information than in the previous site.
- http://www.westga.edu/~lkral/peristalsis/index.html Peristalsis animation.
- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Digestion Wikipedia on digestion with links to further information on most aspects. Like most websites this is mainly about human digestion but much is applicable to animals.

This page titled 11.25: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

12: Urinary System

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the parts of the urinary system
- the structure and function of a kidney
- the structure and function of a kidney tubule or nephron
- the processes of filtration, reabsorption, secretion and concentration that convert blood to urine in the kidney tubule
- the function of antidiuretic hormone in producing concentrated urine
- the composition, storage and voiding of normal urine
- abnormal constituents of urine and their significance
- the functions of the kidney in excreting nitrogenous waste, controlling water levels and regulating salt concentrations and acid-base balance
- that birds do not have a bladder

12.1: Homeostasis
12.2: Water in the Body
12.3: Maintaining Water Balance
12.4: Excretion
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals
12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
12.9: Other Functions Of The Kidney
12.10: Normal Urine
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
12.12: Excretion In Birds
12.13: Summary
12.14: Worksheet
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
12.17: Test Yourself
12.18: Websites

This page titled 12: Urinary System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.1: Homeostasis

The cells of an animal can only remain healthy if the conditions are just right. The processes that take place in them are upset if the temperature is too high or too low, or if the fluid around or inside them is too acid or alkaline. **Homeostasis** is the name given to the processes that help keep the internal conditions constant even when external conditions change. The word means, “keeping things stable”.

There are a number of organs in the body that play a part in maintaining homeostasis. For example, the skin helps keep the internal temperature of bird and mammals bodies within a narrow range even when the outside temperatures change (see Chapters 5 and 16); the lungs control the amount of carbon dioxide in the blood (see Chapters 8 and 16); the liver and pancreas work together to keep the amount of glucose in the blood within narrow limits (see Chapter 5) and the kidneys regulate the acidity and the concentration of water and salt in the blood (also see Chapter 16). How the kidneys do this will be described later in this chapter.

Hormones are chemicals that carry messages around the body in the blood and are central to many of the homeostatic processes mentioned above. Their role will be described in more detail in Chapter 16.

This page titled 12.1: Homeostasis is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.2: Water in the Body

Water is essential for living things to survive because all the chemical reactions within a body take place in a solution of water. An animal's body consists of up to 80% water. The exact proportion depends on the type of animal, its age, sex, health and whether or not it has had sufficient to drink. Generally animals do not survive a loss of more than 15% of their body water.

In vertebrates almost 2/3rd of this water is in the cells (**intracellular fluid**). The rest is outside the cells (**extracellular fluid**) where it is found in the spaces around the cells (**tissue fluid**), as well as in the blood and lymph.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Water in the body.jpg

Diagram 12.1 - Water in the body

This page titled 12.2: Water in the Body is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.3: Maintaining Water Balance

Animals lose water through their skin and lungs, in the faeces and urine. These losses must be made up by water in food and drink and from the water that is a by-product of chemical reactions. If the animal does not manage to compensate for water loss the dissolved substances in the blood may become so concentrated they become lethal. To prevent this happening various mechanisms come into play as soon as the concentration of the blood increases. A part of the brain called the **hypothalamus** is in charge of these homeostatic processes. The most important is the feeling of thirst that is triggered by an increase in blood concentration. This stimulates an animal to find water and drink it.

The kidneys are also involved in maintaining water balance as various hormones instruct them to produce more concentrated urine and so retain some of the water that would otherwise be lost (see later in this Chapter and Chapter 16).

Desert Animals

Coping with water loss is a particular problem for animals that live in dry conditions. Some, like the camel, have developed great tolerance for dehydration. For example, under some conditions, camels can withstand the loss of one third of their body mass as water. They can also survive wide daily changes in temperature. This means they do not have to use large quantities of water in sweat to cool the body by evaporation.

Smaller animals are more able than large ones to avoid extremes of temperature or dry conditions by resting in sheltered more humid situations during the day and being active only at night.

The kangaroo rat is able to survive without access to any drinking water at all because it does not sweat and produces extremely concentrated urine. Water from its food and from chemical processes is sufficient to supply all its requirements.

This page titled 12.3: Maintaining Water Balance is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.4: Excretion

Animals need to excrete because they take in substances that are excess to the body's requirements and many of the chemical reactions in the body produce waste products. If these substances were not removed they would poison cells or slow down metabolism. All animals therefore have some means of getting rid of these wastes.

The major waste products in mammals are carbon dioxide that is removed by the lungs, and urea that is produced when excess amino acids (from proteins) are broken down. Urea is filtered from the blood by the kidneys.

Urinary System of Dog.JPG

Diagram 12.2 - The position of the organs of the urinary system in a dog

This page titled 12.4: Excretion is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System

The **kidneys** in mammals are bean-shaped organs that lie in the abdominal cavity attached to the dorsal wall on either side of the spine (see diagram 12.2). An artery from the dorsal aorta called the **renal artery** supplies blood to them and the **renal vein** drains them.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Urinary system.jpg

Diagram 12.3 - The urinary system

To the naked eye kidneys seem simple enough organs. They are covered by a fibrous coat or capsule and if cut in half lengthways (longitudinally) two distinct regions can be seen - an inner region or **medulla** and the outer **cortex**. A cavity within the kidney called the **pelvis**collects the urine and carries it to the **ureter**, which connects with the **bladder** where the urine is stored temporarily. Rings of muscle (**sphincters**) control the release of urine from the bladder and the urine leaves the body through the **urethra** (see diagrams 12.3 and 12.4).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Dissected kidney.jpg

Diagram 12.4 - The dissected kidney

This page titled 12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons

It is only when you examine kidneys under the microscope that you find that their structure is not simple at all. The cortex and medulla are seen to be composed of masses of tiny tubes. These are called **kidney tubules** or **nephrons** (see diagrams 12.5 and 12.6). A human kidney consists of over a million of them.

Diagram 12.5 - Several kidney tubules or nephrons

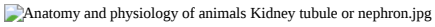


Diagram 12.6 - A kidney tubule or nephron

At one end of each nephron, in the cortex of the kidney, is a cup shaped structure called the (**Bowman's** or **renal**) **capsule**. It surrounds a tuft of capillaries called the **glomerulus** that carries high-pressure blood. Together the glomerulus and capsule act as a blood-filtering device (see diagram 12.7). The holes in the filter allow most of the contents of the blood through except the red and white cells and large protein molecules. The fluid flowing from the capsule into the rest of the kidney tubule is therefore very similar to blood plasma and contains many useful substances like water, glucose, salt and amino acids. It also contains waste products like **urea**.

Processes Occurring In The Nephron

After entering the glomerulus the filtered fluid flows along a coiled part of the tubule (the **proximal convoluted tubule**) to a looped portion (the **Loop of Henle**) and then to the **collecting tube** via a second length of coiled tube (the **distal convoluted tubule**) (see diagram 12.6). From the collecting ducts the urine flows into the **renal pelvis** and enters the **ureter**.

Note that the glomerulus, capsule and both coiled parts of the tubule are all situated in the cortex of the kidney while the loops of Henle and collecting ducts make up the medulla (see diagram 12.5).

As the fluid flows along the proximal convoluted tubule useful substances like glucose, water, salts, potassium ions, calcium ions and amino acids are **reabsorbed** into the blood capillaries that form a network around the tubules. Many of these substances are transported by active transport and energy is required.

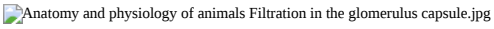


Diagram 12.7 - Filtration in the glomerulus and capsule

In a separate process, some substances, particularly potassium, ammonium and hydrogen ions, and drugs like penicillin, are actively **secreted** into the distal convoluted tubule.

By the time the fluid has reached the collecting ducts these processes of absorption and secretion have changed the fluid originally filtered into the Bowman's capsule into urine. The main function of the collecting ducts is then to remove more water from the urine if necessary. These processes are summarised in diagram 12.8.

Normal urine consists of water, in which waste products such as urea and salts such as sodium chloride are dissolved. Pigments from the breakdown of red blood cells give urine its yellow colour.

The Production Of Concentrated Urine

Because of the high pressure of the blood in the glomerulus and the large size of the pores in the glomerulus/capsule-filtering device, an enormous volume of fluid passes into the kidney tubules. If this fluid were left as it is, the animal's body would be drained dry in 30 minutes. In fact, as the fluid flows down the tubule, over 90% of the water in it is reabsorbed. The main part of this reabsorption takes place in the collecting tubes.

The amount of water removed from the collecting ducts is controlled by a hormone called **antidiuretic hormone (ADH)** produced by the **pituitary gland**, situated at the base of the brain. When the blood becomes more concentrated, as happens when an animal is deprived of water, ADH is secreted and causes more water to be absorbed from the collecting ducts so that concentrated urine is produced. When the animal has drunk plenty of water and the blood is dilute, no ADH is secreted and no or little water is absorbed from the collecting ducts, so dilute urine is produced. In this way the concentration of the blood is controlled precisely.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Summary of the processes involved in the formation of urine.jpg

Diagram 12.8 - Summary of the processes involved in the formation of urine

This page titled 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals

Fresh Water Fish

Although the skin of fish is more or less waterproof, the gills are very porous. The body fluids of fish that live in fresh water have a higher concentration of dissolved substances than the water in which they swim. In other words the body fluids of fresh water fish are **hypertonic** to the water (see chapter 3). Water therefore flows into the body by **osmosis**. To stop the body fluids being constantly diluted fresh water fish produce large quantities of dilute urine.

Marine Fish

Marine fish like the sharks and dogfish have body fluids that have the same concentration of dissolved substances as the water (**isotonic**) have little problem with water balance. However, marine bony fish like red cod, snapper and sole, have body fluids with a lower concentration of dissolved substances than seawater (they are **hypotonic** to seawater). This means that water tends to flow out of their bodies by osmosis. To make up this fluid loss they drink seawater and get rid of the excess salt by excreting it from the gills.

Marine Birds

Marine birds that eat marine fish take in large quantities of salt and some only have access to seawater for drinking. Bird's kidneys are unable to produce very concentrated urine, so they have developed a salt gland. This excretes a concentrated salt solution into the nose to get rid of the excess salt.

This page titled 12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney

There are two types of diabetes. The most common is called sugar diabetes or **diabetes mellitus** and is common in cats and dogs especially if they are overweight. It is caused by the pancreas secreting insufficient **insulin**, the hormone that controls the amount of glucose in the blood. If insulin secretion is inadequate, the concentration of glucose in the blood increases. Any increase in the glucose in the blood automatically leads to an increase in glucose in the fluid filtered into the kidney tubule. Normally the kidney removes all the glucose filtered into it, but these high concentrations swamp this removal mechanism and urine containing glucose is produced. The main symptoms of this type of diabetes are the production of large amounts of dilute urine containing glucose, and excessive thirst.

The second type of diabetes is called **diabetes insipidus**. The name comes from the main symptom, which is the production of large amounts of very dilute and “tasteless” urine. It occurs when the pituitary gland produces insufficient ADH, the hormone that stimulates water re-absorption from the kidney tubule. When this hormone is lacking, water is not absorbed and large amounts of dilute urine are produced. Because so much water is lost in the urine, animals with this form of diabetes can die if deprived of water for only a day or so.

This page titled 12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.9: Other Functions Of The Kidney

The excretion of urea from the body and the maintenance of water balance, as described above, are the main functions of the kidney. However, the kidneys have other roles in keeping conditions in the body stable i.e. in maintaining homeostasis. These include:

- controlling the concentration of salt ions (Na+, K+, Cl-) in the blood by adjusting how much is excreted or retained;
- maintaining the correct acidity of the blood. Excess acid is constantly being produced by the normal chemical reactions in the body and the kidney eliminates this.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 12.9: Other Functions Of The Kidney is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.10: Normal Urine

Normal urine consists of water (95%), urea, salts (mostly sodium chloride) and pigments (mostly from bile) that give it its characteristic colour.

This page titled 12.10: Normal Urine is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine

If the body is not working properly, small amounts of substances not normally present may be found in the urine or substances normally present may appear in abnormal amounts.

- The presence of **glucose** may indicate diabetes (see above).
- Urine with red blood cells in it is called **haematuria**, and may indicate inflammation of the kidney,or urinary tract, cancer or a blow to the kidneys.
- Sometimes free **haemoglobin** is found in the urine. This indicates that the red blood cells in the blood have **haemolysed** (the membrane has broken down) and the haemoglobin has passed into the kidney tubules.
- The presence of **white blood cells** in the urine indicates there is an infection in the kidney or urinary tract.
- **Protein molecules** are usually too large to pass into the kidney tubule so no or only small amounts of proteins like **albumin** is normally found in urine. Large quantities of albumin indicate that the kidney tubules have been injured or the kidney has become diseased. High blood pressure also pushes proteins from the blood into the tubules.
- **Casts** are tiny cylinders of material that have been shed from the lining of the tubules and flushed out into the urine.
- **Mucus** is not usually found in the urine of healthy animals but is a normal constituent of horses' urine, giving it a characteristic cloudy appearance.

Tests can be carried out to identify any abnormal ingredients of urine. These tests are normally done by "**stix**", which are small plastic strips with absorbent ends impregnated with various chemicals. A colour change occurs in the presence of an abnormal ingredient.

This page titled 12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.12: Excretion In Birds

Birds' high body temperature and level of activity means that they need to conserve water. Birds therefore do not have a bladder and instead of excreting urea, which needs to be dissolved in large amounts of water, birds produce uric acid that can be discharged as a thick paste along with the feces. This is the white chalky part of the bird droppings that land on you or your car.

This page titled 12.12: Excretion In Birds is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.13: Summary

- The excretory system consists of paired **kidneys** and associated blood supply. **Ureters** transport urine from the kidneys to the bladder and the **urethra** with associated sphincter muscles controls the release of urine.
- The kidneys have an important role in maintaining **homeostasis** in the body. They excrete the waste product urea, control the concentrations of water and salt in the body fluids, and regulate the acidity of the blood.
- A kidney consists of an outer region or **cortex,** inner **medulla** and a cavity called the **pelvis** that collects the urine and carries it to the ureter.
- The tissue of a kidney is composed of masses of tiny tubes called **kidney tubules** or **nephrons**. These are the structures that make the urine.
- High-pressure blood is supplied to the nephron via a tuft of capillaries called the **glomerulus**. Most of the contents of the blood except the cells and large protein molecules filter from the glomerulus into the (**Bowmans) capsule.** This fluid flows down a coiled part of the tubule (**proximal convoluted tubule**) where useful substances like glucose, amino acids and various ions are reabsorbed. The fluid flows to a looped portion of the tubule called the **Loop of Henle** where water is reabsorbed and then to another coiled part of the tubule (**distal convoluted tubule**) where more reabsorbtion and secretion takes place. Finally the fluid passes down the **collecting duct** where water is reabsorbed to form concentrated urine.

This page titled 12.13: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.14: Worksheet

Use this Excretory System Worksheet to help you learn the parts of the urinary system, the kidney and kidney tubule and their functions.

This page titled 12.14: Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

1.Some of these are not examples of homeostasis: (circle those that are not)

a. Sweating, erection of hairs and capillary dilation/contraction to control the body temperature
b. Adjusting the rate of breathing to remove carbon dioxide from the blood
c. Production of concentrated or dilute urine to maintain the concentration of water and salts in the blood within a narrow range
d. Blood clotting to prevent loss of blood
e. Reproduction to produce the next generation
f. The action of the hormone insulin to keep the level of glucose in the blood within a narrow range
g. White cells engulfing bacteria
h. Eating to supply the body with essential nutrients
i. Sense organs that allow the animal to sense and then remove itself from unsafe conditions
j. Various mechanisms to keep the pH of the blood within a narrow range

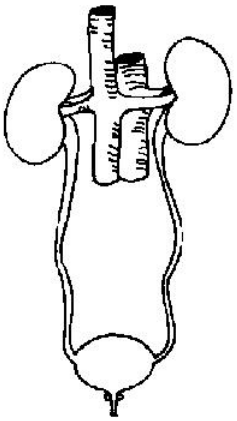
2. Fill in the left hand column with the terms/values from the list below.

15%; thirst; 66%; 80%; kidneys; hypothalamus

.....	The proportion of the body's water found within the cells
.....	The part of the brain concerned with controlling water balance
.....	The proportion of the body's water an animal will not survive losing
.....	This is the main mechanism for diluting the blood
.....	The proportion of an animal's body that consists of water
.....	These organs are important for controlling water balance

3. Add the following labels to the diagram below of the urinary system of a mammal.

kidney; bladder; ureters; urethra, renal artery and vein, caudal vena cava, sphincter.



4. These are functions of the kidney: (Circle 4)

a. breaking down damaged blood cells

b. controlling the concentration of water in the blood

c. Removing urea from the blood

d. Removing carbon dioxide from the blood

e. Removing glucose from the blood

f. Keeping the blood at the right pH (acidity/alkalinity)

g. Digesting food

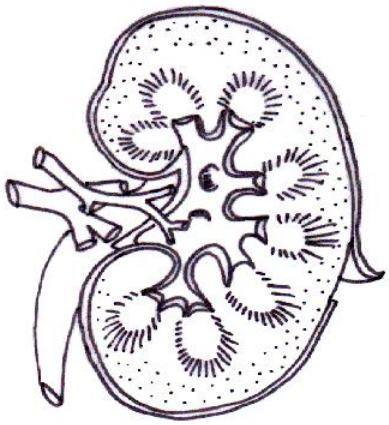
h. Controlling the concentration of salts like sodium and potassium chloride in the blood

5. Match the organ with the function in the table below.

Kidney; cortex; ureter; bladder; renal vein; urethra; capsule; medulla; renal pelvis; renal artery; sphincter

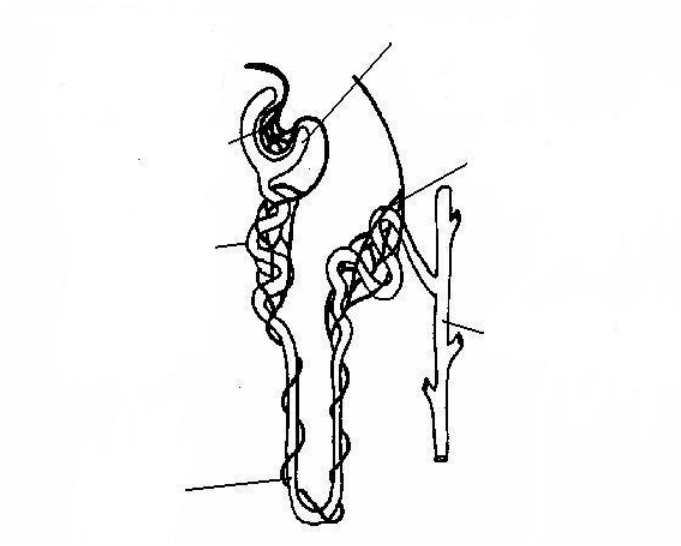
Organ	Function
.....	Carries urine from the bladder to the outside of the body
.....	Carries deoxygenated blood away from the kidney
.....	The inner region of the kidney
.....	Muscle that opens to allow urine to be removed from bladder
.....	The outer region of the kidney
.....	Carries oxygenated blood to the kidney
.....	The part of the kidney that collects the urine before it passes down the ureter
.....	The tough fibrous coat around the kidney
.....	Stores urine before it is removed from body
.....	The tube that carries urine away from the kidney
.....	Converts blood to urine

6. Add the following labels to the diagram of a kidney below. If you like you can also colour in the diagram as indicated. **:capsule- turquoise; renal artery – red; renal vein – blue; cortex - brown; medulla - pink; pelvis - yellow; ureter – green; pyramids - purple**



7. Add the following labels to the diagram below of a kidney tubule or nephron.

collecting duct; branch of renal artery; loop of Henle; distal convoluted tubule; glomerulus; proximal convoluted tubule; Bowman's capsule



8. Arrange these parts of the kidney tubule in the order in which the fluid that is being converted into urine passes through them.

collecting duct (CD); loop of Henle (LH); distal convoluted tubule (DCT); glomerulus (G); proximal convoluted tubule (PCT); Bowman's capsule (BC)

9. Indicate whether these parts of the kidney tubule are found in the cortex "C" or the medulla "M" of the kidney.

Bowman's capsule C/M
Collecting duct C/M
Proximal convoluted tubule C/M
Distal convoluted tubule C/M
Glomerulus C/M
Loop of Henle C/M

10. Match the part of the kidney tubule with its function.

collecting duct; loop of Henle; distal convoluted tubule; glomerulus; proximal convoluted tubule; renal artery; Bowman's capsule; Antidiuretic hormone or ADH.

Part of tubule	Function
.....	Carries blood to the kidney
.....	The hormone that is involved in producing concentrated urine
.....	Cup shaped structure through which the fluid part of the blood is filtered
.....	Where the majority of water is extracted from the urine
.....	Looped portion of the tubule. Important for helping concentrate the urine
.....	Where hydrogen and potassium ions are secreted into the urine
.....	Glucose, salts, water and amino acids are reabsorbed into the blood capillaries here
.....	Tuft of capillaries carrying high pressure blood

11. Circle the substances in the list below that are **NOT** found in the fluid that has filtered through into the Bowman's capsule of a healthy animal?

water; sodium chloride; red blood cells; glucose; amino acids; proteins; urea; white blood cells

12. Circle the substances in the list below that are NOT found in the urine of a healthy animal?

antidiuretic hormone; water; urea; red blood cells; mucus; glucose; proteins; sodium chloride; white blood cells

13. Fill in the blanks in the statements below about antidiuretic hormone (ADH).

a. ADH is produced by the .....
b. ADH acts on the walls of the.....of the kidney tubule.
c. When no ADH is produced an animal is said to have the condition known as.....

Now cross out the option that does not apply in each of the statements below:

d. ADH makes the walls permeable / impermeable to water.
e. ADH is secreted when the blood becomes too concentrated / too dilute.
f. When an animal is dehydrated no / lots of ADH is produced.
g. When ADH is secreted the urine produced is concentrated / dilute.
h. The main symptom of a failure to produce ADH would be lots of dilute urine / little concentrated urine

14. Normally all the glucose filtered into the kidney tubule is absorbed further down the tubule. If glucose is found in the urine what might one suspect to be the cause?

This page titled 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.16: Excretory System Answers

1.Some of these are not examples of homeostasis: (circle those that are not)

a. Sweating, erection of hairs and capillary dilation/contraction to control the body temperature

b. Adjusting the rate of breathing to remove carbon dioxide from the blood

c. Production of concentrated or dilute urine to maintain the concentration of water and salts in the blood within a narrow range

d. Blood clotting to prevent loss of blood

e. *Reproduction to produce the next generation. Note: this is the only option in this list that is not a mechanism to maintain homeostasis.*

f. The action of the hormone insulin to keep the level of glucose in the blood within a narrow range

g. White cells engulfing bacteria

h. Eating to supply the body with essential nutrients

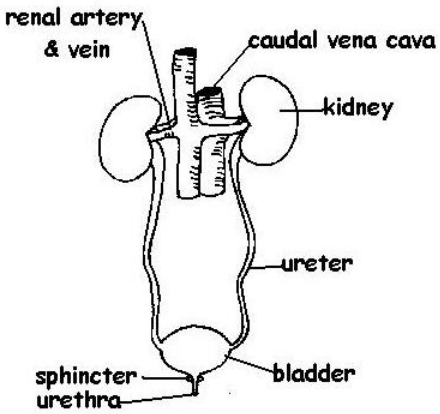
i. Sense organs that allow the animal to sense and then remove itself from unsafe conditions

j. Various mechanisms to keep the pH of the blood within a narrow range

2. Fill in the left hand column with the terms/values from the list below.

66%	The proportion of the body's water found within the cells.
Hypothalamus	The part of the brain concerned with controlling water balance.
15%	The proportion of the body's water an animal will not survive losing.
Thirst	This is the main mechanism for diluting the blood.
80%	The proportion of an animal's body that consists of water.
Kidneys	These organs are important for controlling water balance.

3. Add the following labels to the diagram below of the urinary system of a mammal.



4. These are functions of the kidney: (Circle 4)

b. *Controlling the concentration of water in the blood*

c. *Removing urea from the blood*

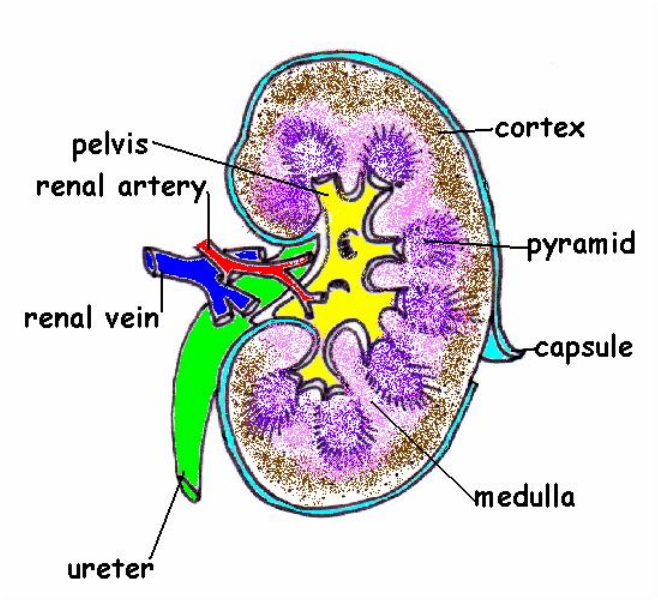
f. *Keeping the blood at the right pH (acidity/alkalinity)*

h. *Controlling the concentration of salts like sodium and potassium chloride in the blood*

5. Match the organ with the function in the table below.

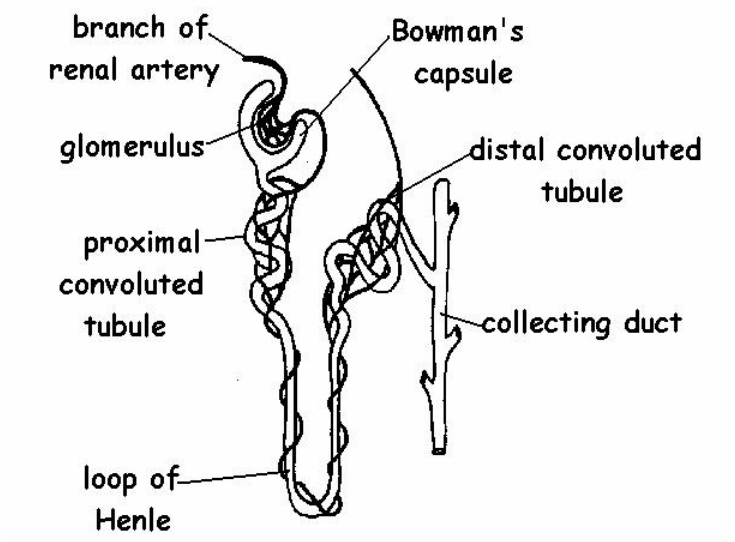
Organ	Function
Urethra	Carries urine from the bladder to the outside of the body
Renal vein	Carries deoxygenated blood away from the kidney
Medulla	The inner region of the kidney
Sphincter	Muscle that opens to allow urine to be removed from bladder
Cortex	The outer region of the kidney
Renal artery	Carries oxygenated blood to the kidney
Renal pelvis	The part of the kidney that collects the urine before it passes down the ureter
Capsule	The tough fibrous coat around the kidney
Bladder	Stores urine before it is removed from body
Ureter	The tube that carries urine away from the kidney
Kidney	Converts blood to urine

6. Add the following labels to the diagram of a kidney below. If you like you can also colour in the diagram as indicated. **:capsule- turquoise; renal artery – red; renal vein – blue; cortex - brown; medulla - pink; pelvis - yellow; ureter – green; pyramids - purple**



7. Add the following labels to the diagram below of a kidney tubule or nephron.

collecting duct; branch of renal artery; loop of Henle; distal convoluted tubule; glomerulus; proximal convoluted tubule; Bowman's capsule



8. Arrange these parts of the kidney tubule in the order in which the fluid that is being converted into urine passes through them.

Glomerulus(G)	*Bowman's capsule*(BC)	*Proximal convoluted tubule*(PCT)	*Loop of Henle*(LH)	*Distal convoluted tubule*(DCT)	*Collecting duct* (CD)

9. Indicate whether these parts of the kidney tubule are found in the cortex "C" or the medulla "M" of the kidney.

Bowman's capsule *C*
Collecting duct *M*
Proximal convoluted tubule *C*
Distal convoluted tubule *C*
Glomerulus *C*
Loop of Henle *M*

10. Match the term with its function.

Term	Function
Renal artery	Carries blood to the kidney
Antidiuretic hormone or ADH	The hormone that is involved in producing concentrated urine
Bowman's capsule	Cup shaped structure through which the fluid part of the blood is filtered
Collecting duct	Where the majority of water is extracted from the urine
Loop of Henle	Looped portion of the tubule. Important for helping concentrate the urine
Distal convoluted tubule	Where hydrogen and potassium ions are secreted into the urine
Proximal convoluted tubule	Glucose, salts, water and amino acids are reabsorbed into the blood capillaries here
Glomerulus	Tuft of capillaries carrying high pressure blood

11. Circle the substances in the list below that are **NOT** found in the fluid that has filtered through into the Bowman's capsule of a healthy animal?

Red blood cells; proteins; white blood cells These are large and do not pass through the holes in the walls of the glomerulus and Bowman's capsule

12. Circle the substances in the list below that are **NOT** found in the urine of a healthy animal?

Antidiuretic hormone; red blood cells; glucose; proteins; white blood cells

13. Fill in the blanks in the statements below about antidiuretic hormone (ADH).

a. ADH is produced by the *posterior pituitary gland/hypothalamus*

b. ADH acts on the walls of the *collecting ducts* of the kidney tubule.

c. When no ADH is produced an animal is said to have the condition known as *diabetes insipidus*

Now cross out the option that does not apply in each of the statements below:

d. ADH makes the walls of the collecting ducts *permeable* to water.

e. ADH is secreted when the blood becomes *too concentrated*.

f. When an animal is dehydrated *lots of* ADH is produced.

g. When ADH is secreted the urine produced is *concentrated*.

h. The main symptom of a failure to produce ADH would be *lots of dilute* urine.

14. Normally all the glucose filtered into the kidney tubule is absorbed further down the tubule. If glucose is found in the urine what might one suspect to be the cause? *Problems with production of insulin by the pancreas ie diabetes mellitus*.

This page titled 12.16: Excretory System Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.17: Test Yourself

The Urinary System Test Yourself can then be used to see if you understand this rather complex system.

1. Add the following labels to the diagram of the excretory system shown below. Bladder | ureter | urethra | kidney | dorsal aorta | vena cava | renal artery | vein

Anatomy and physiology of animals diagram of urinary system unlabeled.JPG

2. Using the words/phrases in the list below fill in the blanks in the following statements.

cortex	amino acids	renal	glucose	water reabsorption	large proteins
bowman's capsule	diabetes mellitus	secreted	antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	blood cells
glomerulus	concentration of the urine	medulla	nephron

a) Blood enters the kidney via the ..... artery.

b) When cut across the kidney is seen to consist of two regions, the outer..... and the inner.....

c) Another word for the kidney tubule is the.....

d) Filtration of the blood occurs in the.....

e) The filtered fluid (filtrate) enters the.....

f) The filtrate entering the e) above is similar to blood but does not contain..... or.....

g) As the fluid passes along the first coiled part of the kidney tubule..... and..... are removed.

h) The main function of the loop of Henle is.....

i) Hydrogen and potassium ions are..... into the second coiled part of the tubule.

j) The main function of the collecting tube is.....

k) The hormone..... is responsible for controlling water reabsorption in the collecting tube.

l) When the pancreas secretes inadequate amounts of the hormone insulin the condition known as..... results. This is most easily diagnosed by testing for..... in the urine.

This page titled 12.17: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

12.18: Websites

- www.biologycorner.com/bio3/nephron.html Biology Corner. A fabulous drawing of the kidney and nephron to print off, label and colour in with clear explanation of function.
- http://health.howstuffworks.com/adam-200032.htm How Stuff Works. This animation traces the full process of urine formation and reabsorption in the kidneys, its path down the ureter to the bladder, and its excretion via the urethra. Needs Shockwave.
- en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Nephron Wikipedia. A bit more detail than you need but still good clear explanations and lots of information.

This page titled 12.18: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

13: Reproductive System

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the role of mitosis and meiosis in the production of gametes (sperm and ova)
- that gametes are haploid cells
- that fertilization forms a diploid zygote
- the major parts of the male reproductive system and their functions
- the route sperm travel along the male reproductive tract to reach the penis
- the structure of a sperm and the difference between sperm and semen
- the difference between infertility and impotence
- the main parts of the female reproductive system and their functions
- the ovarian cycle and the roles of FSH, LH, oestrogen and progesterone
- the oestrous cycle and the signs of heat in rodents, dogs, cats and cattle
- the process of fertilization and where it occurs in the female tract
- what a morula and a blastocyst are
- what the placenta is and its functions

13.1: Reproductive System
13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
13.6: Pregnancy
13.7: Birth
13.8: Milk Production
13.9: Reproduction In Birds
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
13.12: Reproductive System Worksheet Answers
13.13: Test Yourself
13.14: Websites
13.15: Fertilization

13: Reproductive System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.1: Reproductive System

In biological terms sexual reproduction involves the union of **gametes** - the sperm and the ovum - produced by two parents. Each gamete is formed by **meiosis**. This means each contains only half the chromosomes of the body cells (**haploid**). Fertilization results in the joining of the male and female gametes to form a **zygote** which contains the full number of chromosomes (**diploid**). The zygote then starts to divide by mitosis to form a new animal with all its body cells containing chromosomes that are identical to those of the original zygote (see diagram 13.1).

Diagram 13.1 - Sexual reproduction

The offspring formed by sexual reproduction contain genes from both parents and show considerable variation. For example, kittens in a litter are all different although they (usually) have the same mother and father. In the wild this variation is important because it means that when the environment changes some individuals may be better adapted to survive than others. These survivors pass their "superior" genes on to their offspring. In this way the characteristics of a group of animals can gradually change over time to keep pace with the changing environment. This "survival of the fittest" or "**natural selection**" is the mechanism behind the theory of **evolution**.

This page titled 13.1: Reproductive System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals

The reproductive organs of mammals produce the **gametes** (sperm and egg cells), help them fertilize and then support the developing embryo.

This page titled 13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs

The male reproductive system consists of a pair of testes that produce **sperm** (or **spermatozoa**), ducts that transport the sperm to the penis and glands that add secretions to the sperm to make **semen** (see diagram 13.2).

The various parts of the male reproductive system with a summary of their functions are shown in diagram 13.3.

Male repro system labelled.jpg

Diagram 13.2. The reproductive organs of a male dog

File:Anatomy and physiology of animals Diagram summarizing the functions of the male reproductive organs.jpg

Diagram 13.3 - Diagram summarizing the functions of the male reproductive organs

The Testes

Sperm need temperatures between 2 to 10 degrees Centigrade lower and then the body temperature to develop. This is the reason why the testes are located in a bag of skin called the **scrotal sacs** (or **scrotum**) that hangs below the body and where the evaporation of secretions from special glands can further reduce the temperature. In many animals (including humans) the testes descend into the scrotal sacs at birth but in some animals they do not descend until sexual maturity and in others they only descend temporarily during the breeding season. A mature animal in which one or both testes have not descended is called a **cryptorchid** and is usually infertile.

The problem of keeping sperm at a low enough temperature is even greater in birds that have a higher body temperature than mammals. For this reason bird's sperm are usually produced at night when the body temperature is lower and the sperm themselves are more resistant to heat.

The testes consist of a mass of coiled tubes (the **seminiferous** or **sperm producing tubules**) in which the sperm are formed by meiosis (see diagram 13.4). Cells lying between the seminiferous tubules produce the male sex hormone **testosterone**.

When the sperm are mature they accumulate in the **collecting ducts** and then pass to the **epididymis**before moving to the **sperm duct** or **vas deferens**. The two sperm ducts join the **urethra** just below the bladder, which passes through the **penis** and transports both sperm and urine.

Ejaculation discharges the semen from the erect penis. It is brought about by the contraction of the epididymis, vas deferens, prostate gland and urethra.

Anatomy and physiology of animals The testis & a magnified seminferous tubule.jpg

Diagram 13.4 - The testis and a magnified seminiferous tubule

Semen

Semen consists of 10% sperm and 90% fluid and as sperm pass down the ducts from testis to penis, (accessory) glands add various secretion...

Accessory Glands

Three different glands may be involved in producing the secretions in which sperm are suspended, although the number and type of glands varies from species to species.

Seminal vesicles are important in rats, bulls, boars and stallions but are absent in cats and dogs. When present they produce secretions that make up much of the volume of the semen, and transport and provide nutrients for the sperm.

The **prostate gland** is important in dogs and humans. It produces an alkaline secretion that neutralizes the acidity of the male urethra and female vagina.

Cowper's glands (bulbourethral glands) have various functions in different species. The secretions may lubricate, flush out urine or form a gelatinous plug that traps the semen in the female reproductive system after copulation and prevents other males of the same species fertilizing an already mated female. Cowper's glands are absent in bears and aquatic mammals.

The Penis

The penis consists of connective tissue with numerous small blood spaces in it. These fill with blood during sexual excitement causing erection.

Penis Form And Shape

Dogs, bears, seals, bats and rodents have a special bone in the penis which helps maintain the erection (see diagram 13.2). In some animals (e.g. the bull, ram and boar) the penis has an “S” shaped bend that allows it to fold up when not in use. In many animals the shape of the penis is adapted to match that of the vagina. For example, the boar has a corkscrew shaped penis, there is a pronounced twist in bulls’ and it is forked in marsupials like the opossum. Some have spines, warts or hooks on them to help keep them in the vagina and copulation may be extended to help retain the semen in the female system. Mating can last up to three hours in minks, and dogs may “knot” or “tie” during mating and can not separate until the erection has subsided.

Sperm

Sperm are made up of three parts: a **head** consisting mainly of the nucleus, a **midpiece** containing many mitochondria to provide the energy and a **tail** that provides propulsion (see diagram 13.5).

Anatomy and physiology of animals A sperm.jpg

Diagram 13.5 - A sperm

A single ejaculation may contain 2-3 hundred million sperm but even in normal semen as many as 10% of these sperm may be abnormal and infertile. Some may be dead while others are inactive or deformed with double, giant or small heads or tails that are coiled or absent altogether.

When there are too many abnormal sperm or when the sperm concentration is low, the semen may not be able to fertilize an egg and the animal is infertile. Make sure you don’t confuse infertility with impotence, which is the inability to copulate successfully.

Sperm do not live forever. They have a definite life span that varies from species to species. They survive for between 20 days (guinea pig) to 60 days (bull) in the epididymis but once ejaculated into the female tract they only live from 12 to 48 hours. When semen is used for artificial insemination, storage under the right conditions can extend the life span of some species.

Artificial Insemination

In many species the male can be artificially stimulated to ejaculate and the semen collected. It can then be diluted, stored and used to **inseminate** females. For example bull semen can be diluted and stored for up to 3 weeks at room temperature. If mixed with an antifreeze solution and stored in “straws” in liquid nitrogen at minus 79ºC it will keep for much longer. Unfortunately the semen of chickens, stallions and boars can only be stored for up to 2 days.

Dilution of the semen means that one male can be used to fertilise many more females than would occur under natural conditions. There are also advantages in the male and female not having to make physical contact. It means that owners of females do not have to buy expensive males and the possibility of transmitting sexually transmitted diseases is reduced. Routine examination of the semen for sperm concentration, quality and activity allows only the highest quality semen to be used so a high success rate is ensured.

Since the lifespan of sperm in the female tract is so short and ova only survive from 8 to 10 hours the timing of the artificial insemination is critical. Successful conception depends upon detecting the time that the animal is “on heat” and when ovulation occurs.

This page titled 13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs

The female reproductive system consists of a pair of **ovaries** that produce egg cells or **ova**and **fallopian tubes** where fertilisation occurs and which carry the fertilised ovum to the **uterus**. Growth of the foetus takes place here. The **cervix** separates the uterus from the **vagina** or birth canal, where the sperm are deposited (see diagram 13.6).

Female repro system labelled.JPG

Diagram 13.6. - The reproductive system of a female rabbit

Note that primates like humans have a uterus with a single compartment but in most mammals the uterus is divided into two separate parts or **horns** as shown in diagram 13.6.

The Ovaries

Ovaries are small oval organs situated in the abdominal cavity just ventral to the kidneys. Most animals have a pair of ovaries but in birds only the left one is functional to reduce weight (see below).

The ovary consists of an inner region (**medulla**) and an outer region (**cortex**) containing egg cells or ova. These are formed in large numbers around the time of birth and start to develop after the animal becomes sexually mature. A cluster of cells called the **follicle** surrounds and nourishes each ovum.

The Ovarian Cycle

The **ovarian cycle** refers to the series of changes in the ovary during which the follicle matures, the ovum is shed and the **corpus luteum** develops (see diagram 13.7).

Numerous undeveloped ovarian follicles are present at birth but they start to mature after sexual maturity. In animals that normally have only one baby at a time only one ovum will mature at once but in litter animals several will. The mature follicle consists of outer cells that provide nourishment. Inside this is a fluid-filled space that contains the ovum.

A mature follicle can be quite large, ranging from a few millimetres in small mammals to the size of a golf ball in large animals. It bulges out from the surface of the ovary before eventually rupturing to release the ovum into the abdominal cavity. Once the ovum has been shed, a blood clot forms in the empty follicle. This develops into a tissue called the **corpus luteum** that produces the hormone **progesterone** (see diagram 13.9). If the animal becomes pregnant the corpus luteum persists, but if there is no pregnancy it degenerates and a new ovarian cycle usually.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Ovarian cycle showing from top left clockwise.jpg

Diagram 13.7 - The ovarian cycle showing from the top left clockwise: the maturation of the ovum over time, followed by ovulation and the development of the corpus luteum in the empty follicle

The Ovum

When the ovum is shed the nucleus is in the final stages of meiosis (cell division). It is surrounded by few layers of follicle cells and a tough membrane called the **zona pellu**cida (see diagram 13.8).

Anatomy and physiology of animals An ovum.jpg

Diagram 13.8 - An ovum

The Oestrous Cycle

The **oestrous cycle** is the sequence of hormonal changes that occurs through the **ovarian cycle**. These changes influence the behaviour and body changes of the female (see diagram 13.9).

Anatomy and physiology of animals The oestrous cycle.jpg

Diagram 13.9 - The oestrous cycle

The first hormone involved in the oestrous cycle is **follicle stimulating hormone (F.S.H.),**secreted by the **anterior pituitary gland** (see chapter 16). It stimulates the follicle to develop. As the follicle matures the outer cells begin to secrete the hormone **oestrogen**

and this stimulates the mammary glands to develop. It also prepares the lining of the uterus to receive a fertilised egg. Ovulation is initiated by a surge of another hormone from the anterior pituitary, **luteinising hormone (L.H.).** This hormone also influences the development of the corpus luteum, which produces **progesterone**, a hormone that prepares the lining of the uterus for the fertilised ovum and readies the mammary glands for milk production. If no pregnancy takes place the corpus luteum shrinks and the production of progesterone decreases. This causes FSH to be produced again and a new oestrous cycle begins.

For fertilisation of the ovum by the sperm to occur, the female must be receptive to the male at around the time of ovulation. This is when the hormones turn on the signs of "**heat**", and she is "**in season**" or "**in oestrous**". These signs are turned off again at the end of the oestrous cycle.

During the oestrous cycle the lining of the uterus (**endometrium**) thickens ready for the fertilised ovum to be implanted. If no pregnancy occurs this thickened tissue is absorbed and the next cycle starts. In humans and other higher primates, however, the endometrium is shed as a flow of blood and instead of an oestrous cycle there is a **menstrual cycle**.

The length of the oestrous cycle varies from species to species. In rats the cycle only lasts 4–5 days and they are sexually receptive for about 14 hours. Dogs have a cycle that lasts 60–70 days and heat lasts 7–9 days and horses have a 21-day cycle and heat lasts an average of 6 days.

Ovulation is spontaneous in most animals but in some, e.g. the cat, and the rabbit, ovulation is stimulated by mating. This is called **induced ovulation**.

Signs Of Oestrous Or Heat

- When on heat a bitch has a blood stained discharge from the **vulva** that changes a little later to a straw coloured one that attracts all the dogs in the neighbourhood.
- Female cats "call" at night, roll and tread the carpet and are generally restless but will "stand" firm when pressure is placed on the pelvic region (this is the lordosis response).
- A female rat shows the lordosis response when on heat. It will "mount" other females and be more active than normal.
- A cow mounts other cows (bulling), bellows, is restless and has a discharge from the vulva.

Breeding Seasons And Breeding Cycles

Only a few animals breed throughout the year. This includes the higher primates (humans, gorillas and chimpanzees etc.), pigs, mice and rabbits. These are known as **continuous breeders**.

Most other animals restrict reproduction to one or two seasons in the year-**seasonal breeders** (see diagram 13.10). There are several reasons for this. It means the young can be born at the time (usually spring) when feed is most abundant and temperatures are favourable. It is also sensible to restrict the breeding season because courtship, mating, gestation and the rearing of young can exhaust the energy resources of an animal as well as make them more vulnerable to predators.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Breeding cycles.jpg

Diagram 13.10 - Breeding cycles

The timing of the breeding cycle is often determined by day length. For example the shortening day length in autumn will bring sheep and cows into season so the foetus can gestate through the winter and be born in spring. In cats the increasing day length after the winter solstice (shortest day) stimulates breeding. The number of times an animal comes into season during the year varies, as does the number of oestrous cycles during each season. For example a dog usually has 2-3 seasons per year, each usually consisting of just one oestrous cycle. In contrast ewes usually restrict breeding to one season and can continue to cycle as many as 20 times if they fail to become pregnant.

This page titled 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation

Fertilisation

The opening of the fallopian tube lies close to the ovary and after ovulation the ovum is swept into its funnel-like opening and is moved along it by the action of cilia and wave-like contractions of the wall.

Copulation deposits several hundred million sperm in the vagina. They swim through the cervix and uterus to the fallopian tubes moved along by whip-like movements of their tails and contractions of the uterus. During this journey the sperm undergo their final phase of maturation so they are ready to fertilise the ovum by the time they reach it in the upper fallopian tube.

High mortality means only a small proportion of those deposited actually reach the ovum. The sperm attach to the outer **zona pellucida** and enzymes secreted from a gland in the head of the sperm dissolve this membrane so it can enter. Once one sperm has entered, changes in the **zona pellucida** prevent further sperm from penetrating. The sperm loses its tail and the two nuclei fuse to form a **zygote** with the full set of paired chromosomes restored.

Development Of The Morula And Blastocyst

As the fertilised egg travels down the fallopian tube it starts to divide by mitosis. First two cells are formed and then four, eight, sixteen, etc. until there is a solid ball of cells. This is called a **morula**. As division continues a hollow ball of cells develops. This is a **blastocyst** (see diagram 13.11).

Implantation

Implantation involves the blastocyst attaching to, and in some species, completely sinking into the wall of the uterus.

This page titled 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.6: Pregnancy

The Placenta And Foetal Membranes

As the **embryo** increases in size, the **placenta**, **umbilical cord** and **foetal membranes**(often known collectively as the **placenta**) develop to provide it with nutrients and remove waste products (see diagram 13.12). In later stages of development the embryo becomes known as a **foetus**.

The placenta is the organ that attaches the foetus to the wall of the uterus. In it the blood of the foetus and mother flow close to each other but never mix (see diagram 13.13). The closeness of the maternal and foetal blood systems allows diffusion between them. Oxygen and nutrients diffuse from the mother's blood into that of the foetus and carbon dioxide and excretory products diffuse in the other direction. Most maternal hormones (except adrenaline), antibodies, almost all drugs (including alcohol), lead and DDT also pass across the placenta. However, it protects the foetus from infection with bacteria and most viruses.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Development & implantation of the embryo.jpg

Diagram 13.11 - Development and implantation of the embryo

Anatomy and physiology of animals Foetus and placenta.jpg

Diagram 13.12. The foetus and placenta

The foetus is attached to the placenta by the **umbilical cord**. It contains arteries that carry blood to the placenta and a vein that returns blood to the foetus. The developing foetus becomes surrounded by membranes. These enclose the amniotic fluid that protects the foetus from knocks and other trauma (see diagram 13.12).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Maternal and foetal blood flow in the placenta.jpg

Diagram 13.13 - Maternal and foetal blood flow in the placenta

Hormones During Pregnancy

The corpus luteum continues to secrete progesterone and oestrogen during pregnancy. These maintain the lining of the uterus and prepare the mammary glands for milk secretion. Later in the pregnancy the placenta itself takes over the secretion of these hormones.

Chorionic gonadotrophin is another hormone secreted by the placenta and placental membranes. It prevents uterine contractions before labour and prepares the mammary glands for lactation. Towards the end of pregnancy the placenta and ovaries secrete **relaxin**, a hormone that eases the joint between the two parts of the pelvis and helps dilate the cervix ready for birth.

Pregnancy Testing

The easiest method of pregnancy detection is ultrasound which is noninvasive and very reliable Later in gestation pregnancy can be detected by taking x-rays.

In dogs and cats a blood test can be used to detect the hormone **relaxin**.

In mares and cows palpation of the uterus via the rectum is the classic way to determine pregnancy. It can also be done by detecting the hormones **progesterone** or **equine chorionic gonagotrophin** (**eCG**) in the urine. A new sensitive test measures the amount of the hormone, **oestrone sulphate**, present in a sample of faeces. The hormone is produced by the foal and placenta, and is only present when there is a living foal.

In most animals, once pregnancy is advanced, there is a window of time during which an experienced veterinarian can determine pregnancy by feeling the abdomen.

Gestation Period

The young of many animals (e.g. pigs, horses and elephants) are born at an advanced state of development, able to stand and even run to escape predators soon after they are born. These animals have a relatively long gestation period that varies with their size e.g. from 114 days in the pig to 640 days in the elephant.

In contrast, cats, dogs, mice, rabbits and higher primates are relatively immature when born and totally dependent on their parents for survival. Their gestation period is shorter and varies from 25 days in the mouse to 31 days in rabbits and 258 days in the gorilla.

The babies of marsupials are born at an extremely immature stage and migrate to the pouch where they attach to a teat to complete their development. Kangaroo joeys, for example, are born 33 days after conception and opossums after only 8 days.

This page titled 13.6: Pregnancy is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.7: Birth

Signs Of Imminent Birth

As the pregnancy continues, the mammary glands enlarge and may secrete a milky substance a few days before birth occurs. The vulva may swell and produce thick mucus and there is sometimes a visible change in the position of the foetus. Just before birth the mother often becomes restless, lying down and getting up frequently. Many animals seek a secluded place where they may build a nest in which to give birth.

Labour

Labour involves waves of uterine contractions that press the foetus against the cervix causing it to dilate. The foetus is then pushed through the cervix and along the vagina before being delivered. In the final stage of labour the placenta or “afterbirth” is expelled.

Adaptations Of The Foetus To Life Outside The Uterus

The foetus grows in the watery, protected environment of the uterus where the mother supplies oxygen and nutrients, and waste products pass to her blood circulation for excretion. Once the baby animal is born it must start to breathe for itself, digest food and excrete its own waste. To allow these functions to occur blood is re-routed to the lungs and the glands associated with the gut start to secrete. Note that newborn animals can not control their own body temperature. They need to be kept warm by the mother, littermates and insulating nest materials.

This page titled 13.7: Birth is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.8: Milk Production

Cows, manatees and primates have two mammary glands but animals like pigs that give birth to large litters may have as many as 12 pairs. Ducts from the gland lead to a nipple or teat and there may be a sinus where the milk collects before being suckled (see diagram 13.14).

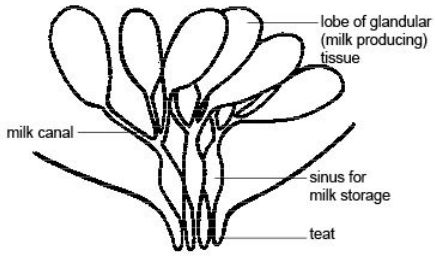


Diagram 13.14 - A mammary gland

The hormones **oestrogen** and **progesterone** stimulate the mammary glands to develop and **prolactin** promotes the secretion of the milk. **Oxytocin** from the pituitary gland releases the milk when the baby suckles. The first milk is called **colostrum**. It is a rich in nutrients and contains protective antibodies from the mother. Milk contains fat, protein and milk sugar as well as vitamins and most minerals although it contains little iron. Its actual composition varies widely from species to species. For example whale's and seal's milk has twelve times more fat and four times more protein than cow's milk. Cow's milk has far less protein in it than cat's or dog's milk. This is why orphan kittens and puppies cannot be fed cow's milk.

This page titled 13.8: Milk Production is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.9: Reproduction In Birds

Male birds have testes and sperm ducts and male swans, ducks, geese and ostriches have a penis. However, most birds make do with a small amount of erectile tissue known as a **papilla**. To reduce weight for flight most female birds only have one ovary - usually the left, which produces extremely yolky eggs. The eggs are fertilised in the upper part of the oviduct (equivalent to the fallopian tube and uterus of mammals) and as they pass down it **albumin** (the white of the egg), the membrane beneath the shell and the shell are laid down over the yolk. Finally the egg is covered in a layer of mucus to help the bird lay it (see diagram 13.15).

Most birds lay their eggs in a nest and the hen sits on them until they hatch. Ducklings and chicks are relatively well developed when they hatch and able to forage for their own food. Most other nestlings need their parents to keep them warm, clean and fed. Young birds grow rapidly and have voracious appetites that may involve the parents making up to 1000 trips a day to supply their need for food.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Female reproductive organs of a bird.jpg

Diagram 13.15 - Female reproductive organs of a bird

This page titled 13.9: Reproduction In Birds is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.10: Summary

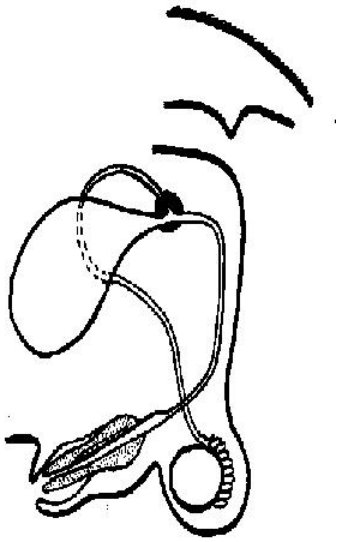
- **Haploid** gametes (sperm and ova) are produced by meiosis in the **gonads** (testes and ovaries).
- Fertilisation involves the fusing of the gametes to form a diploid **zygote**.
- The male reproductive system consists of a pair of **testes** that produce sperm (or **spermatozoa**), ducts that transport the sperm to the penis and glands that add secretions to the sperm to make semen.
- Sperm are produced in the **seminiferous tubules**, are stored in the **epididymis** and travel via the **vas deferens** or **sperm duct** to the junction of the bladder and the **urethra** where various accessory glands add secretions. The fluid is now called **semen** and is ejaculated into the female system down the **urethra** that runs down the centre of the penis.
- Sperm consist of a head, a midpiece and a tail.
- **Infertility** is the inability of sperm to fertilize an egg while **impotence** is the inability to copulate successfully.
- The female reproductive system consists of a pair of **ovaries** that produce **ova** and **fallopian tubes** where fertilisation occurs and which carry the fertilised ovum to the **uterus**. Growth of the foetus takes place here. The **cervix** separates the uterus from the **vagina**, the birth canal and where the sperm are deposited.
- The **ovarian cycle** refers to the series of changes in the ovary during which the follicle matures, the ovum is shed and the **corpus luteum** develops.
- The **oestrous cycle** is the sequence of hormonal changes that occurs through the ovarian cycle. It is initiated by the secretion of **follicle stimulating hormone (F.S.H.),** by the **anterior pituitary gland** which stimulates the **follicle** to develop. The follicle secretes **oestrogen** which stimulates **mammary gland** development. **luteinising hormone (L.H.)**from the anterior pituitary initiates **ovulation** and stimulates the **corpus luteum** to develop. The corpus luteum produces **progesterone** that prepares the lining of the uterus for the fertilised ovum.
- **Signs of oestrous** or heat differ. A bitch has a blood stained discharge, female cats and rats are restless and show the lordosis response, while cows mount other cows, bellow and have a discharge from the vulva.
- After fertilisation in the fallopian tube the **zygote** divides over and over by mitosis to become a ball of cells called a **morula**. Division continues to form a hollow ball of cells called the **blastocyst**. This is the stage that **implants** in the uterus.
- The **placenta, umbilical cord** and **foetal membranes** (known as the **placenta**) protect and provide the developing foetus with nutrients and remove waste products.

This page titled 13.10: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

1. Add the following labels to the diagram of the reproductive system of a male dog shown below.

vas deferens, urethra, testes, penis, scrotal sac, bladder, epididymis, penis bone, glans penis, prostate gland.



2. Fill in the table using the choices in the list below.

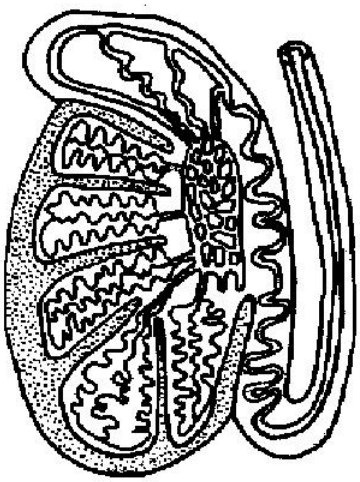
A. Accessory glands; B. Epididymis; C. Vas deferens (sperm duct); D. Penis; E. Seminiferous tubules; F. Urethra

Structure	Description
.....	1. Organ that delivers semen to the female reproductive tract
.....	2. Where sperm are produced
.....	3. The tube that carries sperm from the epididymis to the urethra.
.....	4. The tube that carries both sperm and urine down the penis.
.....	5. Organs that contribute 90% of the semen.
.....	6. Tubules where sperm are stored.

3. The diagram below shows a section through a testis.

Colour and label the structures in the diagram.

1. Seminiferous tubules in which the sperm are made. Blue
2. Collecting ducts where the sperm are stored. Green
3. Epididymis in which sperm mature and become motile. Red
4. Fibrous coat surrounding and protecting the testis. Brown
5. Vas deferens or sperm duct. Yellow



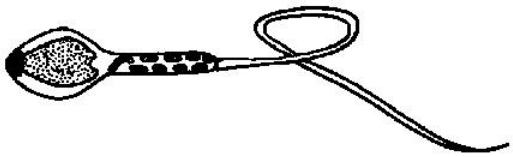
4. The diagram below shows a sperm. Colour and label the following areas.

a) The DNA-containing area. Brown

b) The enzyme-containing sac that aids sperm penetration of the egg. Yellow

c) The midpiece - contains mitochondria for energy for sperm movement. Red

d) The tail – propels the sperm along the female tract. Blue

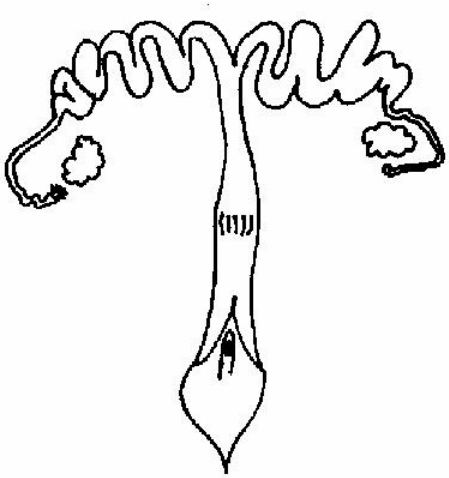


5. a) What is the difference between sperm and semen?.....

b) What is the difference between infertility and impotence?.....

6. Add the following labels to the diagram of the female reproductive system below.

ovary, vulva, fallopian tube, cervix, vagina, uterus



7. Fill in the following table with the words from the list below. (You may need to use some words more than once).

A. ovary, B. vulva, C. fallopian tube, D. cervix, E. vagina, F. uterus

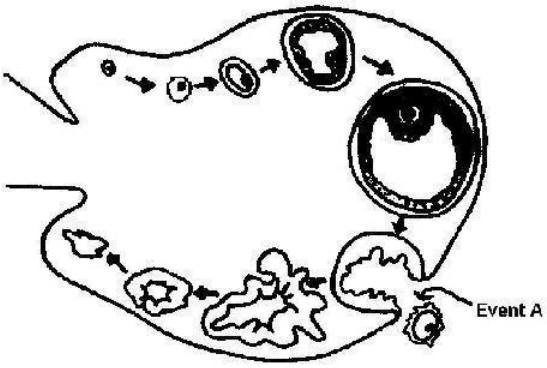
Term	Description
.....	1. Chamber that houses the developing foetus
.....	2. Canal that receives the penis during copulation
.....	3. Usual site of fertilisation
.....	4. Duct through which the ovum travels to reach the uterus.
.....	5. A sphincter muscle between the uterus and the vagina
.....	6. External genitalia
.....	7. Where the ova are produced

8. The diagram below shows an ovary with the stages of development of the ovum during an ovarian cycle.

i) Chose different colours and colour in:

a) The cells that produce oestrogen.
b) The structure that produces progesterone.
c) All the ova.

ii) In the space provided, give the name of "event A' on the diagram.



9. a) Arrange the following events in the ovarian cycle in the order in which they occur. Put the numbers in the correct order in the boxes below.

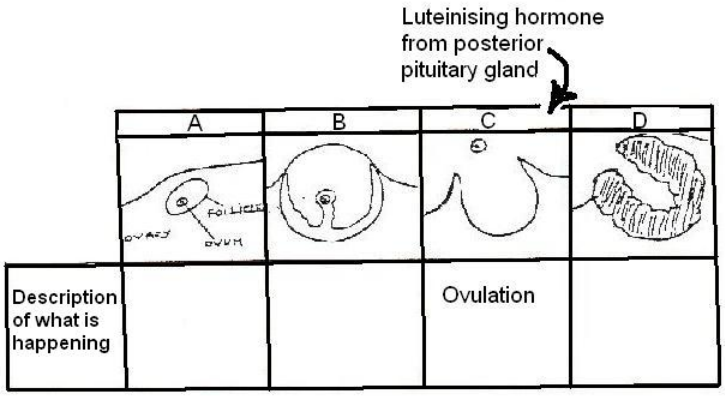
1. Luteinising hormone secreted by the anterior pituitary gland
2. Ovulation of mature ovum
3. Progesterone secreted by corpus luteum
4. Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) secreted by the anterior pituitary gland
5. Corpus luteum develops
6. Ovum develops in the follicle
7. Oestrogen secreted by follicle cells

...	...	...	...	...	...	...

10 The diagrams below show different stages in the ovarian cycle.

i. In the spaces under the diagrams write a few words describing what is happening in the diagram above. The third one has been done for you.

ii. Now show by means of arrows added to the diagram, where the hormones FSH (follicle stimulating hormone), LH (luteinising hormone), oestrogen and progesterone act or are produced.



11. State whether the following statements are true or false. If false write in the correct answer.

1. The mixing of foetal and maternal blood in the placenta allows easy transfer of nutrients and oxygen to the foetus. T / F

2. Adrenaline cannot easily cross the placenta. T / F

3. Antibodies cannot pass across the placenta from the mother. T / F

4. Colostrum contains lots of hormones. T / F

5. Oestrogen stimulates milk “let down”. T / F

6. Young animals often have to be given iron supplements because milk contains very little iron. T / F

12. Insert the correct term into the table using the words below.

A. progesterone, B. oestrogen, C. luteinising hormone, D. follicle stimulating hormone

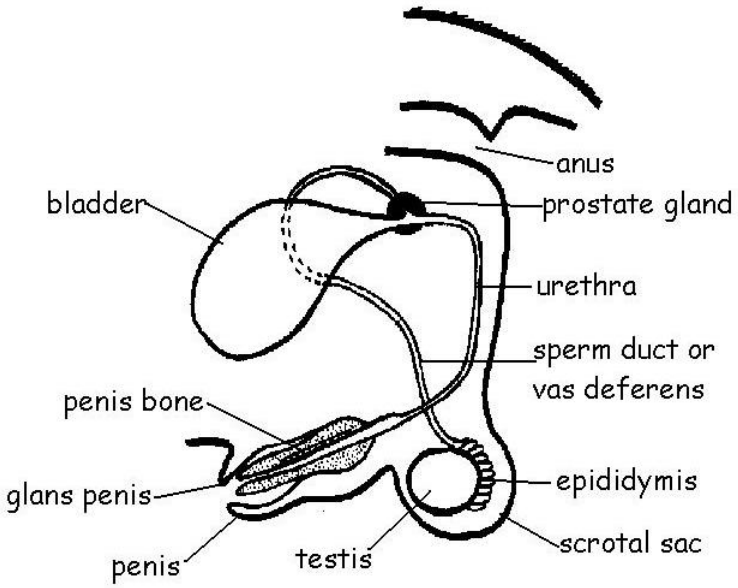
E. chorionic gonadotrophin, F. morula, G. blastocyst, H. implantation, I. placenta, J. colostrum

Term	Description
.....	1. The hormone that stimulates the growth of ovarian follicles.
.....	2. The hormone that is secreted by the corpus luteum
.....	3. A ball of cells produced by early division of the fertilised egg.
.....	4. The hollow ball of cells produced by later division of the fertilised egg. Embryo transfer is possible at this stage.
.....	5. The hormone that changes the empty follicle into the corpus luteum.
.....	6. The membranes that form around the embryo to allow diffusion of nutrients and oxygen etc. between the foetal and maternal blood systems.
.....	7. Attachment of the fertilized egg to the uterine lining
.....	8. The hormone that is used in some pregnancy tests.
.....	9. The hormone secreted by the ovarian follicle.
.....	10. The first milk.

This page titled 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.12: Reproductive System Worksheet Answers

1. Add the labels to the diagram of the reproductive system of a male dog shown below.



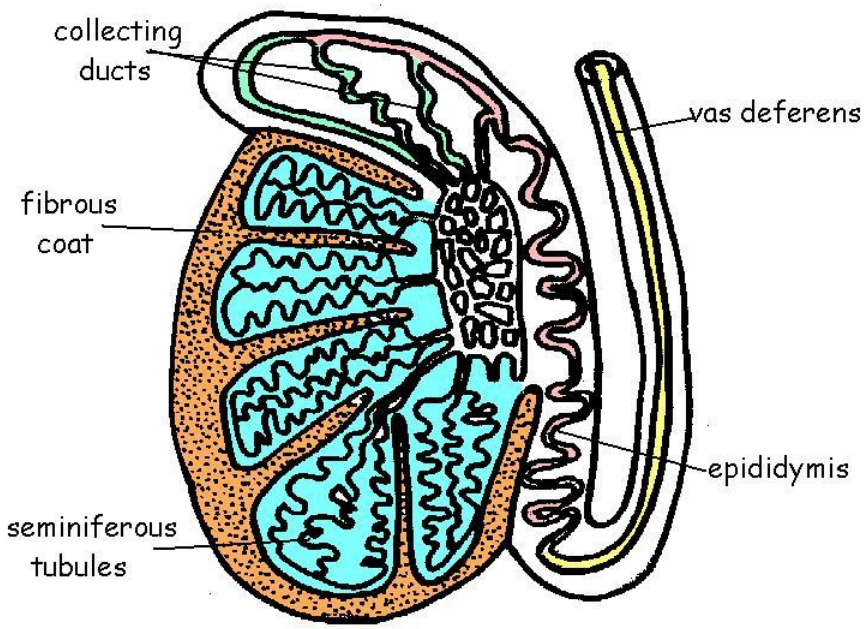
2. Fill in the table using the choices in the list below.

Structure	Description
D. *Penis*	1. Organ that delivers semen to the female reproductive tract
E. *Seminiferous tubules*	2. Where sperm are produced
C. *Vas deferens (sperm duct)*	3. The tube that carries sperm from the epididymis to the urethra.
F. *Urethra*	4. The tube that carries both sperm and urine down the penis.
A. *Accessory glands*	5. Organs that contribute 90% of the semen.
B. *Epididymis*	6. Tubules where sperm are stored.

3. The diagram below shows a section through a testis.

Colour and label the structures of the diagram.

1. Seminiferous tubules in which the sperm are made. Blue
2. Collecting ducts where the sperm are stored. Green
3. Epididymis in which sperm mature and become motile. Red
4. Fibrous coat surrounding and protecting the testis. Brown
5. Vas deferens or sperm duct. Yellow



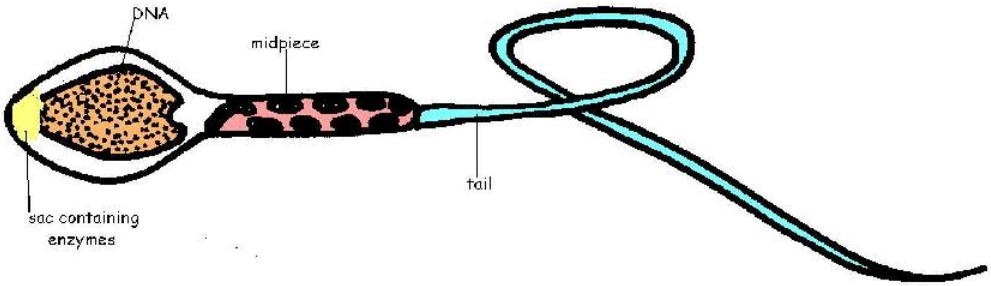
4. The diagram below shows a sperm. Colour and label the following areas.

a) The DNA-containing area. Brown

b) The enzyme-containing sac that aids sperm penetration of the egg. Yellow

c) The midpiece - contains mitochondria for energy for sperm movement. Red

d) The tail – propels the sperm along the female tract. Blue



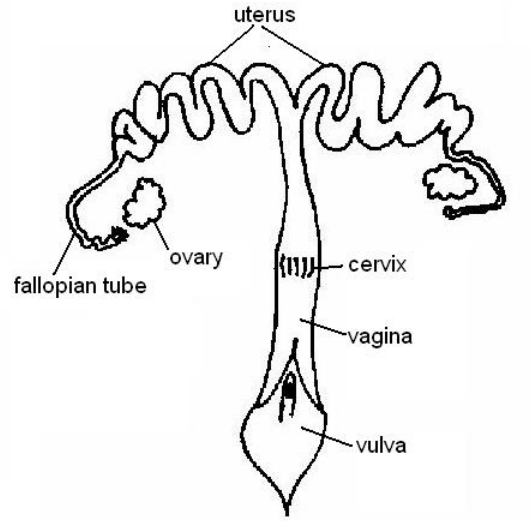
5. a) What is the difference between sperm and semen?

Sperm are the gametes that carry the genetic material (head, midpiece and tail) while semen is the fluid produced by the accessory glands plus the sperm carried in it.

b) What is the difference between infertility and impotence?

Infertility is the inability to conceive and have offspring while impotence is the inability to mate.

6. Add labels to the diagram of the female reproductive system below.



7. Fill in the following table with the words from the list below. Some words may need to be used more than once.

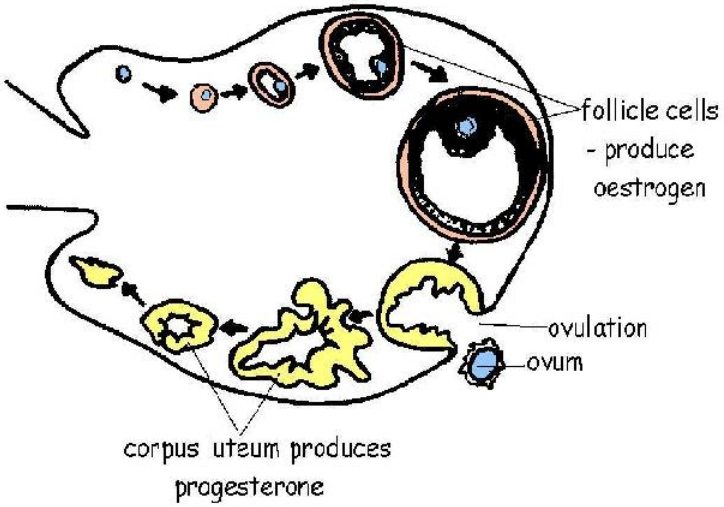
Term	Description
F. *Uterus*	1. Chamber that houses the developing foetus
E. *Vagina*	2. Canal that receives the penis during copulation
C. *Fallopian tube*	3. Usual site of fertilisation
C. *Fallopian tube*	4. Duct through which the ovum travels to reach the uterus.
D. *Cervix*	5. A sphincter muscle between the uterus and the vagina
B. *Vulva*	6. External genitalia
A. *Ovary*	7. Where the ova are produced

8. The diagram below shows an ovary with the stages of development of the ovum during an ovarian cycle.

i) Chose different colours and colour in:

a) The cells that produce oestrogen. Red
b) The structure that produces progesterone. Yellow
c) All the ova. blue

ii) In the space provided, name the event shown as “event A’ on the diagram.



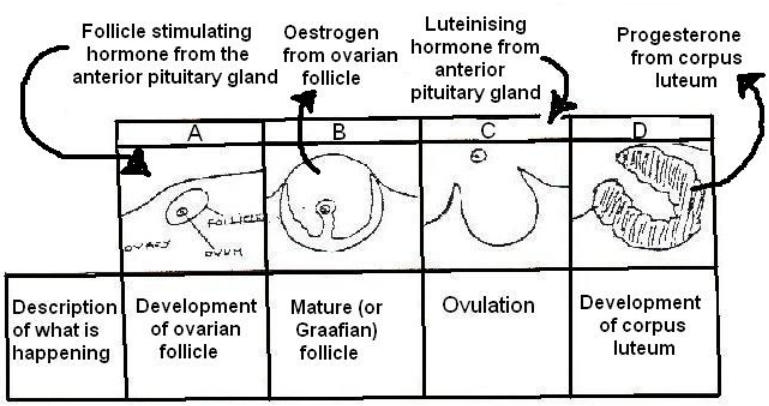
9. a) Arrange the following events in the ovarian cycle in the correct order in which they occur. Put the numbers in the correct order in the boxes below.

4. *Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) secreted by the anterior pituitary gland*	6. *Ovum develops in the follicle*	7.*Oestrogen secreted by follicle cells*	1. Luteinising hormone secreted by the anterior pituitary gland	2.*Ovulation of mature ovum*	5.*Corpus luteum develops*	3.*Progesterone secreted by corpus luteum*

10 The diagrams below show different stages in the ovarian cycle.

i. In the spaces under the diagrams write a few words describing what is happening in diagram above.

ii. Now show by means of arrows added to the diagram, where the hormones FSH (follicle stimulating hormone), LH (luteinising hormone), oestrogen and progesterone act or are produced.



11. State whether the following statements are true or false. If false write in the correct answer.

1. The mixing of foetal and maternal blood in the placenta allows easy transfer of nutrients and oxygen to the foetus.

F. Although the foetal and maternal blood flow close to each other they do not mix in a healthy placenta.

2. Adrenaline cannot easily cross the placenta. *T*

3. Antibodies cannot pass across the placenta from the mother.

F. Antibodies from the mother do cross the placenta to the foetus.

4. Colostrum contains lots of hormones.

F Colostrum contains antibodies but not hormones.

5. Oestrogen stimulates milk “let-down”.

F Oxytocin from the posterior pituitary gland is the hormone that stimulates milk "let-down"

6. Young animals often have to be given iron supplements because milk contains very little iron. *T*

12. Insert the correct term into the table.

Term	Description
D. *Follicle stimulating hormone*	1. The hormone that stimulates the growth of ovarian follicles.
A. *Progesterone*	2. The hormone that is secreted by the corpus luteum
F. *Morula*	3. A ball of cells produced by early division of the fertilised egg.
G. *Blastocyst*	4. The hollow ball of cells produced by later division of the fertilised egg. Embryo transfer is possible at this stage.
C. *Luteinising hormone*	5. The hormone that changes the empty follicle into the corpus luteum.
I. *Placenta*	6. The membranes that form around the embryo to allow diffusion of nutrients and oxygen etc. between the foetal and maternal blood systems.
H. *Implantation*	7. Attachment of the fertilized egg to the uterine lining
E. *Chorionic gonadotrophin*	8. The hormone that is used in some pregnancy tests.
B. *Oestrogen*	9. The hormone secreted by the ovarian follicle.
J. *Colostrum*	10. The first milk.

This page titled 13.12: Reproductive System Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

13.13: Test Yourself

1. Add the following labels to the diagram of the male reproductive organs below.

testis | epididymis | vas deferens | urethra | penis | scrotal sac | prostate gland

Diagram of the Male Reproductive System

2. Match the following descriptions with the choices given in the list below.

accessory glands | vas deferens or sperm duct | penis | scrotum | fallopian tube | testes | urethra | vagina | uterus | ovary | vulva

a) Organ that delivers semen to the female vagina
b) Where the sperm are produced
c) Passage for sperm from the epididymis to the urethra
d) Carries both sperm and urine down the penis
e) Glands that produce secretions that make up most of the semen
f) Bag of skin surrounding the testes
g) Where the foetus develops
h) This receives the penis during copulation
i) Where fertilisation usually occurs
j) Ova travel along this tube to reach the uterus
k) Where the ova are produced
l) The external opening of the vagina

3. Which hormone is described in each statement below?

a) This hormone stimulates the growth of the follicles in the ovary
b) This hormone converts the empty follicle into the corpus luteum and stimulates it to produce progesterone
c) This hormone is produced by the cells of the follicle
d) This hormone is produced by the corpus luteum
e) This hormone causes the mammary glands to develop
f) This hormone prepares the lining of the uterus to receive a fertilised ovum

4. State whether the following statements are true or false. If false write in the correct answer.

a) Fertilisation of the egg occurs in the uterus
b) The fertilised egg cell contains half the normal number of chromosomes
c) The morula is a hollow ball of cells
d) The mixing of the blood of the mother and foetus allows nutrients and oxygen to transfer easily to the foetus
e) The morula implants in the wall of the uterus
f) The placenta is the organ that supplies the foetus with oxygen and nutrients
g) Colostrum is the first milk
h) Young animals often have to be given calcium supplements because milk contains very little calcium

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 13.13: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

14: Nervous System

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- the role of the nervous system in coordinating an animal's response to the environment
- that the nervous system gathers, sorts and stores information and initiates movement
- the basic structure and function of a neuron
- the structure and function of a synapse and neurotransmitter chemicals
- the nervous pathway known as a reflex with examples
- that training can develop conditioned reflexes in animals
- that the nervous system can be divided into the central and peripheral nervous systems
- that the brain is surrounded by membranes called meninges
- the basic parts of the brain and the function of the cerebral hemispheres, hypothalamus, pituitary, cerebellum and medulla oblongata
- the structure and function of the spinal cord
- that the peripheral nervous system consists of cranial and spinal nerves and the autonomic nervous system
- that the autonomic nervous system consists of sympathetic and parasympathetic parts with different functions

14.1: Coordination
14.2: The Nervous System
14.3: The Neuron
14.4: Reflexes
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.8: Test Yourself
14.9: Websites
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

This page titled 14: Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.1: Coordination

Animals must be able to sense and respond to the environment in which they live if they are to survive. They need to be able to sense the temperature of their surroundings, for example, so they can avoid the hot sun. They must also be able to identify food and escape predators.

The various systems and organs in the body must also be linked so they work together. For example, once a predator has identified suitable prey it has to catch it. This involves coordinating the contraction of the muscle so the predator can run, there must then be an increased blood supply to the muscles to provide them with oxygen and nutrients. At the same time the respiration rate must increase to supply the oxygen and remove the carbon dioxide produced as a result of this increased activity. Once the prey has been caught and eaten, the digestive system must be activated to digest it.

The adjustment of an animal's response to changes in the environment and the complex linking of the various processes in the body that this response involves are called **co-ordination**. Two systems are involved in co-ordination in animals. These are the **nervous** and **endocrine systems**. The first operates via electrical impulses along nerve fibres and the second by releasing special chemicals or hormones into the bloodstream from glands.

This page titled 14.1: Coordination is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.2: The Nervous System

The nervous system has three basic functions:

1. **Sensory function -** to sense changes (known as stimuli) both outside and within the body. For example the eyes sense changes in light and the ear responds to sound waves. Inside the body, stretch receptors in the stomach indicate when it is full and chemical receptors in the blood vessels monitor the acidity of the blood.

2. **Integrative function -** processing the information received from the sense organs. The impulses from these organs are analysed and stored as memory. The many different impulses from different sources are sorted, synchronised and co-ordinated and the appropriate response initiated. The power to integrate, remember and apply experience gives higher animals much of their superiority.

3. **Motor function -** The third function is the response to the stimuli that causes muscles to contract or glands to secrete.

All nervous tissue is made up of nerve cells or **neurons.** These transmit high-speed signals called **nerve impulses**. Nerve impulses can be thought of as being similar to an electric current.

This page titled 14.2: The Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.3: The Neuron

Neurons are cells that have been adapted to carry nerve impulses. A typical neuron has a **cell body** containing a nucleus, one or more branching filaments called **dendrites** which conduct nerve impulses towards the cell body and one long fibre, an **axon**, that carries the impulses away from it. Many axons have a sheath of fatty material called **myelin** surrounding them. This speeds up the rate at which the nerve impulses travel along the nerve (see diagram 14.1).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Motor neuron.jpg

Diagram 14.1 - A motor neuron

The cell body of neurons is usually located in the brain or spinal cord while the axon extends the whole distance to the organ that it supplies. The neuron carrying impulses from the spinal cord to the hind leg or tail of a horse, for example, can be several feet long. A **nerve** is a bundle of axons.

A **sensory neuron** is a nerve cell that transmits impulses from a sense receptor such as those in the eye or ear to the brain or spinal cord. A **motor neuron** is a nerve cell that transmits impulses from the brain or spinal cord to a muscle or gland. A **relay neuron** connects sensory and motor neurons and is found in the brain or spinal cord (see diagrams 14.1 and 14.2).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Relation btw sensory, relay & motor neurons.jpg

Diagram 14.2 - The relationship between sensory, relay and motor neurons

Connections Between Neurons

The connection between adjacent neurons is called a **synapse**. The two nerve cells do not actually touch here for there is a microscopic space between them. The electrical impulse in the neurone before the synapse stimulates the production of chemicals called **neurotransmitters** (such as **acetylcholine**), which are secreted into the gap.

The neurotransmitter chemicals diffuse across the gap and when they contact the membrane of the next nerve cell they stimulate a new nervous impulse (see diagram 14.3). After the impulse has passed the chemical is destroyed and the synapse is ready to receive the next nerve impulse.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Magnification of a synapse.jpg

Diagram 14.3 - A nerve and magnification of a synapse

This page titled 14.3: The Neuron is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.4: Reflexes

A **reflex** is a rapid automatic response to a stimulus. When you accidentally touch a hot object and automatically jerk your hand away, this is a reflex action. It happens without you having to think about it. Animals automatically blink when an object approaches the eye and cats twist their bodies in the air when falling so they land on their paws. (Please don't test this one at home with your pet cat!).

Swallowing, sneezing, and the constriction of the pupil of the eye in bright light are also all reflex actions.

The path taken by the nerve impulses in a reflex is called a **reflex arc**. Most reflex arcs involve only three neurons (see diagram 14.4). The **stimulus** (a pin in the paw) stimulates the pain receptors of the skin, which initiate an impulse in a sensory neuron. This travels to the spinal cord where it passes, by means of a synapse, to a connecting neuron called the relay neuron situated in the spinal cord. The relay neuron in turn makes a synapse with one or more motor neurons that transmit the impulse to the muscles of the limb causing them to contract and remove the paw from the sharp object. Reflexes do not require involvement of the brain although you are aware of what is happening and can, in some instances, prevent them happening. Animals are born with their reflexes. You can think of them as being wired in.

Anatomy and physiology of animals A reflex arc.jpg

Diagram 14.4 - A reflex arc

Conditioned Reflexes

In most reflexes the stimulus and response are related. For example the presence of food in the mouth causes the salivary glands to release saliva. However, it is possible to train animals (and humans) to respond to different and often quite irrelevant stimuli. This is called a **conditioned reflex**.

A Russian biologist called Pavlov carried out the classic experiment to demonstrate such a reflex when he conditioned dogs to salivate at the sound of a bell ringing. Almost every pet owner can identify reflexes they have conditioned in their animals. Perhaps you have trained your cat to associate food with the opening of the fridge door or accustomed your dog to the routines you go through before taking them for a walk.

This page titled 14.4: Reflexes is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

When we describe the nervous system of vertebrates we usually divide it into two parts (see diagram 14.5).

1. The **central nervous system** (**CNS**) which consists of the brain and spinal cord.
2. The **peripheral nervous system** (**PNS**) which consists of the nerves that connect to the brain and spinal cord (cranial and spinal nerves) as well as the **autonomic** (or involuntary) nervous system.

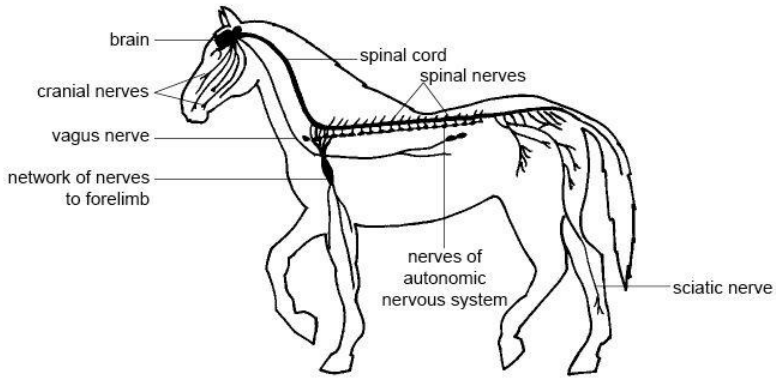


Diagram 14.5 - The nervous system of a horse

The Central Nervous System

The **central nervous system** consists of the brain and spinal cord. It acts as a kind of 'telephone exchange' where a vast number of cross connections are made.

When you look at the brain or spinal cord some regions appear creamy white (**white matter**) and others appear grey (**grey matter**). White matter consists of masses of nerve axons and the grey matter consists of the nerve cells. In the brain the grey matter is on the outside and in the spinal cord it is on the inside (see diagram 14.2).

The Brain

The major part of the brain lies protected within the sturdy "box" of skull called the **cranium**. Surrounding the fragile brain tissue (and spinal cord) are protective membranes called the **meninges** (see diagram 14.6), and a crystal-clear fluid called **cerebrospinal fluid**, which protects and nourishes the brain tissue. This fluid also fills four cavities or **ventricles** that lie within the brain.

Brain tissue is extremely active and, even when an animal is resting, it uses up to 20% of the oxygen taken into the body by the lungs. The **carotid artery**, a branch off the dorsal aorta, supplies it with the oxygen and nutrients it requires. Brain damage occurs if brain tissue is deprived of oxygen for only 4–8 minutes.

The brain consists of three major regions:

1. the **fore brain** which includes the **cerebral hemispheres**, **hypothalamus** and **pituitary gland**;
2. the **hind brain** or **brain stem**, contains the **medulla oblongata** and **pons** and
3. the **cerebellum** or "little brain" (see diagram 14.6).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Longitudinal section through brain of a dog.jpg

Diagram 14.6 - Longitudinal section through the brain of a dog

Mapping the brain

In humans and some animals the functions of the different regions of the cerebral cortex have been mapped (see diagram 14.7).

Diagram 14.7 - The functions of the regions of the human cerebral cortex

The Forebrain

The **cerebral hemispheres** are the masses of brain tissue that sit on the top of the brain. The surface is folded into ridges and furrows called **sulci** (singular sulcus). They make this part of the brain look rather like a very large walnut kernel. The two hemispheres are separated by a deep groove although they are connected internally by a thick bundle of nerve fibres. The outer layer of each hemisphere is called the **cerebral cortex** and this is where the main functions of the cerebral hemispheres are carried out.

The cerebral cortex is large and convoluted in mammals compared to other vertebrates and largest of all in humans because this is where the so-called "higher centres" concerned with memory, learning, reasoning and intelligence are situated.

Nerves from the eyes, ears, nose and skin bring sensory impulses to the cortex where they are interpreted. Appropriate voluntary movements are initiated here in the light of the memories of past events.

Different regions of the cortex are responsible for particular sensory and motor functions, e.g. vision, hearing, taste, smell, or moving the fore-limbs, hind-limbs or tail. For example, when a dog sniffs a scent, sensory impulses from the organ of smell in the nose pass via the olfactory (smelling) nerve to the olfactory centres of the cerebral hemispheres where the impulses are interpreted and co-ordinated.

In humans and some animals the functions of the different regions of the cerebral cortex have been mapped (see diagram 14.8).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Functions of the regions of the cerebral cortex.jpg

Diagram 14.8 - The functions of the regions of the cerebral cortex

The **hypothalamus** is situated at the base of the brain and is connected by a "stalk" to the **pituitary gland**, the "master" hormone-producing gland (see chapter 16). The hypothalamus can be thought of as the bridge between the nervous and endocrine (hormone producing) systems. It produces some of the hormones that are released from the pituitary gland and controls the release of others from it.

It is also an important centre for controlling the internal environment of the animal and therefore maintaining homeostasis. For example, it helps regulate the movement of food through the gut and the temperature, blood pressure and concentration of the blood. It is also responsible for the feeling of being hungry or thirsty and it controls sleep patterns and sex drive.

The Hindbrain

The **medulla oblongata** is at the base of the brain and is a continuation of the spinal cord. It carries all signals between the spinal cord and the brain and contains centres that control vital body functions like the basic rhythm of breathing, the rate of the heartbeat and the activities of the gut. The medulla oblongata also co-ordinates swallowing, vomiting, coughing and sneezing.

The Cerebellum

The **cerebellum** (little brain) looks rather like a smaller version of the cerebral hemispheres attached to the back of the brain. It receives impulses from the organ of balance (vestibular organ) in the inner ear and from stretch receptors in the muscles and tendons. By co-ordinating these it regulates muscle contraction during walking and running and helps maintain the posture and balance of the animal. When the cerebellum malfunctions it causes a tremor and uncoordinated movement.

The Spinal Cord

The spinal cord is a cable of nerve tissue that passes down the channel in the vertebrae from the hindbrain to the end of the tail. It becomes progressively smaller as paired **spinal nerves** pass out of the cord to parts of the body. Protective membranes or meninges cover the cord and these enclose cerebral spinal fluid (see diagram 14.9).

Anatomy and physiology of animals The spinal cord.jpg

Diagram 14.9 - The spinal cord

If you cut across the spinal cord you can see that it consists of white matter on the outside and grey matter in the shape of an H or butterfly on the inside.

The Peripheral Nervous System

The **peripheral nervous system** consists of nerves that are connected to the brain (**cranial nerves**), and nerves that are connected to the spinal cord (**spinal nerves**). The **autonomic nervous** system **is also part of the peripheral nervous system.**

Cranial Nerves

There are twelve pairs of cranial nerves that come from the brain. Each passes through a hole in the cranium (brain case). The most important of these are the olfactory, optic, acoustic and vagus nerves.

- The **olfactory nerves** - (smell) carry impulses from the olfactory organ of the nose to the brain.
- The **optic nerves** - (sight) carry impulses from the retina of the eye to the brain.
- The **auditory (acoustic) nerves** - (hearing) carry impulses from the cochlear of the inner ear to the brain.
- The **vagus nerve** - controls the muscles that bring about swallowing. It also controls the muscles of the heart, airways, lungs, stomach and intestines (see diagram 14.5).

Spinal Nerves

Spinal nerves connect the spinal cord to sense organs, muscles and glands in the body. Pairs of spinal nerves leave the spinal cord and emerge between each pair of adjacent vertebrae (see diagram 14.9).

The **sciatic nerve** is the largest spinal nerve in the body (see diagram 14.5). It leaves the spinal cord as several nerves that join to form a flat band of nervous tissue. It passes down the thigh towards the hind leg where it gives off branches to the various muscles of this limb.

The Autonomic Nervous System

The **autonomic nervous system** controls internal body functions that are not under conscious control. For example when a prey animal is chased by a predator the autonomic nervous system automatically increases the rate of breathing and the heartbeat. It dilates the blood vessels that carry blood to the muscles, releases glucose from the liver, and makes other adjustments to provide for the sudden increase in activity. When the animal has escaped and is safe once again the nervous system slows down all these processes and resumes all the normal body activities like the digestion of food.

The nerves of the autonomic nervous system originate in the spinal cord and pass out between the vertebrae to serve the various organs (see diagram 14.10).There are two main parts to the autonomic nervous system—the **sympathetic system** and the **parasympathetic system**.

The **sympathetic system** stimulates the “flight, fright, fight” response that allows an animal to face up to an attacker or make a rapid departure. It increases the heart and respiratory rates, as well as the amount of blood flowing to the skeletal muscles while blood flow to less critical regions like the gut and skin is reduced. It also causes the pupils of the eyes to dilate. Note that the effects of the sympathetic system are similar to the effects of the hormone adrenaline (see Chapter 16).

The **parasympathetic system** does the opposite to the sympathetic system. It maintains the normal functions of the relaxed body. These are sometimes known as the “housekeeping” functions. It promotes effective digestion, stimulates defaecation and urination and maintains a regular heartbeat and rate of breathing.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Function of the sympathetic & parasympathetic nervous systems.jpg

Diagram 14.10 - The function of the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

This page titled 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.6: Nervous System Worksheet

1. The diagram below is of a nerve cell or neurone.

i. Add the following labels to the diagram.

Axon; Myelin sheath; Cell body; Dendrites; Muscle fibres;

ii. If you like, colour in the diagram as suggested below.

Axon - purple;

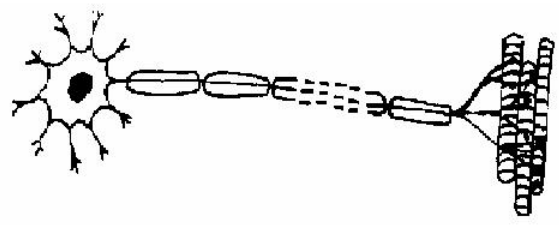
Myelin sheath - yellow;

Cell body - blue;

Dendrites - green;

Muscle fibres – red;

iii. Now indicate the direction that the nerve impulse travels.



2. There are three different kinds of neurone or nerve cell. Match each kind with its function.

A. Motor neuron; B. Sensory neuron; C. Relay neuron;

Kind of neurone	Function
.....	The nerve cell that carries impulses from a sense receptor to the brain or spinal cord.
.....	The nerve cell that connects sensory and motor neurons
.....	The nerve cell that transmits impulses from the brain or spinal cord to a muscle or gland

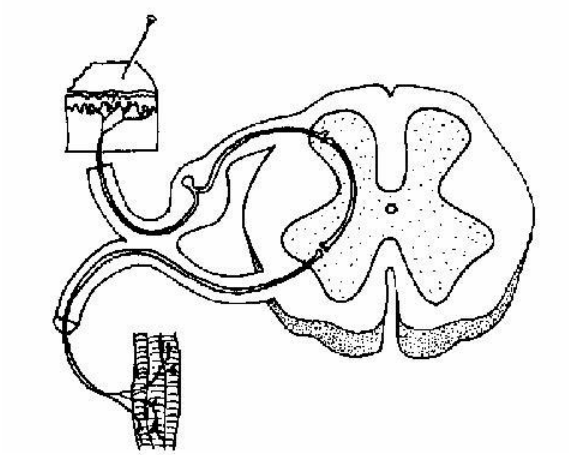
3. Match the descriptions in the table below with the terms in the list.

A. Synapse; B. Axon; C. Myelin sheath; D. Nerve impulse; E. Sense receptor; F. Response; G.Reflex; H. Cell body; I. Dendrite; J. Nerve; K. Neurotransmitter; L. Axon terminal

Term	Function
.....	1. The long fibre that carries the nerve impulses.
.....	2. A bundle of axons.
.....	3. The connection between adjacent neurons.
.....	4. The chemical secreted into the gap between neurons at a synapse.
.....	5. A rapid automatic response to a stimulus.
.....	6. The covering of fatty material that speeds up the passage of nerve impulses.
.....	7. The structure at the end of an axon that produces neurotransmitters to transmit the nerve impulse across the synapse.
.....	8. The high speed signals that pass along the axons of nerve cells.
.....	9. The branching filaments that conduct nerve impulses towards the cell.
.....	10. The sense organ or cells that receive stimuli from within and outside the body.
.....	11. The reaction to a stimulus by a muscle or gland.
.....	12.The part of the nerve cell containing the nucleus.

4. The diagram below shows a cross-section of the spinal cord. Add the following labels to the diagram.

Central canal; White matter; Dorsal root; Grey matter; Ventral root; Skin; Muscle; Sensory neuron; Relay neuron; Motor neuron; Pain receptors in skin



5.

a) List in order the 3 different neurons involved in a reflex arc from the stimulus to the response.

Stimulus	.....	.....	.....	Response

b) Name 3 different reflexes found in animals.

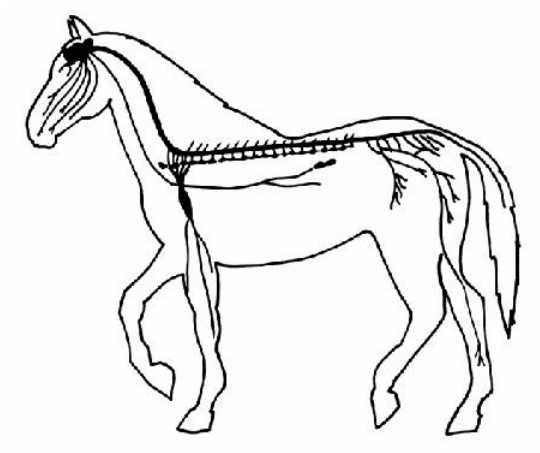
Reflex 1.....

Reflex 2.....

Reflex 3.....

6. The diagram below shows the nervous system of a horse. Add the following labels.

Brain; Spinal cord; Cranial nerves; Spinal nerves; Sciatic nerve; Nerves of the autonomic nervous system; Vagus nerve; Network of nerves to forelimb.



7. Indicate whether the following parts of the nervous system are part of the **Central Nervous System CNS)** or the **Peripheral Nervous System (PNS).**

Part of nervous system	CNS or PNS?
Brain	.....
Autonomic nervous system	.....
Spinal nerves	.....
Spinal cord	.....
Cranial nerves	.....

8. The diagram below shows a section of a dog's brain. Add the labels in the list below and, if you like, colour in the diagram as suggested.

Cerebellum - blue;

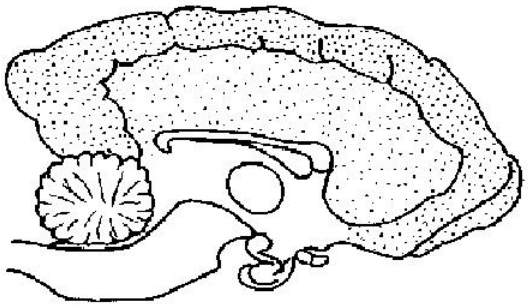
Spinal cord - green;

Medulla oblongata - orange;

Hypothalamus - purple;

Pituitary gland - red;

Cerebral hemispheres – yellow.



9. Match the descriptions below with the terms in the list. You may need to use some terms more than once.

A. Cerebral hemispheres; B. White matter; C. Cerebellum; D.Medulla oblongata; E. Hypothalamus; F. Pituitary; G. Grey matter; H. Meninges; I. Ventricles; J. Cerebrospinal fluid; K. Sulcus; L. Carotid artery

Term	Description
.....	1. Controls water balance and body temperature.
.....	2. Where the respiratory rate is controlled.
.....	3. Where posture, balance and voluntary muscle movements are controlled.
.....	4. Contains centres governing mental activity, including intelligence, memory, and learning.
.....	5. The tough fibrous envelope enclosing the brain and spinal cord.
.....	6. The “master” gland of the endocrine system.
.....	7. Responsible for instigating voluntary movements.
.....	8. The fluid that surrounds the brain and spinal cord.
.....	9. Composed of cell bodies and nuclei.
.....	10. Composed of axons.
.....	11. Where the sensations of sight, sound, taste etc. are interpreted.
.....	12. Spaces in the brain filled with cerebral spinal fluid.
.....	13. A fold in the cerebral cortex.
.....	14. The artery that supplies the brain with oxygenated blood.

10. Match the descriptions below with the parts of the nervous system in the list. You may need to use some terms more than once.

A. Autonomic nervous system; B. Central nervous system; C. Peripheral nervous system;
D. Parasympathetic nervous system; E. Sympathetic nervous system

Description	Part of the nervous system
1. Part of the nervous system that is composed of the brain and the spinal cord.	.....
2. Part of the nervous system that is composed of the cranial and spinal nerves.	.....
3. The part of the peripheral nervous system that regulates the activity of the heart and smooth muscle.	.....
4. The part of the autonomic nervous system that increases heart and respiratory rates, increases blood flow to the skeletal muscles and dilates the pupils of the eye.	.....
5. The part of the autonomic nervous system that increases gut activity and decreases heart and respiratory rates.	.....

11. Name the nerves described below using the choices in the list.

Olfactory nerve; Sciatic nerve; Vagus nerve; Optic nerve; Vestibular nerve

Nerve	Description
.....	1. The 8th cranial nerve that carries impulses from the organs of balance and hearing to the brain.
.....	2. The 2nd cranial nerve that carries nervous impulses from the retina of the eye to the brain.
.....	3. The largest nerve in the body serving the muscles of the leg.
.....	4. The 1st cranial nerve that carries impulses from the organ of smell in the nose to the brain.
.....	5. The 10th cranial nerve that supplies the pharynx, lungs, heart, stomach and most of the abdominal organs.

This page titled 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers

1. The diagram below is of a nerve cell or neurone.

i. Add the following labels to the diagram.

Axon; Myelin sheath; Cell body; Dendrites; Muscle fibres;

ii. If you like, colour in the diagram as suggested below.

Axon - purple;

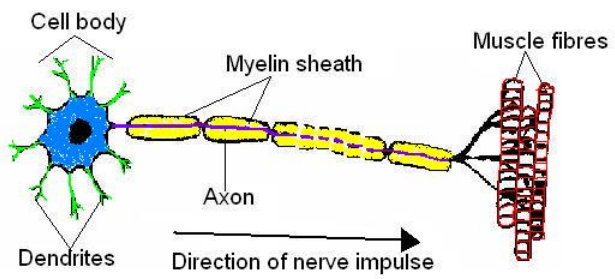
Myelin sheath - yellow;

Cell body - blue;

Dendrites - green;

Muscle fibres – red;

iii. Now indicate the direction that the nerve impulse travels.



2. There are three different kinds of neurone or nerve cell. Match each kind with its function.

A. Motor neuron; B. Sensory neuron; C. Relay neuron;

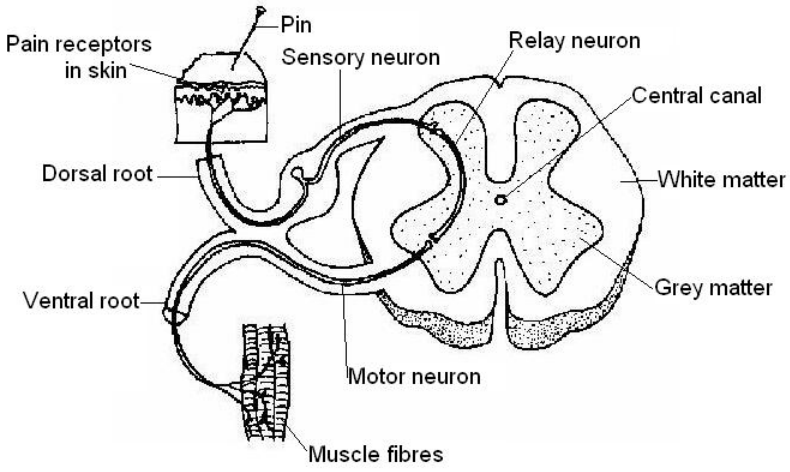
Kind of neurone	Function
B. Sensory neuron	The nerve cell that carries impulses from a sense receptor to the brain or spinal cord.
C. Relay neuron	The nerve cell that connects sensory and motor neurons
A. Motor neuron	The nerve cell that transmits impulses from the brain or spinal cord to a muscle or gland

3. Match the descriptions in the table below with the terms in the list.

Term	Function
B. Axon	1. The long fibre that carries the nerve impulses.
J. Nerve	2. A bundle of axons.
A. Synapse	3. The connection between adjacent neurons.
K. Neurotransmitter	4. The chemical secreted into the gap between neurons at a synapse.
G.Reflex	5. A rapid automatic response to a stimulus.
C. *Myelin sheath*	6. The covering of fatty material that speeds up the passage of nerve impulses.
L. Axon terminal	7. The structure at the end of an axon that produces neurotransmitters to transmit the nerve impulse across the synapse.
D. Nerve impulse	8. The high speed signals that pass along the axons of nerve cells.
I. Dendrites	9. The branching filaments that conduct nerve impulses towards the cell.
E. Sense receptor	10. The sense organ or cells that receive stimuli from within and outside the body.
F. Response	11. The reaction to a stimulus by a muscle or gland.
H. Cell body	12.The part of the nerve cell containing the nucleus.

4. The diagram below shows a cross-section of the spinal cord. Add the following labels to the diagram.

Central canal; White matter; Dorsal root; Grey matter; Ventral root; Skin; Muscle; Sensory neuron; Relay neuron; Motor neuron; Pain receptors in skin



5.

a) List in order the 3 different neurons involved in a reflex arc from the stimulus to the response.

Stimulus	*sensory neuron*	*relay neuron*	*motor neuron*	Response

b) Name 3 different reflexes found in animals.

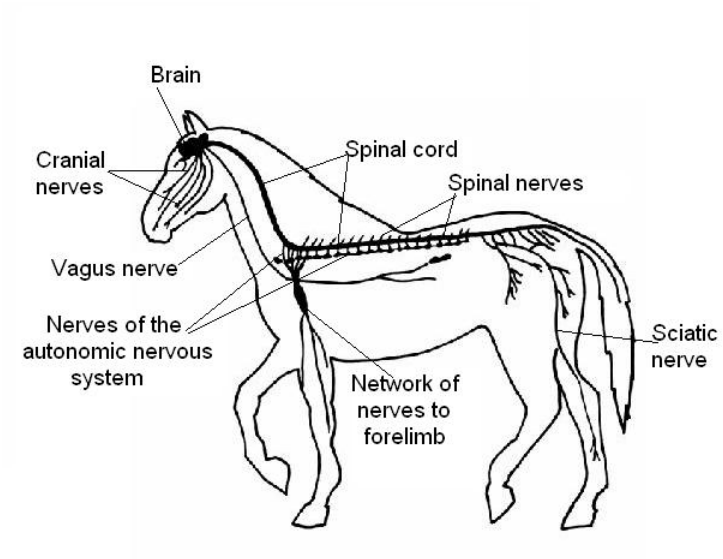
Reflex 1. *Blink reflex*.

Reflex 2. *Paw pinch reflex*.

Reflex 3. *Swallowing reflex, plus many others*.

6. The diagram below shows the nervous system of a horse. Add the following labels.

Brain; Spinal cord; Cranial nerves; Spinal nerves; Sciatic nerve; Nerves of the autonomic nervous system; Vagus nerve; Network of nerves to forelimb.



7. Indicate whether the following parts of the nervous system are part

of the **Central Nervous System CNS)** or the **Peripheral Nervous System (PNS).**

Part of nervous system	CNS or PNS?
Brain	*CNS*
Autonomic nervous system	*PNS*
Spinal nerves	*PNS*
Spinal cord	*CNS*
Cranial nerves	PNS

8. The diagram below shows a section of a dog's brain. Add the labels

in the list below and, if you like, colour in the diagram as suggested.

Cerebellum - blue;

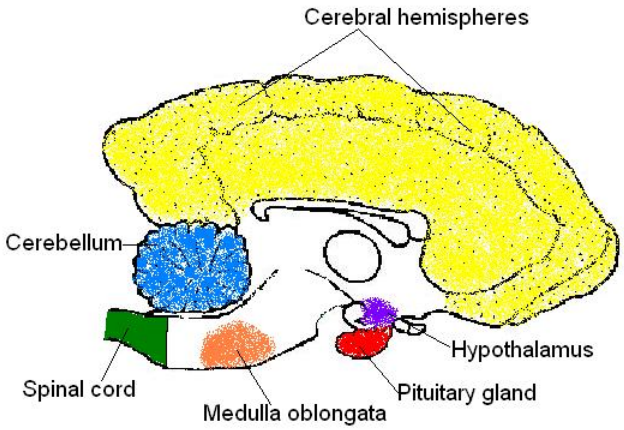
Spinal cord - green;

Medulla oblongata - orange;

Hypothalamus - purple;

Pituitary gland - red;

Cerebral hemispheres – yellow.



9. Match the descriptions below with the terms in the list. You may need to use some terms more than once.

Term	Description
E. Hypothalamus	1. Controls water balance and body temperature.
D.Medulla oblongata	2. Where the respiratory rate is controlled.
C. Cerebellum	3. Where posture, balance and voluntary muscle movements are controlled.
A. Cerebral hemispheres	4. Contains centres governing mental activity, including intelligence, memory, and learning.
H. Meninges	5. The tough fibrous envelope enclosing the brain and spinal cord.
F. Pituitary	6. The “master” gland of the endocrine system.
Cerebral hemispheres/cortex	7. Responsible for instigating voluntary movements.
J. Cerebrospinal fluid	8. The fluid that surrounds the brain and spinal cord.
G. Grey matter	9. Composed of cell bodies and nuclei.
B. White matter	10. Composed of axons.
Cerebral hemispheres/cortex	11. Where the sensations of sight, sound, taste etc. are interpreted.
I. Ventricles	12. Spaces in the brain filled with cerebral spinal fluid.
K. Sulcus	13. A fold in the cerebral cortex.
L. Carotid artery	14. The artery that supplies the brain with oxygenated blood.

10. Match the descriptions below with the parts of the nervous system in the list. You may need to use some terms more than once.

Description	Part of the nervous system
1. Part of the nervous system that is composed of the brain and the spinal cord.	*B. Central nervous system*
2. Part of the nervous system that is composed of the cranial and spinal nerves.	*C. Peripheral nervous system*
3. The part of the peripheral nervous system that regulates the activity of the heart and smooth muscle.	*A. Autonomic nervous system*
4. The part of the autonomic nervous system that increases heart and respiratory rates, increases blood flow to the skeletal muscles and dilates the pupils of the eye.	*E. Sympathetic nervous system*
5. The part of the autonomic nervous system that increases gut activity and decreases heart and respiratory rates.	*D. Parasympathetic nervous system*

11. Name the nerves described below using the choices in the list.

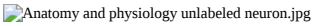
Nerve	Description
Vestibular nerve	1. The 8th cranial nerve that carries impulses from the organs of balance and hearing to the brain.
Optic nerve	2. The 2nd cranial nerve that carries nervous impulses from the retina of the eye to the brain.
Sciatic nerve	3. The largest nerve in the body serving the muscles of the leg.
Olfactory nerve	4. The 1st cranial nerve that carries impulses from the organ of smell in the nose to the brain.
Vagus nerve	5. The 10th cranial nerve that supplies the pharynx, lungs, heart, stomach and most of the abdominal organs.

This page titled 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.8: Test Yourself

1. Add the following labels to this diagram of a motor neuron.

cell body | nucleus | axon | dendrites | myelin sheath | muscle fibres



2. What is a synapse?

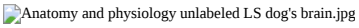
3. What is a reflex?

4. Rearrange the parts of a reflex arc given below in the order in which the nerve impulse travels from the sense organ to the muscle.

sense organ | relay neuron | motor neuron | sensory neuron | muscle fibres

5. Add the following labels to the diagram of the dog's brain shown below.

cerebellum | cerebral hemisphere | cerebral cortex | pituitary gland | medulla oblongata



6. What is the function of the meninges that cover the brain and spinal cord

7. Give 3 effects of the action of the sympathetic nervous system.

This page titled 14.8: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.9: Websites

- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Neuron Wikipedia. Lots of good information here but as usual a warning that there are terms and concepts that are beyond the scope of this course. Also try ‘reflex action’ ; ‘autonomic nervous system’ ;
- http://images.google.co.nz/imgres?im...lr%3D%26sa%3DN How Stuff Works. This site is for the neuron but try ‘neuron types’, ‘brain parts’ and ‘balancing act’ too.
- http://web.archive.org/web/200608211...ireflexarc.swf Reflex Arc. Nice clear and simple animation of a reflex arc.

This page titled 14.9: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

- The **neuron** is the basic unit of the nervous system. It consists of a **cell body** with a nucleus, filaments known as **dendrites** and a long fibre known as the **axon**often surrounded by a **myelin sheath**.
- A **nerve** is a bundle of axons.
- **Grey matter** in the brain and spinal cord consists mainly of brain cells while **white matte**r consists of masses of axons.
- **Nerve Impulses** travel along axons.
- Adjacent neurons connect with each other at **synapses**.
- **Reflexes** are automatic responses to stimuli. The path taken by nerve impulses involved in reflexes is a **reflex arc**. Most reflex arcs involve 3 neurons - a **sensory neuron**, a **relay neuron** and a **motor neuron**. A stimulus, a pin in the paw for example, initiates an impulse in the sensory neuron that passes via a synapse to the relay neuron situated in the spinal cord and then via another synapse to the motor neurone. This transmits the impulse to the muscle causing it to contract and remove the paw from the pin.
- The nervous system is divided into 2 parts: the **central nervous system**, consisting of the brain and spinal cord and the **peripheral nervous system**consisting of nerves connected to the brain and spinal cord. The **autonomic nervous system** is considered to be part of the peripheral nervous system.
- The brain consists of three major regions: 1. the **fore brain** which includes the **cerebral hemispheres** (or **cerebrum**), **hypothalamus** and **pituitary gland**; 2. the **hindbrain** or **brain stem** containing the **medulla oblongata** and 3. the **cerebellum**.
- Protective membranes known as the **meninges** surround the brain and spinal cord.
- There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves that include the optic, olfactory, acoustic and **vagus** nerves.
- The **spinal cord** is a cable of nerve tissue surrounded by meninges passing from the brain to the end of the tail. **Spinal nerves** emerge by a **ventral** and **dorsal root** between each vertebra and connect the spinal cord with organs and muscles.
- The **autonomic nervous system** controls internal body functions not under conscious control. It is divided into 2 parts with 2 different functions: the **sympathetic nervous system** that is involved in the flight and fight response including increased heart rate, bronchial dilation, dilation of the pupil and decreased gut activity. The **parasympathetic nervous system** is associated with decreased heart rate, pupil constriction and increased gut activity.

This page titled 14.10: Nervous System (Summary) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

15: The Senses

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- that the general senses of touch, pressure, pain etc. are situated in the dermis of the skin and in the body
- that the special senses include those of smell, taste, sight, hearing, and balance
- the main structures of the eye and their functions
- the route taken by light through the eye to the retina
- the role of the rods and cones in the retina
- the advantages of binocular vision
- the main structures of the ear and their functions
- the route taken by sound waves through the ear to the cochlea
- the role of the vestibular organ (semicircular canals and otolith organ) in maintaining balance and posture

15.1: The Sense Organs
15.2: Touch and Pressure
15.3: Pain
15.4: Temperature
15.5: Awareness of Limb Position
15.6: Smell
15.7: Taste
15.8: Sight
15.9: Hearing
15.10: Balance
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
15.13: Test Yourself
15.14: Websites

This page titled 15: The Senses is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.1: The Sense Organs

Sense organs allow animals to sense changes in the environment around them and in their bodies so that they can respond appropriately. They enable animals to avoid hostile environments, sense the presence of predators and find food.

Animals can sense a wide range of stimuli that includes, touch, pressure, pain, temperature, chemicals, light, sound, movement and position of the body. Some animals can sense electric and magnetic fields. All sense organs respond to stimuli by producing nerve impulses that travel to the brain via a sensory nerve. The impulses are then processed and interpreted in the brain as pain, sight, sound, taste etc.

The senses are often divided into two groups:

1. The **general senses** of touch, pressure, pain and temperature that are distributed fairly evenly through the skin. Some are found in muscles and within joints.

2. The **special senses** which include the senses of smell, taste, sight, hearing and balance. The special sense organs may be quite complex in structure.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 15.1: The Sense Organs is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.2: Touch and Pressure

Within the dermis of the skin are numerous modified nerve endings that are sensitive to touch and pressure. The roots of hairs may also be well supplied with sensory receptors that inform the animal contact with an object (see diagram 15.1). Whiskers are specially modified hairs.

This page titled 15.2: Touch and Pressure is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.3: Pain

Receptors that sense pain are found in almost every tissue of the body. They tell the animal that tissues are dangerously hot, cold, compressed or stretched or that there is not enough blood flowing in them. The animal may then be able to respond and protect itself from further damage

Anatomy and physiology of animals General senses in skin.jpg

Diagram 15.1 - The general senses in the skin

This page titled 15.3: Pain is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.4: Temperature

Nerve endings in the skin respond to hot and cold stimuli (See diagram 15.1).

This page titled 15.4: Temperature is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.5: Awareness of Limb Position

There are sense organs in the muscles, tendons and joints that send continuous impulses to the brain that tell it where each limb is. This information allows the animal to place its limbs accurately and know their exact position without having to watch them.

This page titled 15.5: Awareness of Limb Position is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.8: Sight

The eyes are the organs of sight. They consist of spherical **eyeballs** situated in deep depressions in the skull called the **orbits**. They are attached to the wall of the orbit by six muscles, which move the eyeball. Upper and lower **eyelids** cover the eyes during sleep and protect them from foreign objects or too much light, and spread the tears over their surface.

The **nictitating membrane** or **haw** is a transparent sheet that moves sideways across the eye from the inner corner, cleansing and moistening the cornea without shutting out the light. It is found in birds, crocodiles, frogs and fish as well as marsupials like the kangaroo. It is rare in mammals but can be seen in cats and dogs by gently opening the eye when it is asleep. **Eyelashes** also protect the eyes from the sun and foreign objects.

Structure of the Eye

Lining the eyelids and covering the front of the eyeball is a thin epithelium called the **conjunctiva**. Conjunctivitis is inflammation of this membrane. **Tear glands** that open just under the top eyelid secrete a salty solution that keeps the exposed part of the eye moist, washes away dust and contains an enzyme that destroys bacteria.

The wall of the eyeball is composed of three layers (see diagram 15.4). From the outside these are the **sclera**, the **choroid** and the **retina**.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Structure of the eye.jpg

Diagram 15.4 - The structure of the eye

The **sclera** is a tough fibrous layer that protects the eyeball and gives it rigidity. At the front of the eye the sclera is visible as the "**white**" of the eye, which is modified as the transparent **cornea** through which the light rays have to pass to enter the eye. The cornea helps focus light that enters the eye.

The **choroid** lies beneath the sclera. It contains a network of blood vessels that supply the eye with oxygen and nutrients. Its inner surface is highly pigmented and absorbs stray light rays. In nocturnal animals like the cat and possum this highly pigmented layer reflects light as a means of conserving light. This is what makes them shine when caught in car headlights.

At the front of the eye the choroid becomes the **iris**. This is the coloured part of the eye that controls the amount of light entering the **pupil** of the eye. In dim light the pupil is wide open so as much light as possible enters while in bright light the pupils contract to protect the retina from damage by excess light.

The **pupil** in most animals is circular but in many nocturnal animals it is a slit that can close completely. This helps protect the extra-sensitive light sensing tissues of animals like the cat and possum from bright sunlight.

The inner layer lining the inside of the eye is the **retina**. This contains the light sensing cells called **rods** and **cones** (see diagram 15.5).

The **rod cells** are long and fat and are sensitive to dim light but cannot detect colour. They contain large amounts of a pigment that changes when exposed to light. This pigment comes from vitamin A found in carrots etc. A deficiency of this vitamin causes night blindness. So your mother was right when she told you to eat your carrots as they would help you see in the dark!

The **cone cells** provide colour vision and allow animals to see details. Most are found in the centre of the retina and they are most densely concentrated in a small area called the **fovea**. This is the area of sharpest vision, where the words you are reading at this moment are focussed on your retina.

Anatomy and physiology of animals A rod and cone from the retina.jpg

Diagram 15.5 - A rod and cone from the retina

The nerve fibres from the cells of the retina join and leave the eye via the **optic nerve**. There are no rods or cones here and it is a **blind spot**. The optic nerve passes through the back of the orbit and enters the brain.

The **lens** is situated just behind the pupil and the iris. It is a crystalline structure with no blood vessels and is held in position by a ligament. This is attached to a muscle, which changes the shape of the lens so both near and distant objects can be focussed by the

eye. This ability to change the focus of the lens is called **accommodation**. In many mammals the muscles that bring about accommodation are poorly developed, Rats, cows and dogs, for example, are thought to be unable to focus clearly on near objects.

In old age and certain diseases the lens may become cloudy resulting in blurred vision. This is called a **cataract**. Within the eyeball are two cavities, the **anterior and posterior chambers**, separated by the lens. They contain fluids the **aqueous and vitreous humours**respectively, that maintain the shape of the eyeball and help press the retina firmly against the choroid so clear images are seen.

How The Eye Sees

Eyes work quite like a camera. Light rays from an object enter the eye and are focused on the retina (the “film”) at the back of the eye. The cornea, the lens and the fluid within the eye all help to focus the light. They do this by bending the light rays so that light from the object falls on the retina. This bending of light is called **refraction**. The light stimulates the light sensitive cells of the retina and nerve impulses are produced that pass down the optic nerve to the brain (see diagram 15.6).

Anatomy and physiology of animals How light travels from the object to the retina of the eye.jpg

Diagram 15.6 - How the light travels from the object to the retina of the eye

Colour Vision In Animals

As mentioned before, the retina has two different kinds of cells that are stimulated by light - '***rods***' and '***cones***'. In humans and higher primates like baboons and gorillas the rods function in dim light and do not perceive colour, while the cones are stimulated by bright light and perceive details and colour.

Other mammals have very few cones in their retinas and it is believed that they see no or only a limited range of colour. It is, of course, difficult to find out exactly what animals do see. It is thought that deer, rats, and rabbits and nocturnal animals like the cat are colour-blind, and dogs probably see green and blue. Some fish and most birds seem to have better colour vision than humans and they use colour, often very vivid ones, for recognizing each other as well as for courtship and protection.

Binocular Vision

Animals like cats that hunt have eyes placed on the front of the head in such a way that both eyes see the same wide area but from slightly different angles (see diagram 15.7). This is called binocular vision**. Its main advantage is that it enables the animals to estimate the distance to the prey so they can chase it and pounce accurately.**

Anatomy and physiology of animals Well developed binocular vision.jpg

Diagram 15.7 - Well developed binocular vision in predator animals like the cat

In contrast plant-eating prey animals like the rabbit and deer need to have a wide panoramic view so they can see predators approaching. They therefore have eyes placed on the side of the head, each with its own field of vision (see diagram 15.8). They have only a very small area of binocular vision in front of the head but are extremely sensitive to movement.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Panaoramic monocular vision.jpg

Diagram 15.8 - Panoramic monocular vision in prey animals like the rabbit

This page titled 15.8: Sight is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.9: Hearing

Animals use the sense of hearing for many different purposes. It is used to sense danger and enemies, to detect prey, to identify prospective mates and to communicate within social groups. Some animals (e.g. most bats and dolphins) use sound to “see” by echolocation. By sending out a cry and interpreting the echo, they sense obstacles or potential prey.

Structure of the Ear

Most of the ear, the organ of hearing, is hidden from view within the boney skull. It consists of three main regions: the **outer ear, the middle ear** and the **inner ear** (see diagram 15.9).

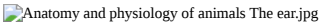


Diagram 15.9 - The ear

The **outer ear** consists of an **ear canal** leading inwards to a thin membrane known as the **eardrum**or **tympanic membrane** that stretches across the canal. Many animals have an external ear flap or **pinna** to collect and funnel the sound into the ear canal. The pinnae (plural of pinna) usually face forwards on the head but many animals can swivel them towards the source of the sound.

In dogs the ear canal is long and bent and often traps wax or provides an ideal habitat for mites, yeast and bacteria.

The **middle ear** consists of a cavity in the skull that is connected to the **pharynx**(throat) by a long narrow tube called the **Eustachian tube**. This links the middle ear to the outside air so that the air pressure on both sides of the eardrum can be kept the same. Everyone knows the uncomfortable feeling (and affected hearing) that occurs when you drive down a steep hill and the unequal air pressures on the two sides of the eardrum cause it to distort. The discomfort is relieved when you swallow because the Eustachian tubes open and the pressure on either side equalises.

Within the cavity of the middle ear are three of the smallest bones in the body, the **auditory ossicles**. They are known as the hammer, the anvil and the stirrup because of their resemblance to the shape of these objects. These tiny bones articulate (move against) each other and transfer the vibrations of the eardrum to the membrane covering the opening to the inner ear.

The **inner ear** is a complicated series of fluid-filled tubes imbedded in the bone of the skull. It consists of two main parts. These are the **cochlea** where sound waves are converted to nerve impulses and the **vestibular organ** that is associated with the sense of balance and has no role in hearing (see later).

The **cochlea** looks rather like a coiled up snail shell. Within it there are specialised cells with fine hairs on their surface that respond to the movement of the fluid within the cochlea by producing nervous impulses that travel to the brain along the **auditory nerve**.

How The Ear Hears

Sound waves can be thought of as vibrations in the air. They are collected by the ear pinna and pass down the ear canal where they cause the eardrum to vibrate. (An interesting fact is that when you are listening to someone speaking your eardrum vibrates at exactly the same rate as the vocal cords of the person speaking to you).

The vibration of the eardrum sets the three tiny bones in the middle ear moving against each other so that the vibration is transferred to the membrane covering the opening to the inner ear. As well as transferring the vibration, the tiny ear bones also amplify it. The three tiny bones are called the stirrup, anvil, and hammer. They were called such of their form. In the human ear this amplification is about 20 times while in desert-dwelling animals like the kangaroo rat it is 100 times. This acute hearing warns them of the approach of predators like owls and snakes, even in the dark.

The vibration causes waves in the fluid in the inner ear that pass down the cochlea. These waves stimulate the tiny hair cells to produce nerve impulses that travel via the auditory nerve to the cerebral cortex of the brain where they are interpreted as sound.

To summarise: The route sound waves take as they pass through the ear is: **External ear | tympanic membrane | ear ossicles | inner ear |cochlear | hair cells**

The hair cells generate a nerve impulse that travels down the auditory nerve to the brain.

Remember that sound waves do not pass along the Eustachian tube. Its function is to equalise the air pressure on either side of the tympanic membrane.

This page titled 15.9: Hearing is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.10: Balance

The **vestibular organ** of the inner ear helps an animal maintain its posture and keep balanced by monitoring the movement and position of the head. It consists of two structures - the **semicircular canals** and the **otolith organs**.

The **semicircular canals** (see diagram 15.10) respond to movement of the body. They tell an animal whether it is moving up or down, left or right. They consist of three canals set in three different planes at right angles to each other so that movement in any direction can be registered. The canals contain fluid and sense cells with fine hairs that project into the fluid. When the head moves the fluid swirls in the canals and stimulates the hair cells. These send nerve impulses along the **vestibular nerve**to the **cerebellum**.

Note that the semicircular canals register acceleration and deceleration as well as changes in direction but do not respond to movement that is at a constant speed.

The **otolith organs** are sometimes known as gravity receptors. They tell you if your head is tilted or if you are standing on your head. They consist of bulges at the base of the semi circular canals that contain hair cells that are covered by a mass of jelly containing tiny pieces of chalk called **otoliths** (see diagram 15.10). When the head is tilted, or moved suddenly, the otoliths pull on the hair cells, which produce a nerve impulse. This travels down the **vestibular nerve** to the **cerebellum**. By coordinating the nerve impulses from the semicircular canals and otolith organs the cerebellum helps the animal keep its balance.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Olith organs.jpg

Diagram 15.10 - Otolith Organs

This page titled 15.10: Balance is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

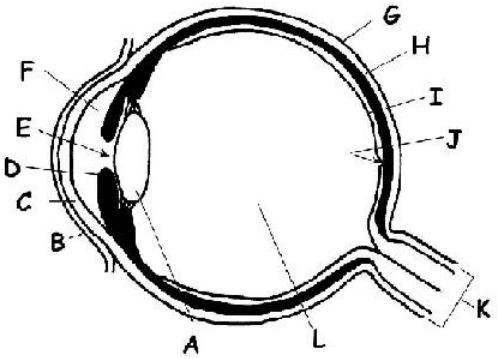
15.11: Summary

- Receptors for touch, pressure, pain and temperature are found in the skin. Receptors in the muscles, tendons and joints inform the brain of limb position.
- The **olfactory organ** in the nose responds to chemicals in the air i.e. smell.
- **Taste buds** on the tongue respond to a limited range of chemicals dissolved in saliva.
- The eyes are the organs of sight. Spherical **eyeballs** situated in orbits in the skull have walls composed of 3 layers.
- The tough outer **sclera** protects and holds the shape of the eyeball. At the front it becomes visible as the white of the eye and the transparent **cornea** that allows light to enter the eye.
- The middle layer is the **choroid**. It most animals it absorbs stray light rays but in nocturnal animal it is reflective to conserve light. At the front of the eye it becomes the **iris** with muscles to control the size of the **pupil** and hence the amount of light entering the eye.
- The inner layer is the **retina** containing the light receptor cells: the **rods** for black and white vision in dim light and the **cones** for colour and detailed vision. Nerve impulses generated by these cells leave the eye for the brain via the **optic nerve**.
- The **lens** (with the cornea) helps focus the light rays on the retina. Muscles alter the shape of the lens to allow near and far objects to be focussed.
- **Aqueous humour** fills the space immediately behind the cornea and keeps it in shape and **vitreous humour**, a transparent jelly-like substance, fills the space behind the lens allowing light rays to pass through to the retina.
- The ear is the organ of hearing and balance.
- The external **pinna** helps funnel sound waves into the ear and locate the direction of the sound. The sound waves travel down the external **ear canal** to the **eardrum** or **tympanic membrane** causing it to vibrate. This vibration is transferred to the **auditory ossicles** of the middle ear which themselves transfer it to the inner ear. Here receptors in the **cochlea** respond by generating nerve impulses that travel to the brain via the **auditory** (acoustic) nerve.
- The **Eustachian tube** connects the middle ear with the pharynx to equalise air pressure on either side of the tympanic membrane.
- The **vestibular organ** of the inner ear is concerned with maintaining balance and posture. It consists of the **semicircular canals** and the **otolith organs**.

This page titled 15.11: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

he table below add the names of the structures indicated by the letters.



CHOICES: Aqueous humour; choroid; conjunctiva; fovea; optic nerve; cornea; iris; lens; retina; sclera; vitreous humour; pupil

A	.....
B	.....
C	.....
D	.....
E	.....
F	.....
G	.....
H	.....
I	.....
J	.....
K	.....
L	.....

2.Insert the correct term in the table below. Some terms may be used more than once.

CHOICES: Aqueous humour; Choroid; Conjunctiva; Iris; Fovea; Optic nerve; Blind spot; Cornea; Sclera; Retina; Vitreous humour; Pupil; Nictitating membrane

Term	Description
.....	1. Fluid that fills the anterior (front) chamber of the eye.
.....	2. The white of the eye.
.....	3. Area of the retina that lacks rods and cones.
.....	4. Coating that provides nutrients to eye. Becomes the iris in the front of the eye.
.....	5. Layer containing the rods and cones.
.....	6. Jelly-like substance filling the posterior cavity of the eyeball.
.....	7. Heavily pigmented coating that prevents light scattering within the eyeball: reflects light in nocturnal animals.
.....	8. Coloured structure that controls the size of the pupil.
.....	9. Area of the retina of most detailed vision.
.....	10. Most anterior part of the sclera—the window on to the world.
.....	11. Outer coating of tough, fibrous connective tissue.
.....	12. Aperture of the eye. Where the light enters.
.....	13. The delicate membrane that covers the front of the eyeball.
.....	14. The third eyelid.
.....	15. The nerve that takes nerve impulses from the retina to the brain.

3. Are these statements about the eye **true** or **false**? If false give the correct answer.

1. Prey animals like the rabbit have a large area of binocular vision. T/F
2. The rods of the retina function in dim light and do not respond well to colour. T/F
3. The lacrimal glands secrete fluid that washes the outer surface of the eye and keeps it moist. T/F
4. The conjunctiva is the inner lining of the eyeball. T/F
5. When the eye focuses both the lens and the cornea change in shape. T/F
6. The cones of the retina are more numerous in the region of the eye known as the fovea. T/F
7. Vitamin E is required in the diet to make the visual pigment found in the cells of the retina. T/F
8. The size of the pupil changes in different light intensities. T/F
9. The parasympathetic nervous system brings about dilation (expansion)of the pupil. T/F
10. Nocturnal animals are usually colour-blind. T/F

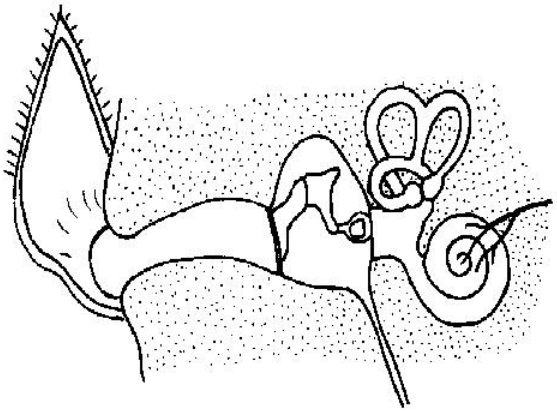
4. Match the terms in the list below to the descriptions in the table.

Auditory ossicles; Pinna; Tympanic membrane; Cochlea; Ear canal; Eustachian tube; Vestibular organ; Middle ear Inner ear; Auditory nerve

Term	Description
.....	1. Connects the pharynx (throat) and the middle ear to keep the air pressures equal.
.....	2. Vibrates as sound waves hit it. Transmits these vibrations to the auditory ossicles.
.....	3. Animals can turn this towards the direction of the sound.
.....	4. The smallest bones in the body. They transmit sound vibrations across the middle ear.
.....	5. Sound vibrations are converted here into electrical impulses.
.....	6. Contains receptors for the sense of balance and movement.
.....	7. This canal can harbour mites in cats and dogs.
.....	8. The part of the ear consisting of the cochlea and vestibular organ.
.....	9. The part of the ear that contains the ear (auditory) ossicles.
.....	10. The nerve that transmits nerve impulses from the cochlea to the brain

5. The diagram below shows an ear of a mammal. Add the labels below to the diagram.

Auditory ossicles; Pinna; Tympanic membrane; Cochlea; Ear canal; Eustacian tube; Semicircular canals; Outer ear; Middle ear; Inner ear; Auditory nerve



6. Rearrange these parts of the ear in the order in which sound waves travel to stimulate the cochlea.

Auditory ossicles; Tympanic membrane; Ear canal; Inner ear

Sound	.....	.....	.....	.....	Cochlea

7. Complete the statements below by adding the words in bold.

tongue; temperature; otoliths; olfactory; hairs; nose; pressure; vestibular; touch; cerebellum; semicircular canals

1. There are two parts to the vestibular organ. The first part consists of the ..... which respond to changes in speed and direction of movement of the body.
2. The canals are filled with fluid and fine ..... that are stimulated when the head moves.

3. The receptor cells send nerve impulses along the .....nerve to the .....in the brain.
4. The otolith organs form the second part of the vestibular organ. They contain tiny pieces of chalk called .....that stimulate hair cells and tell the animal which way up it is.
5. The special sense organ for taste are located on the .....
6. The sensory cells concerned with smell are called the .....organ. This is located in the .....
7. In the skin, cells that sense ....., ...and .....are found.

This page titled 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.13: Test Yourself

1. Where are the organs that sense pain, pressure and temperature found?

2. Which sense organ responds to chemicals in the air?

3. Match the words in the list below with the following descriptions.

   optic nerve | choroid | cornea | aqueous humor | retina | cones | iris | vitreous humour | sclera | lens

   a) Focuses light rays on the retina.
   b) Respond to colour and detail.
   c) Outer coat of the eyeball.
   d) Carries nerve impulses from the retina to the brain.
   e) The chamber behind the lens is filled with this.
   f) This layer of the eyeball reflects light in nocturnal animals like the cat.
   g) This is the transparent window at the front of the eye.
   h) This constricts in bright light to reduce the amount of light entering the eye.
   i) The light rays are focused on here by the lens and cornea.
   j) The chamber in front of the lens is filled with this.

4. Add the following labels to the diagram of the ear below.

   pinna | Eustachian tube | cochlea | tympanic membrane | external ear canal | ear ossicles | semicircular canals

Unlabeled diagram of the dog's ear.jpg

5. What is the role of the Eustachian tube?

6. What do the ear ossicles do?

7. What is the role of the semicircular canals?

This page titled 15.13: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

15.14: Websites

- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Sense Wikipedia. The old faithful. You can explore here to your hearts desire. Try ‘eye’, ‘ear’, ‘taste’ etc. but also ‘equilibrioception’, and ‘echolocation’.
- http://www.bbc.co.uk/science/humanbody/body/factfiles/smell/smell_ani_f5.swfBBC Science and Nature. BBC animation of (human) olfactory organ and smelling.
- http://www.bbc.co.uk/science/humanbody/body/factfiles/taste/taste_ani_f5.swfBBC Science. BBC animation of (human) taste buds and tasting.
- http://web.archive.org/web/20071121213719/http://www.bishopstopford.com/faculties/science/arthur/Eye%20Drag%20%26%20Drop.swf Eye Diagram. A diagram of the eye to label and test your knowledge.
- http://www.bbc.co.uk/science/humanbody/body/factfiles/hearing/hearing_animation.shtml BBC on Hearing. BBC animation of hearing. Well worth looking at.
- http://www.wisc-online.com/objects/index_tj.asp?objid=AP1502 Ear Animation. Another great animation of the ear and hearing.
- http://www.bbc.co.uk/science/humanbody/body/factfiles/balance/balance_ani_f5.swf BBC Balance Animation. An animation of the action of the otolith organ (called macula in this animation)

This page titled 15.14: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

16: Endocrine System

Learning Objectives

After completing this section, you should know:

- The characteristics of endocrine glands and hormones
- The position of the main endocrine glands in the body
- The relationship between the pituitary gland and the hypothalamus
- The main hormones produced by the two parts of the pituitary gland and their effects on the body
- The main hormones produced by the pineal, thyroid, parathyroid and adrenal glands, the pancreas, ovary and testicle in regard to their effects on the body
- What is meant by homeostasis and feedback control
- The homeostatic mechanisms that allow an animal to control its body temperature, water balance, blood volume and acid/base balance

In order to survive, animals must constantly adapt to changes in the environment. The **nervous** and **endocrine systems** both work together to bring about this adaptation. In general the nervous system responds rapidly to short-term changes by sending electrical impulses along nerves and the endocrine system brings about longer-term adaptations by sending out chemical messengers called hormones into the blood stream.

16.1: The Endocrine System
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.4: The Pineal Gland
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.8: The Pancreas
16.9: The Ovaries
16.10: The Testes
16.11: Summary
16.12: Homeostasis and Feedback Control
16.13: Summary of Homeostatic Mechanisms
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
16.16: Test Yourself
16.17: Websites

This page titled 16: Endocrine System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.1: The Endocrine System

In order to survive, animals must constantly adapt to changes in the environment. The **nervous** and **endocrine systems** both work together to bring about this adaptation. In general the nervous system responds rapidly to short-term changes by sending electrical impulses along nerves and the endocrine system brings about longer-term adaptations by sending out chemical messengers called hormones into the blood stream.

For example, think about what happens when a male and female cat meet under your bedroom window at night. The initial response of both cats may include spitting, fighting and spine tingling yowling - all brought about by the nervous system. Fear and stress then activates the adrenal glands to secrete the hormone **adrenaline** which increases the heart and respiratory rates. If mating occurs, other hormones stimulate the release of ova from the ovary of the female and a range of different hormones maintains pregnancy, delivery of the kittens and lactation.

This page titled 16.1: The Endocrine System is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones

Hormones are chemicals that are secreted by **endocrine glands**. Unlike exocrine glands (see chapter 5), endocrine glands have no ducts, but release their secretions directly into the blood system, which carries them throughout the body. However, hormones only affect the specific **target organs** that recognize them. For example, although it is carried to virtually every cell in the body, **follicle stimulating hormone** (FSH), released from the **anterior pituitary gland**, only acts on the follicle cells of the ovaries causing them to develop.

A nerve impulse travels rapidly and produces an almost instantaneous response but one that lasts only briefly. In contrast, hormones act more slowly and their effects may be long lasting. Target cells respond to minute quantities of hormones and the concentration in the blood is always extremely low. However, target cells are sensitive to subtle changes in hormone concentration and the endocrine system regulates processes by changing the rate of hormone secretion.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Main endocrine organs of the body.jpg

Diagram 16.1: The main endocrine organs of the body

The main endocrine glands in the body are the **pituitary, pineal, thyroid, parathyroid**, and **adrenal glands**, the **pancreas, ovaries** and **testes**. Their positions in the body are shown in diagram 16.1.

This page titled 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

The **pituitary gland** is a pea-sized structure that is attached by a stalk to the underside of the cerebrum of the brain (see diagram 16.2). It is often called the “master” endocrine gland because it controls many of the other endocrine glands in the body. However, we now know that the pituitary gland is itself controlled by the **hypothalamus**. This small but vital region of the brain lies just above the pituitary and provides the link between the nervous and endocrine systems. It controls the **autonomic nervous system**, produces a range of hormones and regulates the secretion of many others from the pituitary gland (see Chapter 7 for more information on the hypothalamus).

The pituitary gland is divided into two parts with different functions - the **anterior** and **posterior pituitary** (see diagram 16.3).

Anatomy and physiology of animals Position of the pituitary gland and hypothalamus.jpg

Diagram 16.2 - The position of the pituitary gland and hypothalamus

Anterior and posterior pituitary.jpg

Diagram 16.3 - The anterior and posterior pituitary

The **anterior pituitary gland** secretes hormones that regulate a wide range of activities in the body. These include:

1. Growth hormone that stimulates body growth.
2. Prolactin that initiates milk production.
3. Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) that stimulates the development of the follicles of the ovaries. These then secrete oestrogen (see chapter 6).
4. melanocyte stimulating hormone (MSH) that causes darkening of skin by producing melanin
5. lutenizing hormone (LH) that stimulates ovulation and production of progesterone and testosterone

The posterior pituitary gland

1. Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH) or Vasopressin, regulates water loss and increases blood pressure
2. Oxytocin, milk "let down"

This page titled 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.4: The Pineal Gland

The **pineal gland** is found deep within the brain (see diagram 16.4). It is sometimes known as the ‘third eye” as it responds to light and day length. It produces the hormone **melatonin**, which influences the development of sexual maturity and the seasonality of breeding and hibernation. **Bright light inhibits melatonin secretion** Low level of melatonin in bright light makes one feel good and this increases fertility. High level of melatonin in dim light makes an animal tired and depressed and therefore causes low fertility in animals.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Pineal gland.jpg

Diagram 16.4 - The pineal gland

This page titled 16.4: The Pineal Gland is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.5: The Thyroid Gland

The **thyroid gland** is situated in the neck, just in front of the windpipe or trachea (see diagram 16.5). It produces the hormone **thyroxine**, which influences the rate of growth and development of young animals. In mature animals it increases the rate of chemical reactions in the body.

Thyroxine consists of 60% **iodine** and too little in the diet can cause **goitre**, an enlargement of the thyroid gland. Many inland soils in New Zealand contain almost no iodine so goitre can be common in stock when iodine supplements are not given. To add to the problem, chemicals called **goitrogens** that occur naturally in plants like kale that belong to the **cabbage family**, can also cause goitre even when there is adequate iodine available.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Thyroid & parathyroid glands.jpg

Diagram 16.5 - The thyroid and parathyroid glands

This page titled 16.5: The Thyroid Gland is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.6: The Parathyroid Gland

The **parathyroid glands** are also found in the neck just behind the thyroid glands (see diagram 16.5). They produce the hormone **parathormone** that regulates the amount of **calcium** in the blood and influences the excretion of **phosphates** in the urine.

This page titled 16.6: The Parathyroid Gland is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.7: The Adrenal Gland

The **adrenal glands** are situated on the cranial surface of the kidneys (see diagram 16.6). There are two parts to this endocrine gland, an outer **cortex** and an inner **medulla**.

Anatomy and physiology of animals Adrenal glands.jpg

Diagram 16.6 - The adrenal glands

The **adrenal cortex** produces several hormones. These include:

1. **Aldosterone** that regulates the concentration of **sodium and potassium** in the blood by controlling the amounts that are secreted or reabsorbed in the kidney tubules.
2. **Cortisone** and **hydrocortisone** (cortisol) that have complex effects on glucose, protein and fat metabolism. In general they increase metabolism. They are also often administered to animals to counteract allergies and for treating arthritic and rheumatic conditions. However, prolonged use should be avoided if possible as they can increase weight and reduce the ability to heal.
3. **Male and female sex hormones** similar to those secreted by the ovaries and testes.

The hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex also play a part in "**general adaptation syndrome**" which occurs in situations of prolonged stress.

The **adrenal medulla** secretes **adrenalin** (also called **epinephrine**). Adrenalin is responsible for the so-called flight fight, fright response that prepares the animal for emergencies. Faced with a perilous situation the animal needs to either fight or make a rapid escape. To do either requires instant energy, particularly in the skeletal muscles. Adrenaline increases the amount of blood reaching them by causing their blood vessels to dilate and the heart to beat faster. An increased rate of breathing increases the amount of oxygen in the blood and glucose is released from the liver to provide the fuel for energy production. Sweating increases to keep the muscles cool and the pupils of the eye dilate so the animal has a wide field of view. Functions like digestion and urine production that are not critical to immediate survival slow down as blood vessels to these parts constrict.

Note that the effects of adrenalin are similar to those of the sympathetic nervous system.

This page titled 16.7: The Adrenal Gland is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.8: The Pancreas

In most animals the **pancreas** is an oblong, pinkish organ that lies in the first bend of the small intestine (see diagram 16.7). In rodents and rabbits, however, it is spread thinly through the mesentery and is sometimes difficult to see.

Anatomy and physiology of animals The pancreas.jpg

Diagram 16.7 - The pancreas

Most of the pancreas acts as an **exocrine gland** producing digestive enzymes that are secreted into the small intestine. The endocrine part of the organ consists of small clusters of cells (called **Islets of Langerhans**) that secrete the hormone **insulin**. This hormone regulates the amount of **glucose** in the blood by increasing the rate at which glucose is converted to glycogen in the liver and the movement of glucose from the blood into cells.

In **diabetes mellitus** the pancreas produces insufficient insulin and glucose levels in the blood can increase to a dangerous level. A major symptom of this condition is glucose in the urine.

This page titled 16.8: The Pancreas is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.9: The Ovaries

The ovaries, located in the lower abdomen, produce two important sex hormones.

1. The **follicle cells**, under the influence of **FSH** (see the pituitary gland above), produce **oestrogen**, which stimulates the development of female sexual characteristics - the mammary glands, generally smaller build of female animals etc. It also stimulates the thickening of the lining of the uterus in preparation for pregnancy (see chapter 13).
2. **Progesterone** is produced by the **corpus luteum**, the endocrine gland that develops in the empty follicle following ovulation (see chapter 13). It promotes the further preparation of the uterine lining for pregnancy and prevents the uterus contracting until the baby is born.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 16.9: The Ovaries is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.10: The Testes

Cells around the sperm producing ducts of the testis produce the hormone **testosterone**. This stimulates the development of the male reproductive system and the male sexual characteristics - generally larger body of male animals, mane in lions, tusks in boars, etc

This page titled 16.10: The Testes is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.11: Summary

- **Hormones** are chemicals that are released into the blood by **endocrine glands**i.e. Glands with no ducts. Hormones act on specific **target organs** that recognize them.
- The main endocrine glands in the body are the **hypothalamus, pituitary, pineal, thyroid, parathyroid** and **adrenal glands,** the **pancreas, ovaries** and **testes**.
- The **hypothalamus** is situated under the **cerebrum** of the brain. It produces or controls many of the hormones released by the pituitary gland lying adjacent to it.
- The **pituitary gland** is divided into two parts: the **anterior pituitary** and the **posterior pituitary**.
- The **anterior pituitary** produces:
  - **Growth hormone** that stimulates body growth
  - **Prolactin** that initiates milk production
  - **Follicle stimulating hormone** (**FSH**) that stimulates the development of **ova**
  - **Luteinising hormone (LH**) that stimulates the development of the **corpus luteum**
  - Plus several other hormones
- The **posterior pituitary** releases:
  - **Antidiuretic hormone** (ADH) that regulates **water loss** and raises **blood pressure**
  - **Oxytocin** that stimulates milk “let down”.
- The **pineal gland** in the brain produces **melatonin** that influences **sexual development** and **breeding cycles**.
- The **thyroid gland** located in the neck, produces thyroxine, which influences the **rate of growth** and **development** of young animals. Thyroxine consists of 60% **iodine**. Lack of iodine leads to **goitre**.
- The **parathyroid glands** situated adjacent to the thyroid glands in the neck produce **parathormone** that regulates blood **calcium** levels and the excretion of **phosphates**.
- The **adrenal gland** located adjacent to the kidneys is divided into the outer **cortex** and the inner **medulla**.
- The **adrenal cortex** produces:
  - **Aldosterone** that regulates the blood concentration of **sodium and potassium**
  - **Cortisone** and **hydrocortisone** that affect **glucose, protein** and **fat**metabolism
  - Male and female **sex hormones**
- The **adrenal medulla** produces **adrenalin** responsible for the **flight, fright, fight**response that prepares animals for emergencies.
- The **pancreas** that lies in the first bend of the small intestine produces **insulin**that regulates blood **glucose** levels.
- The **ovaries** are located in the lower abdomen produce 2 important sex hormones:
  - The **follicle cells** of the developing ova produce **oestrogen**, which controls the development of the **mammary glands** and prepares the uterus for pregnancy.
  - The **corpus luteum** that develops in the empty **follicle** after ovulation produces **progesterone**. This hormone further prepares the **uterus** for pregnancy and maintains the pregnancy.
- The **testes** produce **testosterone** that stimulates the development of the **male reproductive system** and **sexual characteristics**.

This page titled 16.11: Summary is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.12: Homeostasis and Feedback Control

Animals can only survive if the environment within their bodies and their cells is kept constant and independent of the changing conditions in the external environment. As mentioned in module 1.6, the process by which this stability is maintained is called homeostasis. The body achieves this stability by constantly monitoring the internal conditions and if they deviate from the norm initiating processes that bring them back to it. This mechanism is called feedback control. For example, to maintain a constant body temperature the hypothalamus monitors the blood temperature and initiates processes that increase or decrease heat production by the body and loss from the skin so the optimum temperature is always maintained. The processes involved in the control of body temperature, water balance, blood loss and acid/base balance are summarized below.

This page titled 16.12: Homeostasis and Feedback Control is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.13: Summary of Homeostatic Mechanisms

1. Temperature control

The biochemical and physiological processes in the cell are sensitive to temperature. The optimum body temperature is about 37 C [99 F] for mammals, and about 40 C [104 F] for birds. Biochemical processes in the cells, particularly in muscles and the liver, produce heat. The heat is distributed through the body by the blood and is lost mainly through the skin surface. The production of this heat and its loss through the skin is controlled by the hypothalamus in the brain which acts rather like a thermostat on an electric heater. .

(a) When the body temperature rises above the optimum, a decrease in temperature is achieved by:

- Sweating and panting to increase heat loss by evaporation.
- Expansion of the blood vessels near the skin surface so heat is lost to the air.
- Reducing muscle exertion to the minimum.

(b) When the body temperature falls below the optimum, an increase in temperature can be achieved by:

- Moving to a heat source e.g. in the sun, out of the wind.
- Increasing muscular activity
- Shivering
- Making the hair stand on end by contraction of the hair erector muscles or fluffing of the feathers so there is an insulating layer of air around the body
- Constricting the blood vessels near the skin surface so heat loss to the air is decreased

2. Water balance

The concentration of the body fluids remains relatively constant irrespective of the diet or the quantity of water taken into the body by the animal. Water is lost from the body by many routes (see module 1.6) but the kidney is the main organ that influences the quantity that is lost. Again it is the hypothalamus that monitors the concentration of the blood and initiates the release of hormones from the posterior pituitary gland. These act on the kidney tubules to influence the amount of water (and sodium ions) absorbed from the fluid flowing along them.

(a) When the body fluids become too concentrated and the osmotic pressure too high, water retention in the kidney tubules can be achieved by:

- An increased production of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) from the posterior pituitary gland, which causes more water to be reabsorbed from the kidney tubules.
- A decreased blood pressure in the glomerulus of the kidney results in less fluid filtering through into the kidney tubules so less urine is produced.

(b) When the body fluids become too dilute and the osmotic pressure too low, water loss in the urine can be achieved by:

- A decrease in the secretion of ADH, so less water is reabsorbed from the kidney tubules and more diluted urine is produced.
- An increase in the blood pressure in the glomerulus so more fluid filters into the kidney tubule and more urine is produced.
- An increase in sweating or panting that also increases the amount of water lost.

Another hormone, aldosterone, secreted by the cortex of the adrenal gland, also affects water balance indirectly. It does this by increasing the absorption of sodium ions (Na-) from the kidney tubules. This increases water retention since it increases the osmotic pressure of the fluids around the tubules and water therefore flows out of them by osmosis.

3. Maintenance of blood volume after moderate blood loss

Loss of blood or body fluids leads to decreased blood volume and hence decreased blood pressure. The result is that the blood system fails to deliver enough oxygen and nutrients to the cells, which stop functioning properly and may die. Cells of the brain are particularly vulnerable. This condition is known as shock.

If blood loss is not extreme, various mechanisms come into play to compensate and ensure permanent tissue damage does not occur. These mechanisms include:

- Increased thirst and drinking increases blood volume.
- Blood vessels in the skin and kidneys constrict to reduce the total volume of the blood system and hence retain blood pressure.
- Heart rate increases. This also increases blood pressure.
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is released by the posterior pituitary gland. This increases water re-absorption in the collecting ducts of the kidney tubules so concentrated urine is produced and water loss is reduced. This helps maintain blood volume.
- Loss of fluid causes an increase in osmotic pressure of the blood. Proteins, mainly albumin, released into the blood by the liver further increase the osmotic pressure causing fluid from the tissues to be drawn into the blood by osmosis. This increases blood volume.
- Aldosterone, secreted by the adrenal cortex, increases the absorption of sodium ions (Na+) and water from the kidney tubules. This increases urine concentration and helps retain blood volume.

If blood or fluid loss is extreme and the blood volume falls by more than 15-25%, the above mechanisms are unable to compensate and the condition of the animal progressively deteriorates. The animal will die unless a vet administers fluid or blood.

4. Acid/ base balance

Biochemical reactions within the body are very sensitive to even small changes in acidity or alkalinity (i.e. pH) and any departure from the narrow limits disrupts the functioning of the cells. It is therefore important that the blood contains balanced quantities of acids and bases.

The normal pH of blood is in the range 7.35 to 7.45 and there are a number of mechanisms that operate to maintain the pH in this range. Breathing is one of these mechanisms.

Much of the carbon dioxide produced by respiration in cells is carried in the blood as carbonic acid. As the amount of carbon dioxide in the blood increases the blood becomes more acidic and the pH decreases. This is called acidosis and when severe can cause coma and death. On the other hand, alkalosis (blood that is too alkaline) causes over stimulation of the nervous system and when severe can lead to convulsions and death.

(a) When vigorous activity generating large quantities of carbon dioxide causes the blood to becomes too acidic it can be counteracted in two ways:

- By the rapid removal of carbon dioxide from the blood by deep, panting breaths

By the secretion of hydrogen ions (H+) into the urine by the kidney tubules.

(b) When over breathing or hyperventilation results in low levels of carbon dioxide in the blood and the blood is too alkaline, various mechanisms come into play to bring the pH back to within the normal range. These include:

- A slower rate of breathing
- A reduction in the amount of hydrogen ions (H+) secreted into the urine.

SUMMARY

Homeostasis is the maintenance of constant conditions within a cell or animal's body despite changes in the external environment.

The body temperature of mammals and birds is maintained at an optimum level by a variety of heat regulation mechanisms. These include:

- Seeking out warm areas,

- Adjusting activity levels,

blood vessels on the body surface,

- Contraction of the erector muscles so hairs and feathers stand up to form an insulating layer,
- Shivering,
- Sweating and panting in dogs.

Animals maintain water balance by:

- adjusting level of antidiuretic hormone(ADH)
- adjusting level of aldosterone,
- adjusting blood flow to the kidneys
- adjusting the amount of water lost through sweating or panting.

Animals maintain blood volume after moderate blood loss by:

- Drinking,
- Constriction of blood vessels in the skin and kidneys,
- increasing heart rate,
- secretion of antidiuretic hormone
- secretion of aldosterone
- drawing fluid from the tissues into the blood by increasing the osmotic pressure of the blood.

Animals maintain the acid/base balance or pH of the blood by:

- Adjusting the rate of breathing and hence the amount of CO2 removed from the blood.
- Adjusting the secretion of hydrogen ionsinto the urine.

This page titled 16.13: Summary of Homeostatic Mechanisms is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)

1. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words in the list.

target; blood system; ducts; hormones

a. Endocrine glands release their secretions directly into the blood. In other words they have no .....

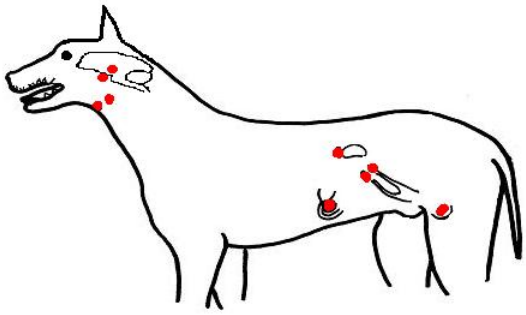
b. Endocrine glands secrete chemicals called .....

c. Hormones are transported from the endocrine glands to all parts of the body by the .....

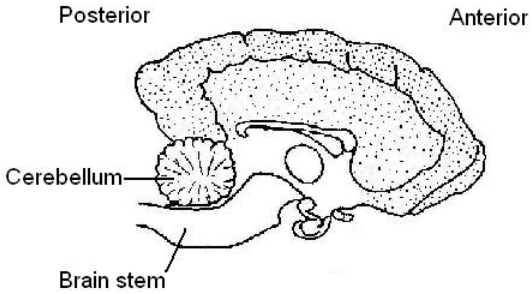
d. Although hormones are carried throughout the body they only affect specific ..... organs and tissues

2. The position of endocrine organs have been indicated in red on the diagram of a composite male and female dog shown below. Add the labels in the list to the diagram.

Ovary; Pancreas; Thyroid gland; Pituitary gland; Testis; Adrenal gland; Pineal gland; Parathyroid gland



3. On the diagram of the brain below indicate the position of the **Hypothalamus** and**Pituitary gland.**



4. In the table below list 3 hormones produced by the **pituitary gland** and state the function of each.

Hormone	Function
1.....	.....
2.....	.....
3.....	.....

5. Fill in the following table with the endocrine organ the hormones are produced by.

Hormone	Produced by:
Insulin	.....
Progesterone	.....
Oestrogen	.....
Growth hormone	.....
Adrenaline	.....
Antidiuretic hormone	.....
Testosterone	.....
Aldosterone	.....
Melatonin	.....
Oxytocin	.....
Thyroxine	.....

6. Match the hormones in the list below with their functions.

Oxytocin; Insulin; Oestrogen; Growth hormone; Antidiuretic hormone; Testosterone; Adrenaline; Cortisone; Melatonin; Progesterone; Thyroxine; Luteinising hormone; Follicle stimulating hormone

Hormone	Function
.....	1. Stimulates development of the ovarian follicle.
.....	2. Stimulates milk “let down”.
.....	3. Controls blood glucose levels.
.....	4. Influences the rate of growth and development of young animals.
.....	5. Stimulates the growth of long bones.
.....	6. Stimulates absorption of water from the kidney tubule.
.....	7. Influences the development of sexual maturity.
.....	8. Stimulates the development of the corpus luteum.
.....	9. Stimulates the development of female sexual characteristics.
.....	10. Stimulates the development of the male sexual characteristics.
.....	11. Affect glucose, protein and fat metabolism.
.....	12. Prepares the lining of the uterus for pregnancy.
.....	13. Prepares the body for emergency situations.

7. Circle the odd one out.

1. melatonin; oxytocin; growth hormone; antidiuretic hormone; follicle stimulating hormone.
2. progesterone; oestrogen; luteinising hormone; cortisone; follicle stimulating.

3. adrenaline; cortisone; aldosterone, oestrogen, insulin.

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet) is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

1. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below using the words in the list.

target; blood system; ducts; hormones

a. Endocrine glands release their secretions directly into the blood. In other words they have no *ducts*.

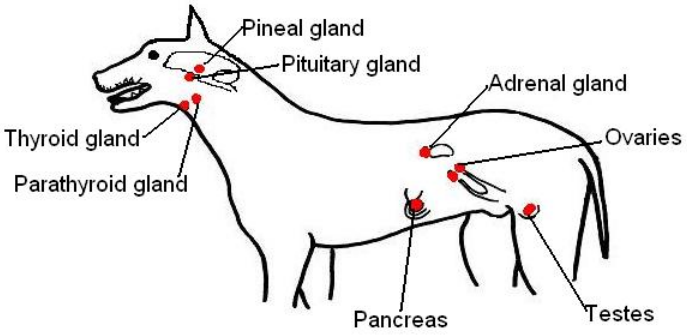
b. Endocrine glands secrete chemicals called *hormones*.

c. Hormones are transported from the endocrine glands to all parts of the body by the *blood system.*

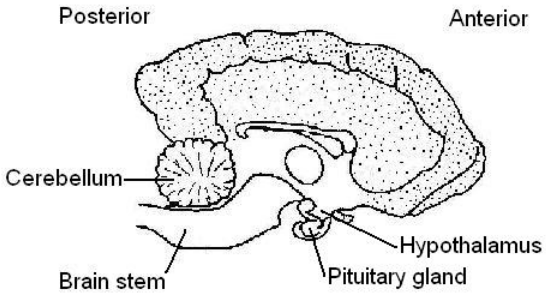
d. Although hormones are carried throughout the body they only affect specific *target* organs and tissues

2. The position of endocrine organs have been indicated in red on the diagram of a composite male and female dog shown below. Add the labels in the list to the diagram.

Ovary; Pancreas; Thyroid gland; Pituitary gland; Testis; Adrenal gland; Pineal gland; Parathyroid gland



3. On the diagram of the brain below indicate the position of the **Hypothalamus** and**Pituitary gland.**



4. In the table below list 3 hormones produced by the **pituitary gland** and state the function of each.

Hormone	Function
1.*Growth hormone.*	*Stimulates growth of the body by increase in length of the long bones*
2.*Oxytocin*	*Stimulates milk "let down"*
3.Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH)	*Stimulates the development of the ovarian follicle.*
Plus: Luteinising hormone(LH)	*Stimulates development of the corpus luteum of the ovary*
Plus: Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	*Stimulates the production of concentrated urine*
Plus some others	

5. Fill in the following table with the endocrine organ the hormones are produced by.

Hormone	Produced by:
Insulin	*Pancreas*
Progesterone	*Corpus luteum*
Oestrogen	*Ovarian follicle*
Growth hormone	*(Anterior) pituitary gland*
Adrenaline	*Adrenal medulla*
Antidiuretic hormone	*(Posterior) pituitary gland*
Testosterone	*Testis*
Aldosterone	*Adrenal cortex*
Melatonin	*Pineal gland*
Oxytocin	*(Posterior) pituitary gland*
Thyroxine	*Thyroid gland*

6. Match the hormones in the list below with their functions.

Oxytocin; Insulin; Oestrogen; Growth hormone; Antidiuretic hormone; Testosterone; Adrenaline; Cortisone; Melatonin; Progesterone; Thyroxine; Luteinising hormone; Follicle stimulating hormone

Hormone	Function
Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH)	1. Stimulates development of the ovarian follicle.
Oxytocin	2. Stimulates milk “let down”.
Insulin	3. Controls blood glucose levels.
Thyroxine	4. Influences the rate of growth and development of young animals.
Growth hormone	5. Stimulates the growth of long bones.
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	6. Stimulates absorption of water from the kidney tubule.
Melatonin	7. Influences the development of sexual maturity.
Luteinising hormone (LH)	8. Stimulates the development of the corpus luteum.
Oestrogen	9. Stimulates the development of female sexual characteristics.
Testosterone	10. Stimulates the development of the male sexual characteristics.
Cortisone	11. Affect glucose, protein and fat metabolism.
Progesterone	12. Prepares the lining of the uterus for pregnancy.
Adrenaline	13. Prepares the body for emergency situations.

7. Circle the odd one out.

1. *melatonin*; oxytocin; growth hormone; antidiuretic hormone; follicle stimulating hormone. *Melatonin is the only hormone in the list not produced by the pituitary gland.*
2. progesterone; oestrogen; luteinising hormone; *cortisone*; follicle stimulating. *Cortisone is the only hormone in the list not involved in any major way with reproduction*.
3. adrenaline; cortisone; aldosterone, oestrogen, *insulin*. *Insulin is the only hormone in the list not produced by the adrenal gland.*

Contributors and Attributions

Ruth Lawson (Otago Polytechnic; Dunedin, New Zealand)

This page titled 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.16: Test Yourself

1. What is Homeostasis?

2. Give 2 examples of homeostasis

3. List 3 ways in which animals keep their body temperature constant when the weather is hot

4. How does the kidney compensate when an animal is deprived of water to drink

5. After moderate blood loss, several mechanisms come into play to increase blood pressure and make up blood volume. 3 of these mechanisms are:

6. Describe how panting helps to reduce the acidity of the blood

This page titled 16.16: Test Yourself is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

16.17: Websites

- http://www.zerobio.com/drag_oa/endo.htm A drag and drop hormone and endocrine organ matching exercise.
- http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Endocrine_system Wikipedia. Much, much more than you ever need to know about hormones and the endocrine system but with a bit of discipline you can glean lots of useful information from this site.

This page titled 16.17: Websites is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Ruth Lawson via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Index

A

abdomen
- 4.2: Vertebrate Bodies

Abdominal Cavity
- 4.3: Body Cavities

Abomasum
- 11.11: The Rumen

absorption
- 11.5: The Gut

Accessory Glands
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

acetylcholine
- 14.3: The Neuron

Acid/Base Balance
- 9.7: Summary

Acid/base balance (pH)
- 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds

active
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane

active transport
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane
- 3.7: Summary
- 3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
- 3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers

adipose tissue
- 5.5: The Dermis
- 5.7: Summary

adrenal cortex
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

Adrenal Gland
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

adrenal glands
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

adrenal medulla
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

Adrenalin
- 16.11: Summary
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

adrenaline
- 16.1: The Endocrine System
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland

Air of Alveoli
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

albumin
- 3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2
- 3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers
- 11.19: The Liver
- 12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
- 13.9: Reproduction In Birds

aldosterone
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

alimentary canal
- 11.5: The Gut

Alimentary System
- 4.6: Body Systems

alveoli
- 9.1: Overview
- 9.7: Summary
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

amino acids
- 1.8: Proteins
- 11.4: Treatment of Food
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

Amylases
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.16: Pancreatic juice

Animal Kingdom
- 2.3: Classification of Living Organisms

Antagonistic Muscles
- 7.2: Muscles

Antagonistic Pairs
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle

Anterior and Posterior Chambers
- 15.8: Sight

Anterior Pituitary
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
- 16.11: Summary

Anterior Pituitary Gland
- 13.10: Summary
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

antibodies
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System

antidiuretic hormone
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
- 16.11: Summary
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
- 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons

Antidiuretic Hormone or ADH
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

Antlers
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

anus
- 11.5: The Gut
- 11.20: Summary

appendix
- 11.12: Large Intestine

Aqueous and Vitreous Humours
- 15.8: Sight

Aqueous Humour
- 15.11: Summary
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

artery
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Articulate
- 6.2: The Skull

Articulates
- 6.17: Summary

assimilation
- 11.5: The Gut

atlas
- 6.1: The vertebral column

atoms
- 1.2: Compounds and Molecules

Auditory (Acoustic) Nerves
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

Auditory Nerve
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Auditory Ossicles
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

autonomic
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

Autonomic Nervous
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

autonomic nervous system
- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

axis
- 6.1: The vertebral column

axon
- 14.3: The Neuron
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers

axon terminal
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet

B

Ball and Socket Joints
- 6.14: Joints

Barbs
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

Barbules
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

Beak
- 11.14: The Gut Of Birds

belly
- 7.2: Muscles

bile
- 11.5: The Gut
- 11.10: Small Intestine
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.19: The Liver
- 11.20: Summary

Bile Duct
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Binomial Name
- 2.2: Naming Animals

bladder
- 12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

blastocyst
- 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

Blind Spot
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Blood Capillaries
- 5.9: Skin (Worksheet)

Blood Capillary
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
blood plasma
11.19: The Liver
blood pressure
16.11: Summary
blood sugar
11.19: The Liver
Blood System
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
body cavities
4.3: Body Cavities
4.9: Summary
bone marrow
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
Bowman's
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
Bowman's Capsule
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Bowmans
12.13: Summary
brain
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
brain stem
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Branch of Renal Artery
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Breeding Cycles
16.11: Summary
Breeds
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
bronchi
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
bronchioles
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

C

Cabbage Family
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
Caecum
11.12: Large Intestine
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
calcium
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
Canines
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
capillaries
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
capillary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Capillary Blood
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Capsule
6.14: Joints
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
carbohydrates
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.9: Summary
11.4: Treatment of Food
carbon
1.4: Ionizations
carbon dioxide
9.1: Overview
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Carbon Dioxide.
9.7: Summary
carbonic acid
9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide
cardiac
4.9: Summary
cardiac muscle
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Carnassial
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
Carnassial Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Carnivores
11.20: Summary
Carnivorous Animals
11.2: Carnivores
Carotid Artery
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Carpals
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
cartilage
6.14: Joints
Casts
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
cataract
15.8: Sight
Caudal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Caudal Vena Cava
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
Cecum
11.5: The Gut
cell body
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Cell Inclusions
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
Cells of Tissue
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
cellular respiration
3.3: The Cytoplasm
9.1: Overview
9.6: Breathing
cellulose
1.6: Carbohydrates
11.1: Herbivores
11.20: Summary
central canal
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
central nervous system
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
central nervous system (CNS)
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Centrioles
3.3: The Cytoplasm
cerebellum
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
15.10: Balance
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
cerebral cortex
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
Cerebral Hemispheres
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
cerebrospinal fluid
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
cerebrum
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
16.11: Summary
cervical vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
cervix
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Chemical Equations
1.3: Chemical Reactions
Chorionic Gonadotrophin
13.6: Pregnancy
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
choroid
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
chromosomes
3.4: The Nucleus
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
chyme
11.9: Stomach
11.20: Summary
cilia
3.3: The Cytoplasm
9.4: The Air Passages
Classes
2.6: Summary

Classification System
2.3: Classification of Living Organisms
clavicle
6.6: The Girdles
Coccygeal Vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
cochlea
15.9: Hearing
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Cochlear
15.9: Hearing
Cold Blooded
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
collagen
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
5.5: The Dermis
Collecting Duct
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Collecting Ducts
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Collecting Tube
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
colon
11.12: Large Intestine
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
colostrum
13.8: Milk Production
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
compact bone
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.17: Summary
concentration
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Conditioned Reflex
14.4: Reflexes
Condyles
6.2: The Skull
Cone Cells
15.8: Sight
Cones
15.11: Summary
conjunctiva
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
connective
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
4.9: Summary
connective tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Connective Tissues
4.9: Summary
Continuous Breeders
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Copulation
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
cornea
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
corpus luteum
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
cortex
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
Cortisone
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Cowper's Glands
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Cranial
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
cranial nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
cranium
6.2: The Skull
6.17: Summary
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
Crop
11.14: The Gut Of Birds
Cross Section
4.8: Directional Terms
Cryptorchid
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
cytoplasm
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
cytosol
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary

D

Deferens
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Denatured
1.8: Proteins
dendrite
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
dendrites
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Dental Formula
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Dentine
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
dermis
4.6: Body Systems
5.7: Summary
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
diabetes insipidus
12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
diabetes mellitus
12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
16.8: The Pancreas
diaphragm
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Diastema
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
diffusion
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
9.1: Overview
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
digestion
11.5: The Gut
digestive tract
11.5: The Gut
Digitigrade Locomotion
6.16: Locomotion
Digits
6.4: The Forelimb
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
diploid
3.5: Cell Division
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
13.1: Reproductive System
directional terms
4.8: Directional Terms
4.9: Summary
disaccharides
1.6: Carbohydrates
Distal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Distal Convoluted Tubule
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
DNA
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
Dorsal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
dorsal root
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Double Layer of Phospholipid Molecules
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
Ducts
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

E

ear canal
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.11: Summary
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Egestion
- 11.5: The Gut

Egg Duct
- 13.15: Fertilization

Ejaculation
- 13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs

Elastic Fibres
- 5.5: The Dermis

electrolytes
- 1.4: Ionizations
- 1.9: Summary

embryo
- 13.6: Pregnancy

enamel
- 11.7: Teeth
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

endocrine glands
- 4.6: Body Systems
- 5.3: Skin Glands
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.11: Summary

Endocrine Systems
- 16: Endocrine System
- 16.1: The Endocrine System

endometrium
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs

endoplasmic reticulum
- 3.3: The Cytoplasm
- 3.7: Summary

enzymes
- 1.8: Proteins
- 1.9: Summary
- 11.15: Digestion

epidermis
- 4.6: Body Systems
- 5.7: Summary
- 5.9: Skin (Worksheet)

epididymis
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

epiglottis
- 9.4: The Air Passages
- 9.7: Summary
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
- 11.6: Mouth

epinephrine
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland

epiphyseal line
- 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
- 6.12: Bone Growth

epiphyseal plate
- 6.12: Bone Growth

Epiphyses
- 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones

epithelial
- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
- 4.9: Summary

epithelial tissue
- 4.15: Tissues Worksheet
- 4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers

Epithelial Tissues
- 4.9: Summary

Equine Chorionic Gonagotrophin (eCG)
- 13.6: Pregnancy

estrogen
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs

Eustachian tube
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.11: Summary

Eustacian Tube
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

evolution
- 13.1: Reproductive System

exocrine glands
- 5.3: Skin Glands
- 5.7: Summary
- 16.8: The Pancreas

exocytosis
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane
- 3.7: Summary

expiration
- 9.6: Breathing
- 9.7: Summary
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

extension
- 7.2: Muscles
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle

external ear
- 15.9: Hearing

extracellular fluid
- 12.2: Water in the Body

Eyeballs
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.11: Summary

Eyelashes
- 15.8: Sight

Eyelids
- 15.8: Sight

F

facilitated diffusion
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane

Fallopian tubes
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

Families
- 2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
- 2.6: Summary

fat
- 16.11: Summary

Fat Cells
- 5.9: Skin (Worksheet)

fats
- 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
- 1.7: Fats
- 1.9: Summary
- 11.4: Treatment of Food

fatty acids
- 1.7: Fats
- 11.4: Treatment of Food

Female Sex Hormones
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland

femur
- 6.5: The Hindlimb
- 6.17: Summary

fertilization
- 13.15: Fertilization

Fetlock
- 6.15: Common Names of Joints

Fibres
- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies

fibrinogen
- 11.19: The Liver

fibula
- 6.5: The Hindlimb
- 6.17: Summary

fight
- 16.11: Summary

flagella
- 3.3: The Cytoplasm

flat bones
- 6.7: Categories of Bones

flexion
- 7.2: Muscles
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle

flight
- 16.11: Summary

floating ribs
- 6.3: The Ribs

Foetal Membranes
- 13.6: Pregnancy
- 13.10: Summary

Foetus
- 13.6: Pregnancy

follicle
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.10: Summary
- 16.11: Summary

Follicle Cells
- 16.9: The Ovaries
- 16.11: Summary

Follicle Stimulating Hormone
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

Follicle Stimulating Hormone (F.S.H.)
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.10: Summary

Follicle Stimulating Hormone (FSH)
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
- 16.11: Summary

Follicles
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

Foramen
- 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones

Foramen Magnum
- 6.2: The Skull

Fore Brain
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

fovea
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Fright
16.11: Summary
FSH
16.9: The Ovaries
Functional Caecum
11.1: Herbivores
11.12: Large Intestine
11.13: Functional Caecum
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

G

Gall Bladder
11.5: The Gut
11.15: Digestion
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
gametes
3.5: Cell Division
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
13.1: Reproductive System
13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals
gas exchange
9.1: Overview
9.7: Summary
Gastric Juice
11.9: Stomach
11.15: Digestion
11.20: Summary
gastrointestinal system
4.6: Body Systems
Genera
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
General Adaptation Syndrome
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
general senses
15.1: The Sense Organs
genus
2.2: Naming Animals
2.6: Summary
Girdle
6.19: Prelude
Gizzard
11.14: The Gut Of Birds
glans penis
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Gliding Movement
6.14: Joints
Globulin
11.19: The Liver
glomerulus
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
glucose
3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2
3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers
9.1: Overview
11.4: Treatment of Food
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
16.8: The Pancreas
16.11: Summary
Glucose Molecules
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
glycerol
11.4: Treatment of Food
glycogen
1.6: Carbohydrates
Goitre
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
Goitrogens
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
Golgi apparatus
3.3: The Cytoplasm
Golgi bodies
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
Golgi Complex
3.3: The Cytoplasm
gonads
13.10: Summary
Grey Matter
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
growth hormone
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Growth Plate
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.17: Summary
gut
4.6: Body Systems
11.5: The Gut
11.20: Summary

H

Haematuria
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
haemoglobin
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
Haemolysed
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
Haemolysis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
hair cells
15.9: Hearing
Hair Erector Muscle
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
hair follicle
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
hair shaft
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
Hairs
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
haploid
3.5: Cell Division
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
13.1: Reproductive System
13.10: Summary
Haversian System
6.10: Compact bone
Haw
15.8: Sight
head
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.9: Summary
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
heat
11.19: The Liver
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Hepatic Portal Vessel
11.19: The Liver
Herbivores
11.20: Summary
Hind Brain
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
hindbrain
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Hinge Joints
6.14: Joints
Hock
6.15: Common Names of Joints
homeostasis
4.7: Homeostasis
4.9: Summary
12.1: Homeostasis
12.13: Summary
Homoiothermic
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
Hoofs
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
hormones
12.1: Homeostasis
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Horns
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
humerus
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
hydrochloric acid
11.9: Stomach
hydrocortisone
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
hypertonic
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals
hypothalamus
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
12.3: Maintaining Water Balance
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
hypotonic
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals

I

Immovable
- 6.14: Joints

implantation
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

Implants
- 13.10: Summary

Impotence
- 13.10: Summary

In Oestrous
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs

In Season
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs

Incisors
- 11.7: Teeth
- 11.20: Summary
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Induced Ovulation
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs

Inferior
- 4.8: Directional Terms

infertility
- 13.10: Summary

ingestion
- 11.5: The Gut

Inherited Characteristics
- 3.14: Cell Division Worksheet

inner ear
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Inorganic Compounds
- 1.4: Ionizations

Inseminate
- 13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs

insertion
- 7.2: Muscles

inspiration
- 9.6: Breathing
- 9.7: Summary

insulin
- 11.19: The Liver
- 12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
- 16.8: The Pancreas
- 16.11: Summary
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

Integrative Function
- 14.2: The Nervous System

integumentary system
- 5: The Skin

intestinal juice
- 11.10: Small Intestine
- 11.17: Intestinal Juice

intracellular fluid
- 3.3: The Cytoplasm
- 12.2: Water in the Body

Invertebrates
- 2.4: The Animal Kingdom
- 2.6: Summary

iodine
- 16.5: The Thyroid Gland

ions
- 1.4: Ionizations
- 1.9: Summary

iris
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.11: Summary
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

iron
- 11.19: The Liver

irregular bones
- 6.7: Categories of Bones

Islets of Langerhans
- 16.8: The Pancreas

isotonic
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane
- 12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals

J

Jacobson's Organ
- 15.6: Smell

joints
- 6.17: Summary

K

Keel
- 6.3: The Ribs
- 6.8: Bird Skeletons

keratin
- 1.8: Proteins
- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
- 5.1: The Skin
- 5.7: Summary

Kidney Tubules
- 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
- 12.13: Summary

kidneys
- 12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
- 12.13: Summary
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

knee
- 6.15: Common Names of Joints

L

lacteal
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Lacteals
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
- 11.18: Absorption

large intestine
- 11.5: The Gut
- 11.12: Large Intestine

larynx
- 9.4: The Air Passages
- 9.7: Summary
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

Lateral
- 4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)

Left
- 4.8: Directional Terms

lens
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

ligaments
- 6.14: Joints
- 7.2: Muscles
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle

Ligaments Link
- 7.2: Muscles

Lipases
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.16: Pancreatic juice

Lipid Soluble
- 3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
- 3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers

lipids
- 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
- 1.7: Fats
- 11.4: Treatment of Food

liver
- 11.5: The Gut
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

long bones
- 6.7: Categories of Bones

Longitudinal
- 4.8: Directional Terms

loop of Henle
- 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
- 12.13: Summary
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
- 12.16: Excretory System Answers

lumbar vertebrae
- 6.1: The vertebral column
- 6.17: Summary

Lumen of the Gut
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Luteinising Hormone
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

Luteinising Hormone (L.H.)
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.10: Summary

Luteinising Hormone (LH)
- 16.11: Summary

Lutenizing Hormone (LH)
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

lymph
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
- 10.3: Summary
- 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet

lymph node
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System

lymph nodes
- 10.3: Summary

Lymph Nodules
- 10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
- 10.3: Summary

Lymph Vessels
- 10.3: Summary

lymphatic capillaries
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
- 10.3: Summary
- 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet

Lymphatic Vessels
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
- 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

lymphocytes
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
lysosomes
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary

M

macrophages
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
male reproductive system
16.11: Summary
Male Sex Hormones
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
Mammallia
2.6: Summary
mammary glands
5.3: Skin Glands
13.10: Summary
16.11: Summary
mandible
6.2: The Skull
6.17: Summary
Marsupials
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
matrix
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
6.10: Compact bone
Medial
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Mediastinum
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
medulla
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
medulla oblongata
9.6: Breathing
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
meiosis
3.5: Cell Division
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers
13.1: Reproductive System
melanin
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
5.4: The Skin and Sun
5.7: Summary
Melanocyte Stimulating Hormone (MSH)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
melatonin
16.4: The Pineal Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
meninges
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
menstrual cycle
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Mesentery
11.16: Pancreatic juice
Metacarpals
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
metastasis
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
Metatarsals
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
microfilaments
3.3: The Cytoplasm
microtubules
3.3: The Cytoplasm
middle ear
15.9: Hearing
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Midpiece
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Milk Teeth
11.7: Teeth
Minute Volume
9.6: Breathing
mitochondria
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
9.1: Overview
mitochondrion
3.3: The Cytoplasm
mitosis
3.5: Cell Division
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers
13.1: Reproductive System
Molars
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
molecule
1.2: Compounds and Molecules
monocytes
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
monosaccharides
1.6: Carbohydrates
11.4: Treatment of Food
morula
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
motor function
14.2: The Nervous System
motor neuron
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
mouth
11.5: The Gut
MRS GREN
4.9: Summary
mucus
5.3: Skin Glands
9.4: The Air Passages
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
muscle
4.9: Summary
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Muscle Fibres
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
muscle tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Muscular Tissues
4.9: Summary
myelin
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
14.3: The Neuron
myelin sheath
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

N

nasal cavity
9.4: The Air Passages
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
natural selection
13.1: Reproductive System
nephrons
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
nerve
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
nerve impulse
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
nerve impulses
14.2: The Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Nerves of the Autonomic Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
nervous
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
nervous system
16: Endocrine System
16.1: The Endocrine System
nervous tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Nervous Tissues
4.9: Summary
Network of nerves to Forelimb
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
neuron
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
neurons
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
14.2: The Nervous System

neurotransmitter
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
neurotransmitters
14.3: The Neuron
Neutral Fats
1.7: Fats
Nictitating Membrane
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
nitrogen
1.8: Proteins
Normal Saline
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
Normal Urine
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
Nose
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Nucleoli
3.4: The Nucleus
nucleus
3.4: The Nucleus
3.7: Summary

O

Oders
2.6: Summary
Oedema
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
Oesophagus
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
11.5: The Gut
11.8: Oesophagus
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Oestrogen
13.8: Milk Production
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Oestrone Sulphate
13.6: Pregnancy
Oestrous Cycle
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
Olfactory
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Olfactory Nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
15.6: Smell
Olfactory Organ
15.6: Smell
15.11: Summary
Omasum
11.11: The Rumen
Omnivorous
11.3: Omnivores
Open Rooted
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Open Rooted Teeth
11.7: Teeth
optic nerve
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Optic Nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
15.11: Summary
Orbits
6.2: The Skull
15.8: Sight
Orders
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
organelles
3.1: The Cell
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
organic compounds
1.4: Ionizations
origin
7.2: Muscles
osmosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals
osmotic pressure
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
Otolith Organs
15.10: Balance
15.11: Summary
Otoliths
15.10: Balance
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
outer ear
15.9: Hearing
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Outer layer of Columnar Epithelium
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
ova
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.11: Summary
ovarian cycle
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
ovaries
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
Ovary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
ovulation
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
oxygen
1.2: Compounds and Molecules
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
9.1: Overview
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Oxyhaemoglobin
9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen
oxytocin
13.8: Milk Production
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

P

pacemaker
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
Pain Receptors in Skin
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Palate
6.2: The Skull
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
pancreas
11.5: The Gut
11.16: Pancreatic juice
11.19: The Liver
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.8: The Pancreas
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
pancreatic juice
11.10: Small Intestine
11.16: Pancreatic juice
11.20: Summary
papilla
13.9: Reproduction In Birds
parasympathetic nervous system
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Parathormone
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
parathyroid
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
parathyroid gland
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
parathyroid glands
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
Parotid
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
patella
6.17: Summary
pelvic girdle
6.1: The vertebral column
6.6: The Girdles

pelvis
6.17: Summary
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.16: Excretory System Answers
penis
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Penis Bone
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
pepsin
11.15: Digestion
pericardial cavity
4.3: Body Cavities
peripheral nervous system
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
peripheral nervous system (PNS)
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
peristalsis
11.8: Oesophagus
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Permanent Teeth
11.7: Teeth
phagocytosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
Phalanges
6.4: The Forelimb
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
pharynx
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Phosphates
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
phospholipids
1.7: Fats
Phyla
2.6: Summary
Pineal
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
pineal gland
16.4: The Pineal Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Pinna
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
pinocytosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
pituitary
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
pituitary gland
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Pivots
6.14: Joints
placenta
13.6: Pregnancy
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Plantigrade Locomotion
6.16: Locomotion
plasma
8.1: Plasma
plasma membrane
3.7: Summary
Pleura
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Pleural Cavities
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.7: Summary
pleural cavity
4.3: Body Cavities
Pleural Membranes
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Poikilothermic
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
polysaccharides
1.6: Carbohydrates
pons
9.6: Breathing
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
Popliteal
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
Pore of Sweat Gland
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
Posterior Pituitary
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
Posterior Pituitary Gland
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
potassium
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
Preen Gland
5.3: Skin Glands
Preening
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Premolars
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Prescapular
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
progesterone
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.6: Pregnancy
13.8: Milk Production
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
prolactin
13.8: Milk Production
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
prostate gland
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
protease
11.16: Pancreatic juice
Proteases
11.15: Digestion
protein
16.11: Summary
Protein Channel
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
Protein Molecules
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
proteins
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.8: Proteins
11.4: Treatment of Food
11.19: The Liver
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
Proximal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Proximal Convoluted Tubule
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Pulp
11.7: Teeth
pupil
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
pyloric sphincter
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
pyramids
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers

R

Races
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
radius
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
Rate of Growth
16.11: Summary
Reabsorbed
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons

rectum
11.5: The Gut
11.12: Large Intestine
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
red blood cells
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
red marrow
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
reflex
14.4: Reflexes
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
reflex action
7.2: Muscles
reflex arc
7.2: Muscles
14.4: Reflexes
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
reflexes
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Refraction
15.8: Sight
Relaxin
13.6: Pregnancy
Relay Neuron
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
renal
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
renal artery
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Renal Pelvis
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
renal system
4.6: Body Systems
renal vein
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
respiration
9.6: Breathing
Respiratory Centres
9.6: Breathing
response
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Reticulum
11.11: The Rumen
retina
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
ribosomes
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
ribs
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Right
4.8: Directional Terms
Rod Cells
15.8: Sight
Rods
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
root
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Rostral
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
rough ER
3.3: The Cytoplasm
rticulates
6.17: Summary
Rumen
11.1: Herbivores
11.11: The Rumen
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Ruminants
11.1: Herbivores
Rumination
11.11: The Rumen

S

Sacral Vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
sacrum
6.1: The vertebral column
Sagittal Section
4.8: Directional Terms
saliva
11.6: Mouth
11.15: Digestion
11.20: Summary
salivary amylase
11.6: Mouth
salivary glands
11.6: Mouth
11.15: Digestion
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
saturated
1.7: Fats
scapula
6.4: The Forelimb
6.6: The Girdles
6.17: Summary
sciatic nerve
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Scientific
2.2: Naming Animals
Scientific Name
2.6: Summary
sclera
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Scrotal Sac
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Scrotal Sacs
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
scrotum
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Seasonal Breeders
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
sebaceous glands
5.3: Skin Glands
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
sebum
5.3: Skin Glands
Secreted
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
Selective Breeding
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
semen
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
semicircular canals
15.10: Balance
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Seminal Vesicles
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Seminiferous
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
seminiferous tubules
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Semipermeable Membrane
3.7: Summary
Sense Receptor
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Sensory Function
14.2: The Nervous System
sensory neuron
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
sesamoid bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
Sex Hormones
16.11: Summary
sexual characteristics
16.11: Summary
Sexual Development
16.11: Summary
Shaft
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
short bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
Signs of Oestrous
13.10: Summary
Sinuses
6.2: The Skull
skeletal
4.9: Summary
skeletal muscle
7.3: Smooth Muscle
skin
5: The Skin
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
skin cancer
5.4: The Skin and Sun

skull
6.17: Summary
Slightly Moveable
6.14: Joints
small intestine
11.5: The Gut
11.18: Absorption
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
smooth
4.9: Summary
smooth ER
3.3: The Cytoplasm
smooth muscle
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Socket
11.7: Teeth
sodium
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
sodium bicarbonate
9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide
Sodium Chloride
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
sodium ions
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
special senses
15.1: The Sense Organs
species
2.2: Naming Animals
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
specific
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
sperm
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Sperm Duct
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Sperm Producing Tubules
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Spermatozoa
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
sphincter
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
sphincters
11.9: Stomach
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
spinal cord
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
spinal nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
spleen
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
Spongy
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
spongy bone
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.17: Summary
starch
1.6: Carbohydrates
sternum
6.3: The Ribs
Stifle
6.15: Common Names of Joints
stimulus
14.4: Reflexes
stix
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
stomach
11.5: The Gut
11.9: Stomach
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Striated
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
Striped
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
Submandibular Prescapular
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
Sulci
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
sulcus
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Superficial Inguinal
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
Superior
4.8: Directional Terms
Sweat Gland
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
sweat glands
5.3: Skin Glands
sympathetic nervous system
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
sympathetic system
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
synapse
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
synapses
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
synovial fluid
6.14: Joints
synovial joint
6.14: Joints

T

Tail
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.9: Summary
6.17: Summary
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Target
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Target Organs
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
Tarsals
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
taste buds
11.6: Mouth
15.7: Taste
15.11: Summary
Tear Glands
15.8: Sight
teat
13.8: Milk Production
temperature
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
tendons
7.2: Muscles
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Tendons Tie
7.2: Muscles
testes
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
Testis
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
testosterone
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
16.10: The Testes
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
thoracic
4.3: Body Cavities
Thoracic Cavity
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
thoracic vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
Thorax
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
9.7: Summary
thymus
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
thyroid
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
thyroid gland
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
thyroxine
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
tibia
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
Tidal Breathing
9.6: Breathing

tidal volume
9.6: Breathing
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Tissue Cells
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
tissue fluid
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
12.2: Water in the Body
tissues
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
tongue
11.6: Mouth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
touch
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Toxic Substances
11.19: The Liver
trachea
9.4: The Air Passages
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Transverse
4.8: Directional Terms
triglycerides
1.7: Fats
True Mammals
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
trunk
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.9: Summary
tympanic membrane
15.9: Hearing

U

uditory
15.11: Summary
ulna
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
umbilical cord
13.6: Pregnancy
13.10: Summary
Ungulate Mammals
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Unguligrade Locomotion
6.16: Locomotion
unsaturated
1.7: Fats
urea
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
Ureter
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.16: Excretory System Answers
ureters
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
urethra
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
uterus
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.11: Summary

V

vagina
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Vagus
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
vagus nerve
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Vane
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
varieties
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
Vas Deferens
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
vein
11.19: The Liver
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Velvet
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Ventral
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Ventral Root
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
ventricles
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
Vertebrates
2.4: The Animal Kingdom
2.6: Summary
6.19: Prelude
vesicles
3.3: The Cytoplasm
Vestibular
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
vestibular nerve
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
15.10: Balance
Vestibular Organ
15.9: Hearing
15.10: Balance
15.11: Summary
Villi
11.10: Small Intestine
11.18: Absorption
11.20: Summary
Visceral Bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
vital capacity
9.6: Breathing
vitamin A
11.19: The Liver
vitamin B
11.11: The Rumen
11.20: Summary
vitamin D
5.4: The Skin and Sun
vitamin E
11.11: The Rumen
vitamin K
11.11: The Rumen
11.20: Summary
Vitreous Humour
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Voluntary Muscle
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
vulva
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

W

Warm Blooded
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
Water Loss
16.11: Summary
Wax Producing Glands
5.3: Skin Glands
Whiskers
15.2: Touch and Pressure
White
15.8: Sight
white blood cells
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
white matter
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

Y

yellow marrow
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones

Z

zona pellucida
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
zygote
13.1: Reproductive System
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
13.10: Summary

Index

A

abdomen
- 4.2: Vertebrate Bodies

Abdominal Cavity
- 4.3: Body Cavities

Abomasum
- 11.11: The Rumen

absorption
- 11.5: The Gut

Accessory Glands
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

acetylcholine
- 14.3: The Neuron

Acid/Base Balance
- 9.7: Summary

Acid/base balance (pH)
- 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds

active
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane

active transport
- 3.2: The Plasma Membrane
- 3.7: Summary
- 3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
- 3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers

adipose tissue
- 5.5: The Dermis
- 5.7: Summary

adrenal cortex
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

Adrenal Gland
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

adrenal glands
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

adrenal medulla
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

Adrenalin
- 16.11: Summary
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

adrenaline
- 16.1: The Endocrine System
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland

Air of Alveoli
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

albumin
- 3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2
- 3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers
- 11.19: The Liver
- 12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
- 13.9: Reproduction In Birds

aldosterone
- 16.7: The Adrenal Gland
- 16.11: Summary

alimentary canal
- 11.5: The Gut

Alimentary System
- 4.6: Body Systems

alveoli
- 9.1: Overview
- 9.7: Summary
- 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

amino acids
- 1.8: Proteins
- 11.4: Treatment of Food
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

Amylases
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.16: Pancreatic juice

Animal Kingdom
- 2.3: Classification of Living Organisms

Antagonistic Muscles
- 7.2: Muscles

Antagonistic Pairs
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle

Anterior and Posterior Chambers
- 15.8: Sight

Anterior Pituitary
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
- 16.11: Summary

Anterior Pituitary Gland
- 13.10: Summary
- 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

antibodies
- 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System

antidiuretic hormone
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
- 16.11: Summary
- 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
- 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
- 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons

Antidiuretic Hormone or ADH
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

Antlers
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

anus
- 11.5: The Gut
- 11.20: Summary

appendix
- 11.12: Large Intestine

Aqueous and Vitreous Humours
- 15.8: Sight

Aqueous Humour
- 15.11: Summary
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

artery
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Articulate
- 6.2: The Skull

Articulates
- 6.17: Summary

assimilation
- 11.5: The Gut

atlas
- 6.1: The vertebral column

atoms
- 1.2: Compounds and Molecules

Auditory (Acoustic) Nerves
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

Auditory Nerve
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Auditory Ossicles
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

autonomic
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

Autonomic Nervous
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System

autonomic nervous system
- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
- 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

axis
- 6.1: The vertebral column

axon
- 14.3: The Neuron
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers

axon terminal
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet

B

Ball and Socket Joints
- 6.14: Joints

Barbs
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

Barbules
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

Beak
- 11.14: The Gut Of Birds

belly
- 7.2: Muscles

bile
- 11.5: The Gut
- 11.10: Small Intestine
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.19: The Liver
- 11.20: Summary

Bile Duct
- 11.15: Digestion
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Binomial Name
- 2.2: Naming Animals

bladder
- 12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

blastocyst
- 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

Blind Spot
- 15.8: Sight
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Blood Capillaries
- 5.9: Skin (Worksheet)

Blood Capillary
- 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
- 10.5: Lymphatic System Answers

blood plasma
- 11.19: The Liver

blood pressure
16.11: Summary
blood sugar
11.19: The Liver
Blood System
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
body cavities
4.3: Body Cavities
4.9: Summary
bone marrow
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
Bowman's
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
Bowman's Capsule
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Bowmans
12.13: Summary
brain
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
brain stem
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Branch of Renal Artery
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Breeding Cycles
16.11: Summary
Breeds
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
bronchi
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
bronchioles
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet

C

Cabbage Family
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
Caecum
11.12: Large Intestine
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
calcium
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
Canines
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
capillaries
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
capillary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Capillary Blood
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Capsule
6.14: Joints
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
carbohydrates
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.9: Summary
11.4: Treatment of Food
carbon
1.4: Ionizations
carbon dioxide
9.1: Overview
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Carbon Dioxide.
9.7: Summary
carbonic acid
9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide
cardiac
4.9: Summary
cardiac muscle
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Carnassial
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
Carnassial Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Carnivores
11.20: Summary
Carnivorous Animals
11.2: Carnivores
Carotid Artery
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Carpals
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
cartilage
6.14: Joints
Casts
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
cataract
15.8: Sight
Caudal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Caudal Vena Cava
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
Cecum
11.5: The Gut
cell body
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Cell Inclusions
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
Cells of Tissue
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
cellular respiration
3.3: The Cytoplasm
9.1: Overview
9.6: Breathing
cellulose
1.6: Carbohydrates
11.1: Herbivores
11.20: Summary
central canal
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
central nervous system
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
central nervous system (CNS)
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Centrioles
3.3: The Cytoplasm
cerebellum
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
15.10: Balance
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
cerebral cortex
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
Cerebral Hemispheres
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
cerebrospinal fluid
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
cerebrum
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
16.11: Summary
cervical vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
cervix
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Chemical Equations
1.3: Chemical Reactions
Chorionic Gonadotrophin
13.6: Pregnancy
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
choroid
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
chromosomes
3.4: The Nucleus
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
chyme
11.9: Stomach
11.20: Summary
cilia
3.3: The Cytoplasm
9.4: The Air Passages
Classes
2.6: Summary
Classification System
2.3: Classification of Living Organisms
clavicle
6.6: The Girdles
Coccygeal Vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary

cochlea
15.9: Hearing
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Cochlear
15.9: Hearing
Cold Blooded
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
collagen
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
5.5: The Dermis
Collecting Duct
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Collecting Ducts
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Collecting Tube
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
colon
11.12: Large Intestine
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
colostrum
13.8: Milk Production
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
compact bone
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.17: Summary
concentration
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Conditioned Reflex
14.4: Reflexes
Condyles
6.2: The Skull
Cone Cells
15.8: Sight
Cones
15.11: Summary
conjunctiva
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
connective
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
4.9: Summary
connective tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Connective Tissues
4.9: Summary
Continuous Breeders
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Copulation
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
cornea
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
corpus luteum
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
cortex
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
Cortisone
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Cowper's Glands
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Cranial
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
cranial nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
cranium
6.2: The Skull
6.17: Summary
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
Crop
11.14: The Gut Of Birds
Cross Section
4.8: Directional Terms
Cryptorchid
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
cytoplasm
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
cytosol
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary

D

Deferens
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Denatured
1.8: Proteins
dendrite
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
dendrites
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Dental Formula
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Dentine
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
dermis
4.6: Body Systems
5.7: Summary
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
diabetes insipidus
12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
diabetes mellitus
12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
16.8: The Pancreas
diaphragm
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Diastema
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
diffusion
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
9.1: Overview
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
digestion
11.5: The Gut
digestive tract
11.5: The Gut
Digitigrade Locomotion
6.16: Locomotion
Digits
6.4: The Forelimb
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
diploid
3.5: Cell Division
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
13.1: Reproductive System
directional terms
4.8: Directional Terms
4.9: Summary
disaccharides
1.6: Carbohydrates
Distal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Distal Convoluted Tubule
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
DNA
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
Dorsal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
dorsal root
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Double Layer of Phospholipid Molecules
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
Ducts
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

E

ear canal
15.9: Hearing
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Egestion
11.5: The Gut
Egg Duct
13.15: Fertilization
Ejaculation
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs

Elastic Fibres
5.5: The Dermis
electrolytes
1.4: Ionizations
1.9: Summary
embryo
13.6: Pregnancy
enamel
11.7: Teeth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
endocrine glands
4.6: Body Systems
5.3: Skin Glands
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
Endocrine Systems
16: Endocrine System
16.1: The Endocrine System
endometrium
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
endoplasmic reticulum
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
enzymes
1.8: Proteins
1.9: Summary
11.15: Digestion
epidermis
4.6: Body Systems
5.7: Summary
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
epididymis
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
epiglottis
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
11.6: Mouth
epinephrine
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
epiphyseal line
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.12: Bone Growth
epiphyseal plate
6.12: Bone Growth
Epiphyses
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
epithelial
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
4.9: Summary
epithelial tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Epithelial Tissues
4.9: Summary
Equine Chorionic Gonagotrophin (eCG)
13.6: Pregnancy
estrogen
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Eustachian tube
15.9: Hearing
15.11: Summary
Eustacian Tube
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
evolution
13.1: Reproductive System
exocrine glands
5.3: Skin Glands
5.7: Summary
16.8: The Pancreas
exocytosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
expiration
9.6: Breathing
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
extension
7.2: Muscles
7.3: Smooth Muscle
external ear
15.9: Hearing
extracellular fluid
12.2: Water in the Body
Eyeballs
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
Eyelashes
15.8: Sight
Eyelids
15.8: Sight

F

facilitated diffusion
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
Fallopian tubes
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Families
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
fat
16.11: Summary
Fat Cells
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
fats
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.7: Fats
1.9: Summary
11.4: Treatment of Food
fatty acids
1.7: Fats
11.4: Treatment of Food
Female Sex Hormones
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
femur
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
fertilization
13.15: Fertilization
Fetlock
6.15: Common Names of Joints
Fibres
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
fibrinogen
11.19: The Liver
fibula
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
fight
16.11: Summary
flagella
3.3: The Cytoplasm
flat bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
flexion
7.2: Muscles
7.3: Smooth Muscle
flight
16.11: Summary
floating ribs
6.3: The Ribs
Foetal Membranes
13.6: Pregnancy
13.10: Summary
Foetus
13.6: Pregnancy
follicle
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.11: Summary
Follicle Cells
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
Follicle Stimulating Hormone
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Follicle Stimulating Hormone (F.S.H.)
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
Follicle Stimulating Hormone (FSH)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
Follicles
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
Foramen
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
Foramen Magnum
6.2: The Skull
Fore Brain
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
fovea
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Fright
16.11: Summary
FSH
16.9: The Ovaries
Functional Caecum
11.1: Herbivores
11.12: Large Intestine
11.13: Functional Caecum
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

G

Gall Bladder
11.5: The Gut
11.15: Digestion
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
gametes
3.5: Cell Division
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
13.1: Reproductive System
13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals

gas exchange
9.1: Overview
9.7: Summary
Gastric Juice
11.9: Stomach
11.15: Digestion
11.20: Summary
gastrointestinal system
4.6: Body Systems
Genera
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
General Adaptation Syndrome
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
general senses
15.1: The Sense Organs
genus
2.2: Naming Animals
2.6: Summary
Girdle
6.19: Prelude
Gizzard
11.14: The Gut Of Birds
glans penis
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Gliding Movement
6.14: Joints
Globulin
11.19: The Liver
glomerulus
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
glucose
3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2
3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers
9.1: Overview
11.4: Treatment of Food
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
16.8: The Pancreas
16.11: Summary
Glucose Molecules
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
glycerol
11.4: Treatment of Food
glycogen
1.6: Carbohydrates
Goitre
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
Goitrogens
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
Golgi apparatus
3.3: The Cytoplasm
Golgi bodies
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
Golgi Complex
3.3: The Cytoplasm
gonads
13.10: Summary
Grey Matter
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
growth hormone
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Growth Plate
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.17: Summary
gut
4.6: Body Systems
11.5: The Gut
11.20: Summary

H

Haematuria
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
haemoglobin
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
Haemolysed
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
Haemolysis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
hair cells
15.9: Hearing
Hair Erector Muscle
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
hair follicle
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
hair shaft
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
Hairs
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
haploid
3.5: Cell Division
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
13.1: Reproductive System
13.10: Summary
Haversian System
6.10: Compact bone
Haw
15.8: Sight
head
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.9: Summary
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
heat
11.19: The Liver
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Hepatic Portal Vessel
11.19: The Liver
Herbivores
11.20: Summary
Hind Brain
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
hindbrain
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Hinge Joints
6.14: Joints
Hock
6.15: Common Names of Joints
homeostasis
4.7: Homeostasis
4.9: Summary
12.1: Homeostasis
12.13: Summary
Homoiothermic
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
Hoofs
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
hormones
12.1: Homeostasis
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Horns
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
humerus
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
hydrochloric acid
11.9: Stomach
hydrocortisone
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
hypertonic
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals
hypothalamus
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
12.3: Maintaining Water Balance
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
hypotonic
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals

I

Immovable
6.14: Joints
implantation
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Implants
13.10: Summary
Impotence
13.10: Summary
In Oestrous
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
In Season
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Incisors
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Induced Ovulation
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Inferior
4.8: Directional Terms
infertility
13.10: Summary
ingestion
11.5: The Gut

Inherited Characteristics
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
inner ear
15.9: Hearing
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Inorganic Compounds
1.4: Ionizations
Inseminate
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
insertion
7.2: Muscles
inspiration
9.6: Breathing
9.7: Summary
insulin
11.19: The Liver
12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney
16.8: The Pancreas
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Integrative Function
14.2: The Nervous System
integumentary system
5: The Skin
intestinal juice
11.10: Small Intestine
11.17: Intestinal Juice
intracellular fluid
3.3: The Cytoplasm
12.2: Water in the Body
Invertebrates
2.4: The Animal Kingdom
2.6: Summary
iodine
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
ions
1.4: Ionizations
1.9: Summary
iris
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
iron
11.19: The Liver
irregular bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
Islets of Langerhans
16.8: The Pancreas
isotonic
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals

J

Jacobson's Organ
15.6: Smell
joints
6.17: Summary

K

Keel
6.3: The Ribs
6.8: Bird Skeletons
keratin
1.8: Proteins
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
5.1: The Skin
5.7: Summary
Kidney Tubules
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
kidneys
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
knee
6.15: Common Names of Joints

L

lacteal
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Lacteals
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
11.18: Absorption
large intestine
11.5: The Gut
11.12: Large Intestine
larynx
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Lateral
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Left
4.8: Directional Terms
lens
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
ligaments
6.14: Joints
7.2: Muscles
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Ligaments Link
7.2: Muscles
Lipases
11.15: Digestion
11.16: Pancreatic juice
Lipid Soluble
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
lipids
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.7: Fats
11.4: Treatment of Food
liver
11.5: The Gut
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
long bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
Longitudinal
4.8: Directional Terms
loop of Henle
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
lumbar vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
Lumen of the Gut
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Luteinising Hormone
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Luteinising Hormone (L.H.)
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
Luteinising Hormone (LH)
16.11: Summary
Lutenizing Hormone (LH)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
lymph
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
lymph node
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
lymph nodes
10.3: Summary
Lymph Nodules
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
Lymph Vessels
10.3: Summary
lymphatic capillaries
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
Lymphatic Vessels
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
lymphocytes
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
lysosomes
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary

M

macrophages
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
male reproductive system
16.11: Summary
Male Sex Hormones
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
Mammallia
2.6: Summary
mammary glands
5.3: Skin Glands
13.10: Summary
16.11: Summary
mandible
6.2: The Skull
6.17: Summary
Marsupials
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
matrix
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
6.10: Compact bone
Medial
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Mediastinum
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities

medulla
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
medulla oblongata
9.6: Breathing
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
meiosis
3.5: Cell Division
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers
13.1: Reproductive System
melanin
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
5.4: The Skin and Sun
5.7: Summary
Melanocyte Stimulating Hormone (MSH)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
melatonin
16.4: The Pineal Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
meninges
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
menstrual cycle
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
Mesentery
11.16: Pancreatic juice
Metacarpals
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
metastasis
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
Metatarsals
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
microfilaments
3.3: The Cytoplasm
microtubules
3.3: The Cytoplasm
middle ear
15.9: Hearing
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Midpiece
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Milk Teeth
11.7: Teeth
Minute Volume
9.6: Breathing
mitochondria
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
9.1: Overview
mitochondrion
3.3: The Cytoplasm
mitosis
3.5: Cell Division
3.7: Summary
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers
13.1: Reproductive System
Molars
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
molecule
1.2: Compounds and Molecules
monocytes
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
monosaccharides
1.6: Carbohydrates
11.4: Treatment of Food
morula
13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
motor function
14.2: The Nervous System
motor neuron
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
mouth
11.5: The Gut
MRS GREN
4.9: Summary
mucus
5.3: Skin Glands
9.4: The Air Passages
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
muscle
4.9: Summary
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Muscle Fibres
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
muscle tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Muscular Tissues
4.9: Summary
myelin
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
14.3: The Neuron
myelin sheath
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

N

nasal cavity
9.4: The Air Passages
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
natural selection
13.1: Reproductive System
nephrons
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
nerve
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
nerve impulse
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
nerve impulses
14.2: The Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Nerves of the Autonomic Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
nervous
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
nervous system
16: Endocrine System
16.1: The Endocrine System
nervous tissue
4.15: Tissues Worksheet
4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers
Nervous Tissues
4.9: Summary
Network of nerves to Forelimb
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
neuron
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
neurons
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
14.2: The Nervous System
neurotransmitter
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
neurotransmitters
14.3: The Neuron
Neutral Fats
1.7: Fats
Nictitating Membrane
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
nitrogen
1.8: Proteins
Normal Saline
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
Normal Urine
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
Nose
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Nucleoli
3.4: The Nucleus
nucleus
3.4: The Nucleus
3.7: Summary

O

Oders
2.6: Summary
Oedema
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
Oesophagus
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
11.5: The Gut
11.8: Oesophagus
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Oestrogen
13.8: Milk Production
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Oestrone Sulphate
13.6: Pregnancy
Oestrous Cycle
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
Olfactory
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Olfactory Nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
15.6: Smell
Olfactory Organ
15.6: Smell
15.11: Summary
Omasum
11.11: The Rumen
Omnivorous
11.3: Omnivores
Open Rooted
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Open Rooted Teeth
11.7: Teeth
optic nerve
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
15.8: Sight
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Optic Nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
15.11: Summary
Orbits
6.2: The Skull
15.8: Sight
Orders
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
organelles
3.1: The Cell
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary
organic compounds
1.4: Ionizations
origin
7.2: Muscles
osmosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals
osmotic pressure
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
Otolith Organs
15.10: Balance
15.11: Summary
Otoliths
15.10: Balance
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
outer ear
15.9: Hearing
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Outer layer of Columnar Epithelium
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
ova
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.11: Summary
ovarian cycle
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
ovaries
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
Ovary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
ovulation
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
oxygen
1.2: Compounds and Molecules
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
9.1: Overview
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Oxyhaemoglobin
9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen
oxytocin
13.8: Milk Production
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers

P

pacemaker
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
Pain Receptors in Skin
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Palate
6.2: The Skull
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
pancreas
11.5: The Gut
11.16: Pancreatic juice
11.19: The Liver
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.8: The Pancreas
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
pancreatic juice
11.10: Small Intestine
11.16: Pancreatic juice
11.20: Summary
papilla
13.9: Reproduction In Birds
parasympathetic nervous system
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Parathormone
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
parathyroid
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
parathyroid gland
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
parathyroid glands
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
Parotid
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
patella
6.17: Summary
pelvic girdle
6.1: The vertebral column
6.6: The Girdles
pelvis
6.17: Summary
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.16: Excretory System Answers
penis
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Penis Bone
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
pepsin
11.15: Digestion
pericardial cavity
4.3: Body Cavities
peripheral nervous system
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
peripheral nervous system (PNS)
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
peristalsis
11.8: Oesophagus
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Permanent Teeth
11.7: Teeth
phagocytosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
Phalanges
6.4: The Forelimb
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
pharynx
9.4: The Air Passages
9.7: Summary
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Phosphates
16.6: The Parathyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
phospholipids
1.7: Fats
Phyla
2.6: Summary
Pineal
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary

pineal gland
16.4: The Pineal Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Pinna
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
pinocytosis
3.2: The Plasma Membrane
3.7: Summary
pituitary
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
pituitary gland
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Pivots
6.14: Joints
placenta
13.6: Pregnancy
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Plantigrade Locomotion
6.16: Locomotion
plasma
8.1: Plasma
plasma membrane
3.7: Summary
Pleura
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Pleural Cavities
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
9.7: Summary
pleural cavity
4.3: Body Cavities
Pleural Membranes
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Poikilothermic
5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation
polysaccharides
1.6: Carbohydrates
pons
9.6: Breathing
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
Popliteal
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
Pore of Sweat Gland
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
Posterior Pituitary
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
Posterior Pituitary Gland
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
potassium
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
Preen Gland
5.3: Skin Glands
Preening
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Premolars
11.7: Teeth
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Prescapular
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
progesterone
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.6: Pregnancy
13.8: Milk Production
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.9: The Ovaries
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
prolactin
13.8: Milk Production
16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
16.11: Summary
prostate gland
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
protease
11.16: Pancreatic juice
Proteases
11.15: Digestion
protein
16.11: Summary
Protein Channel
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
Protein Molecules
3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet
3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
proteins
1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds
1.8: Proteins
11.4: Treatment of Food
11.19: The Liver
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
Proximal
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
Proximal Convoluted Tubule
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Pulp
11.7: Teeth
pupil
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
pyloric sphincter
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
pyramids
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers

R

Races
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
radius
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
Rate of Growth
16.11: Summary
Reabsorbed
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
rectum
11.5: The Gut
11.12: Large Intestine
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
red blood cells
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
red marrow
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
reflex
14.4: Reflexes
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
reflex action
7.2: Muscles
reflex arc
7.2: Muscles
14.4: Reflexes
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
reflexes
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
Refraction
15.8: Sight
Relaxin
13.6: Pregnancy
Relay Neuron
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
renal
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
renal artery
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
Renal Pelvis
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
renal system
4.6: Body Systems
renal vein
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
12.16: Excretory System Answers
respiration
9.6: Breathing
Respiratory Centres
9.6: Breathing
response
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Reticulum
11.11: The Rumen
retina
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
ribosomes
3.3: The Cytoplasm
3.7: Summary

ribs
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Right
4.8: Directional Terms
Rod Cells
15.8: Sight
Rods
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
root
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Rostral
4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
rough ER
3.3: The Cytoplasm
rticulates
6.17: Summary
Rumen
11.1: Herbivores
11.11: The Rumen
11.20: Summary
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Ruminants
11.1: Herbivores
Rumination
11.11: The Rumen

S

Sacral Vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
sacrum
6.1: The vertebral column
Sagittal Section
4.8: Directional Terms
saliva
11.6: Mouth
11.15: Digestion
11.20: Summary
salivary amylase
11.6: Mouth
salivary glands
11.6: Mouth
11.15: Digestion
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
saturated
1.7: Fats
scapula
6.4: The Forelimb
6.6: The Girdles
6.17: Summary
sciatic nerve
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
Scientific
2.2: Naming Animals
Scientific Name
2.6: Summary
sclera
15.8: Sight
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Scrotal Sac
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Scrotal Sacs
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
scrotum
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Seasonal Breeders
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
sebaceous glands
5.3: Skin Glands
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
sebum
5.3: Skin Glands
Secreted
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
Selective Breeding
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
semen
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
semicircular canals
15.10: Balance
15.11: Summary
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Seminal Vesicles
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Seminiferous
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
seminiferous tubules
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Semipermeable Membrane
3.7: Summary
Sense Receptor
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Sensory Function
14.2: The Nervous System
sensory neuron
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
sesamoid bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
Sex Hormones
16.11: Summary
sexual characteristics
16.11: Summary
Sexual Development
16.11: Summary
Shaft
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
short bones
6.7: Categories of Bones
Signs of Oestrous
13.10: Summary
Sinuses
6.2: The Skull
skeletal
4.9: Summary
skeletal muscle
7.3: Smooth Muscle
skin
5: The Skin
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
skin cancer
5.4: The Skin and Sun
skull
6.17: Summary
Slightly Moveable
6.14: Joints
small intestine
11.5: The Gut
11.18: Absorption
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
smooth
4.9: Summary
smooth ER
3.3: The Cytoplasm
smooth muscle
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Socket
11.7: Teeth
sodium
16.7: The Adrenal Gland
16.11: Summary
sodium bicarbonate
9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide
Sodium Chloride
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
sodium ions
3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1
3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers
special senses
15.1: The Sense Organs
species
2.2: Naming Animals
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
2.6: Summary
specific
3.14: Cell Division Worksheet
sperm
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Sperm Duct
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
Sperm Producing Tubules
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Spermatozoa
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
sphincter
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
sphincters
11.9: Stomach
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
spinal cord
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
spinal nerves
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
spleen
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
Spongy
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies

spongy bone
6.9: The Structure of Long Bones
6.17: Summary
starch
1.6: Carbohydrates
sternum
6.3: The Ribs
Stifle
6.15: Common Names of Joints
stimulus
14.4: Reflexes
stix
12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
stomach
11.5: The Gut
11.9: Stomach
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
Striated
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
Striped
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
Submandibular Prescapular
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
Sulci
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
sulcus
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
Superficial Inguinal
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
10.5: Lymphatic System Answers
Superior
4.8: Directional Terms
Sweat Gland
5.9: Skin (Worksheet)
sweat glands
5.3: Skin Glands
sympathetic nervous system
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
sympathetic system
14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
synapse
14.3: The Neuron
14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
synapses
14.10: Nervous System (Summary)
synovial fluid
6.14: Joints
synovial joint
6.14: Joints

T

Tail
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.9: Summary
6.17: Summary
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
Target
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
Target Organs
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
Tarsals
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
taste buds
11.6: Mouth
15.7: Taste
15.11: Summary
Tear Glands
15.8: Sight
teat
13.8: Milk Production
temperature
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
tendons
7.2: Muscles
7.3: Smooth Muscle
Tendons Tie
7.2: Muscles
testes
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
Testis
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
testosterone
13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
16.10: The Testes
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
thoracic
4.3: Body Cavities
Thoracic Cavity
9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities
thoracic vertebrae
6.1: The vertebral column
6.17: Summary
Thorax
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
9.7: Summary
thymus
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
thyroid
16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones
16.11: Summary
thyroid gland
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
16.11: Summary
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
thyroxine
16.5: The Thyroid Gland
16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet)
16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers
tibia
6.5: The Hindlimb
6.17: Summary
Tidal Breathing
9.6: Breathing
tidal volume
9.6: Breathing
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Tissue Cells
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
tissue fluid
10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System
10.3: Summary
10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet
12.2: Water in the Body
tissues
4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies
tongue
11.6: Mouth
11.22: Digestive System Worksheet
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
touch
15.12: Special Senses Worksheet
Toxic Substances
11.19: The Liver
trachea
9.4: The Air Passages
9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet
Transverse
4.8: Directional Terms
triglycerides
1.7: Fats
True Mammals
2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
trunk
4.2: Vertebrate Bodies
4.9: Summary
tympanic membrane
15.9: Hearing

U

uditory
15.11: Summary
ulna
6.4: The Forelimb
6.17: Summary
umbilical cord
13.6: Pregnancy
13.10: Summary
Ungulate Mammals
5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin
Unguligrade Locomotion
6.16: Locomotion
unsaturated
1.7: Fats
urea
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
Ureter
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons
12.16: Excretory System Answers
ureters
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
urethra
12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System
12.13: Summary
12.15: Excretory System Worksheet
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
uterus
13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
13.10: Summary
13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet
16.11: Summary

V

vagina
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

Vagus
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

vagus nerve
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers

Vane
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

varieties
- 2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates
- 2.6: Summary

Vas Deferens
- 13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs
- 13.10: Summary
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

vein
- 11.19: The Liver
- 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet

Velvet
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin

Ventral
- 4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet)
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

Ventral Root
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers

ventricles
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet

vertebrae
- 6.1: The vertebral column
- 6.17: Summary

Vertebrates
- 2.4: The Animal Kingdom
- 2.6: Summary
- 6.19: Prelude

vesicles
- 3.3: The Cytoplasm

Vestibular
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

vestibular nerve
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 15.10: Balance

Vestibular Organ
- 15.9: Hearing
- 15.10: Balance
- 15.11: Summary

Villi
- 11.10: Small Intestine
- 11.18: Absorption
- 11.20: Summary

Visceral Bones
- 6.7: Categories of Bones

vital capacity
- 9.6: Breathing

vitamin A
- 11.19: The Liver

vitamin B
- 11.11: The Rumen
- 11.20: Summary

vitamin D
- 5.4: The Skin and Sun

vitamin E
- 11.11: The Rumen

vitamin K
- 11.11: The Rumen
- 11.20: Summary

Vitreous Humour
- 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet

Voluntary Muscle
- 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies

vulva
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet

W

Warm Blooded
- 5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation

Water Loss
- 16.11: Summary

Wax Producing Glands
- 5.3: Skin Glands

Whiskers
- 15.2: Touch and Pressure

White
- 15.8: Sight

white blood cells
- 12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine
- 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet

white matter
- 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System
- 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet
- 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers
- 14.10: Nervous System (Summary)

Y

yellow marrow
- 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones

Z

zona pellucida
- 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs
- 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation

zygote
- 13.1: Reproductive System
- 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation
- 13.10: Summary

Glossary

Abdomen | The part of the body below the diaphragm

Abomasum | The final compartment of the stomach of ruminants. This the 'true' stomach where muscular walls churn the food and gastric juice is secreted

Absorption | Passage of digested food from the gut into the blood

Accessory gland | A gland that produces secretions that make up the liquid portion of semen

Acetylcholine | A neurotransmitter released at a synapse

Acoustic | Relating to sound

Active transport | The movement of substances across a membrane against the concentration gradient. Requires energy

Adipose tissue | Connective tissue in which the cells are filled with fat or lipid

Adrenal cortex | Outer portion of adrenal gland

Adrenal medulla | Inner portion of adrenal gland

Albumin | The most common of the proteins in the plasma

Aldosterone | The hormone produced by the adrenal cortex

Alimentary | Concerning nutrition

Alimentary canal | The long canal from the mouth to the anus through which food passes as it is digested and absorbed

Alkaline | Containing few hydrogen ions. pH above 7

Alveolus | An air sac in the lung, where gas exchange takes place

Amino acids | Molecules containing nitrogen that are the building blocks of proteins

Amphibian | Vertebrate Class containing the frogs and toads

Amylases | Enzymes that split carbohydrates like starch and glycogen into monosaccharides like glucose

Anaemia | A condition involving a low number of red blood cells or haemoglobin in blood

Antagonistic muscles | A pair of muscles that work together such that as one contracts the other relaxes and vice versa.

Anterior | Nearer to the front of the body (usually used in human anatomy)

Anterior pituitary gland | Anterior portion of pituitary gland

Antibodies | Proteins made in response to a stimulating molecule called an antigen. The basis for the immune response

Anticoagulant | A substance that prevents blood clotting

Antidiuretic | A substance that inhibits urine production

Antidiuretic hormone | A hormone produced by posterior pituitary gland that stimulates water reabsorption from the kidney tubule

Antigens | A substance that stimulates the body to produce an antibody

Anus | The opening at the lower end of the rectum through which solid waste is eliminated.

Aorta | The main artery to body and head from heart

Apex | The pointed end of a cone shaped structure e.g. heart

Appendage | A structure attached to the body

Appendage | A structure attached to the body

Aqueous humor | The watery fluid that fills the anterior chamber of the eye

Aqueous humor | The watery fluid that fills the anterior chamber of the eye

Arteriole | A small, almost microscopic, artery

Arteriole | A small, almost microscopic, artery

Artery | A blood vessel that carries blood away from the heart

Artery | A blood vessel that carries blood away from the heart

Articulate | To move against each other - as of bones

Articulation | The point of contact between bones. Where they move against each other

Articulation | The point of contact between bones. Where they move against each other.

Atlas | First cervical vertebra

Atom | A unit of matter that comprises a chemical element

Atrioventricular valve | A valve that prevents blood flow backwards from ventricle to atrium

Atrium (pl. atria) | One of two cranial chambers of heart

Auditory ossicle | One of 3 small bones in middle ear

Autonomic nervous system | The part of the vertebrate nervous system that innervates smooth and cardiac muscle and

glandular tissues and governs involuntary actions. Consists of the sympathetic nervous

system and the parasympathetic nervous system.

Axillary lymph node | A lymph node under junction of forelimb forelimb and body

Axis | The second cervical vertebra

Axon | A long extension from the neuron that carries nerve impulses away from the cell body

Ball and socket joint | A synovial joint where rounded end of one bone fits into cup-shaped depression of another

Barb | The part of the feather that sticks out of the shaft

Barbules | The parts of a feather that grow out of the barbs. They have hooks and rolled edges to lock the barbs together

Basement membrane | The thin membrane between epidermis and dermis

Basophil | A white blood cell with granules in the cytoplasm

Biceps | The muscle that extends from the shoulder to the elbow responsible for flexing the forearm

Bilateral | Including both sides

Bile | An alkaline secretion from liver that helps break down fats into small droplets

Binocular vision | The placement of the eyes such that both see the same wide area but from slightly different angles

Binomial | The two-part Latinized name of a species, consisting of genus consisting of genus and species names

Blastocyst | A hollow ball of cells that develop from the fertilized ovum

Blind spot | The area of retina at end of optic nerve where there are no receptor cells

Blood | The fluid that circulates in the blood vessels

Blood pressure | The pressure of blood on the walls of the blood vessels

Body cavity | A space within the body that contains various organs

Bowman's capsule | The double walled globe at proximal end of nephron. Encloses glomerulus

Brain stem | The part of the brain just above the spinal cord. Contains the medulla oblongata

Breed | A race or variety

Bronchiole | A branch of the bronchi in the respiratory system

Bronchus | One of the large branches of the trachea

Buccal | To do with the mouth

Callus | A thickening of the skin or growth of new bone tissue in and around a fracture

Canines | The long, cone-shaped teeth just behind the incisors

Carbohydrate | An organic compound containing carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. Made up of sugar subunits

Cardiac cycle | A complete heartbeat consisting of systole and diastole

Cardiac muscle | The muscle that makes up the wall of the heart. Striated branched fibres

Cardiovascular system | The body system comprising the heart, blood vessels and blood

Carnassial teeth | The modified premolars and molars in carnivores that slice against each other like scissors for shearing flesh and bone.

Carotid artery | The artery from aorta that supplies the head and brain

Carpal | A bone of the "wrist"

Cartilage | Dense connective tissue found at ends of long bones, in trachea, ear pinna. Also forms the skeleton of the foetus

Cataract | A condition in which the lens becomes cloudy resulting in blurred vision.

Caudal | Nearer to the tail than

Caudal vena cava | The large vein that collects blood from the body caudal to the heart

Cell | The basic structural and functional unit of all organisms

Cell division | The process by which a cell reproduces itself. Two types: mitosis and meiosis

Cell inclusion | A substance produced by cell that is free in cytoplasm i.e. not enclosed by a membrane

Cellular respiration | The chemical pathway that produces energy in the cell

It consumes a fuel, generally glucose, in the presence of oxygen

Central nervous system | The part of the nervous system consisting of the brain and spinal cord

Cephalic | To do with the head

Cerebellum | The part of the vertebrate hindbrain located dorsally; functions in unconscious coordination of movement and balance

Cerebral cortex | The surface of the cerebrum; the largest and most complex part of the mammalian brain, containing sensory and motor nerve cell bodies of the cerebrum

Cerebrospinal fluid | The fluid that circulates around and within brain brain and spinal cord

Cerebrum | The dorsal portion of the brain composed of right and left hemispheres;

the integrating center for memory, learning, emotions

Cervical vertebrae | The neck vertebrae

Cervix | The neck of the uterus

Chemoreceptor | A receptor that detects chemicals

Chorionic gonadotrophin | The hormone secreted by the placenta that prevents uterine contractions before labour

and prepares the mammary glands for lactation

Choroid | The middle coat of the eyeball

Chromosome | One of the small dark staining bodies in the cell nucleus. Contains the DNA

Chyle | The milky fluid found in the lacteals of the small intestine

Chyme | The semi fluid mixture of partly digested food and digestive secretions in the stomach and small intestine

Cilium (pl. cilia) | A hair like process projecting from a cell. Used to move cell substances along the surface of the cell

Class | The taxonomic grouping of related, similar orders; category above order and below phylum

Clavicle | The collar bone

Clot | The process that changes liquid blood to a gelatinous mass

Coagulation | The process by which blood clots

Coccygeal vertebrae | The vertebrae of the tail

Coccyx | The tail bones

Cochlea | The coiled tube forming the portion of the inner ear that converts sound waves to nerve impulses

Collagen | A protein that is the main organic constituent of connective tissue

Colon | Part of the large intestine.

Colostrum | The first milk, it contains antibodies.

Common bile duct | The duct that carries both bile and pancreatic juice into the small intestine

Compact bone | Dense bone made up of Haversian systems

Conditioned Reflex | The response that is elicited by a stimulus after training has taken place

Condyle | A rounded protuberance at the ends of some bones where it forms an articulation with another bone

Cone | A light sensitive receptor in the retina that responds to colour

Congenital | Present at the time of birth

Conjunctiva | The delicate membrane covering the cornea of the eye

Connective tissue | One of the 4 basic tissue types of the body. Binds and supports. Consists of cells and fibres in a matrixs

Constipation | Decreased defecation due to decreased mobility of the intestines

Continuous breeding | When breeding continues throughout the year

Cornea | The transparent anterior layer of the eye through which the iris can be seen

Coronary artery | The artery that supplies the heart muscle

Corpus luteum | A yellow endocrine gland formed in the empty ovarian follicle after ovulation

Cortex | The outer layer of an organ

Costal | To do with a rib

Cowper's gland | One of the accessory glands of the male reproductive system

Cranial | Towards the head

Cranial nerve | One of the 12 nerves that leave the brain

Cranium | The brain case in surrounds and protects young

Crop | The bag-like structure at semi fluid portion of the base loss of the oesophagus in birds.In many birds it stores food before it enters the stomachA

Crop-milk | Secretion produced by glands in the wall of the crop of in pigeons different doves Parents regurgitate it to feed their young

Cross section | Crosswise slice of an animal or organ

Cross section | Crosswise slice of an animal or organ

Cryptorchidism | Undescended testes

Cryptorchidism | Undescended testes

Cutaneous | To do with the brain

Cutaneous | To do with the skin

Cytology | The study of cells

Cytosol | The semi fluid portion of the cytoplasm

Dehydration | Excessive loss of water from the body or its parts

Denaturation | Disruption of the structure of a protein by heat, acids etc. to make it inactive

Dendrite | Blood pressure in the arteries between the passage of the pulses

Dental formula | The formula that describes the numbers of dogs

Dentine | The tissue below the enamel in teeth

Dermis | The layer of dense connective tissue lying under the epidermis

Diabetes insipidus | The condition caused by under secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH). Symptom: excretion large amounts dilute urine

Diabetes mellitus | The condition caused by under secretion of insulin. Symptoms: raised blood glucose levels, glucose in urine

Diaphragm | The dome shaped skeletal muscle separating the thoracic from the abdominal cavities

Diarrhoea | Frequent defecation of liquid faeces

Diastema | The space in the jaw in animals that have no (or reduced) canines

Diastole | The phase of the heartbeat involving the relaxation of the ventricles

Diastolic blood pressure | Blood pressure in the arteries between the passage of the pulses

Diffusion | A nerve cell process movement carries the nerve impulses towards the cell body

Diffusion | A passive process in the presence of movement of molecules from a region of high concentration to one of low concentration

Digestion | The mechanical and physical breakdown layer of food

Digitigrade locomotion | Locomotion on the "fingers" as in cats and dogs

Dilate | To expand or swell

Dilate | To expand or swell

Diploid | Having a double set of chromosomes one maternal, one paternal

Diploid | Having a double set of chromosomes one maternal, one paternal

Directional terms | Terms that describe the different kinds of teeth

Directional terms | Terms the body

Disaccharides | Double sugar, consisting of two joined monosaccharides

Distal | Farther away from the trunk of substances through the body or point of origin

Diuretic | Fluid outside body cells

Dorsal | Nearer the back compounds consisting of the animal than

Duodenum | First part of the small intestine

Echolocation | The use of high frequency sound like sonar and radar by animals (i.e. whales and bats) to locate objects in joint between the surrounding environment

Effector | A muscle or gland that responds to a motor neuron impulse

Egestion | The elimination insoluble protein formed from fibrinogen

Electrolyte | A compound that separates into charged particles or ions

Electron microscope | A microscope that focuses an electron beam through a specimen, resulting in resolving power two thousandfold greater than that anticoagulant used for biochemical tests for glucose

Element | Any substance that cannot be broken down to any other substance

Embryo | The shaft of any long bone

Embryo | The young of any organism in an early stage of development

Emulsification | The breakdown of large fat particles to smaller ones in the presence of bile

Enamel | The hard white substance covering the crown of teeth

Endocrine gland | A ductless gland that secretes hormones into the blood

Endometrium | The inner lining of the uterus

Endoplasmic reticulum | The network of membranous channels running through the cytoplasm of cells

Endothelium | The layer of squamous epithelium that lines blood vessels

Enzyme | The enlarged large intestine and caecum occupied by cellulose digesting micro-organisms

Eosinophil | A white blood cell with granules in the cytoplasm

Eosinophil | A white blood cell with granules in the cytoplasm

Epidermis | The thin outer layer of the skin

Epididymis | The organ composed of convoluted tubules that lies on the border of the testis Where sperm mature

Epiglottis | The cartilage on the top of the larynx that closes the windpipe during swallowing

Epiphyseal plate | The cartilaginous plate at the end of a long bone where bone growth occurs

Epiphysis | The end of a long bone

Epithelial tissue | Tissue that forms outer part of skin, lines blood vessels, hollow organs and passages in the body

Erythrocyte | A red blood cell

Erythrocyte | A red blood cell

Essential amino acids | The 10 amino acids that describe the locations of structures in relation to other structures or locations in the body

Essential amino acids | The 10 amino acids that can not be made by animals and must be acquired in the diet

Eustachian tube | The passage connecting middle ear to pharynx. Equalises air pressure in middle and outer ear

Evolution | All the changes that have transformed life on Earth from its earliest beginnings to the diversity that characterizes it today

Excretion | To cast out material from the body, cell or tissue

Exocrine gland | A gland that secretes substances into a duct

Exocytosis | The discharge of substances through the plasma membrane

Expiration | Breathing out

Extension | Bending of a joint so that the angle between the bones increases

Extracellular fluid | Fluid outside body cells

Facilitated diffusion | Diffusion across a membrane using a carrier substance

Facilitated diffusion | Diffusion across a membrane using a carrier substance

Fallopian tube | A chemical that reduces Antidiuretic hormone production and increases urine volume

Fallopian tube | A slender tube through which eggs pass from an ovary to the uterus

Fats | Biological compounds consisting of three fatty acids linked to one glycerol molecule

Feedback system | The sequence of events where information about the status number of a situation is continually fed back to the central control region

Femur | The long bone between the pelvis plane the knee

Fertilisation | Penetration of ovum by sperm and union of nuclei

Fetlock | The joint between the metacarpals or metatarsals and the phalanges in horse

Fibrin | The insoluble protein formed from fibrinogen

Fibrinogen | The protein in blood plasma essential for blood clotting

Fibrinogen | The protein in blood plasma essential for blood clotting

Fibula | The lateral bone of indigestible waste products from the body

Fibula | The lateral bone of the lower hind limb

Filtrate | The fluid produced by filtration of blood in the nephron

Flagellum | A long hair like process e.g. tail of sperm

Flexion | The movement involving decreasing the angle between two bones

Fluoroxylate | An anticoagulant used for biochemical tests for glucose

Foetus | Later stage of a light microscope

Foetus | Later stage of development of a young animal

Follicle | The cavity surrounding the developing ovum

Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) | Hormone secreted by anterior pituitary gland. Stimulates development of ovarian follicle

Foramen | The muscles between the ribs.

Foramen magnum | The hole at the base of the skull for passage of the spinal cord

Fossa | A furrow or shallow depression in a bone

Fovea | The area of the retina of greatest concentration of cone cells. Area of sharpest vision

Functional caecum | The enlarged large intestine and caecum occupied by cellulose digesting micro-organisms

Gall bladder | The small pouch that stores bile

Gamete | A substance that increases the speed of nerve chemical reaction

Gamete | A reproductive cell - sperm or ovum

Ganglion | A group of nerve cells outside central nervous system

Gas exchange | The process in which oxygen from inhaled air is transferred into the blood and carbon dioxide from the blood is transferred into the alveoli

Gastric juice | The digestive secretion produced by glands in the wall of the stomach

Gene | The biological unit of heredity

Gestation | The period of foetal development inside the uterus

Girdle | An encircling or arching arrangement of bones

Gizzard | The second part of the stomach slice of birds. In seed eating birds it contains pebbles and its muscular walls help grind the food

Gland | Loin region of the back

Gliding joint | The remnant of epiphyseal plate at end of long bone

Gliding joint | A synovial joint with flat articulating surfaces that permits limited movements e.g. between carpals and tarsals

Glomerular capsule | See Bowman's capsule

Glomerulus | Tuft of capillaries surrounded by the Bowman's capsule in nephron

Glottis | Vocal cords

Glucose | The smallest sugar. Major energy source for all cells

Glycerol | A molecule that combines with three fatty acid molecules to form a fat or oil

Glycogen | A highly branched polymer of glucose. Energy store in body

Goitre | The condition involving enlargement of thyroid gland

Golgi complex apparatus | A cell organelle concerned with packaging, processing and secretion of organic molecules

Gonads | The ovary and testes

Graafian follicle | The mature ovarian follicle

Grey matter | Area of the nervous system consisting of cell bodies

Growth hormone | A hormone secreted by the anterior pituitary gland. Stimulates growth, particularly of the skeleton

Haematocrit | The percentage of blood made up of red blood cells. Also called packed cell volume (PCV)

Haematuria | Urine that contains red blood cells

Haemoglobin | Pigment containing iron in red blood cells that allows them to carry oxygen

Haemolysis | The escape five bones of haemoglobin from a red blood cell

Haemorrhage | Bleeding

Haploid | Having half the normal number of chromosomes, produced by meiosis

Haversian canal | The canal down centre of a Haversian system

Haversian system | The columns of boney tissue that make up compact bone

Heparin | A naturally occurring anticoagulant Also used in laboratory tests for heavy metals

Hepatic | To do with the liver

Hepatic portal vessel | The blood vessel that carries blood from the intestines to the liver

Hinge joint | A synovial joint that allows movement in only plane e.g. elbow

Histamine | A substance secreted from white cells and platelets that is involved in the inflammatory response

Hock | The joint (between the tarsals and metatarsals

Homoiothermic | 'Warm-blooded animals that regulate their body temperature

Hormone | A secretion from an endocrine gland

Humerus | The bone of the upper forearm between the scapula and the radius and ulna

Hyperglycemia | Elevated blood glucose level

Hypertension | High blood pressure

Hyperthermia | High body temperature

Hypertonic | Having an osmotic pressure higher than a solution with which it is compared

Hypotension | Low blood pressure

Hypotonic | Having an osmotic pressure lower than a solution with which it is compared

Ileum | The terminal part of the small intestine

Immunity | Being resistant to injury or invasion by microorganisms

Implantation | The attachment of blastocyst to lining of uterus

Impotence | The inability posterior copulate

Incisors | The chisel-shaped 'biting off teeth at the front of the mouth

Induced ovulation | When ovulation is stimulated by mating as in cat and rabbit

Inferior | Towards the lower part of the body. Not used in animals except, perhaps, higher apes

Infertility | The inability carbohydrate. conceive or cause conception

Inflammation | A localised protective response to tissue injury

Ingestion | The taking in of food, liquids etc.

Inguinal | To do with the groin

Inorganic | Compounds that lack carbon

Insertion | The attachment of a muscle tendon to a bone that moves

Inspiration | Breathing in

Insulin | A hormone produced by the pancreas. Decreases blood glucose levels

Intercostal muscles | The muscles between the ribs.

Internal | Away from the surface of the body

Internal | Away from the surface of the body

Interstitial fluid | Extracellular fluid surrounding the cells

Interstitial fluid | Extracellular fluid surrounding the cells

Intervertebral disc | A hole in a bone for passage of vessels or nerves

Intervertebral disc | A pad of cartilage between the vertebrae

Intestinal juice | Digestive secretion produced by glands in the lining of the small intestine

Intracellular fluid | Fluid within the cells

Invertebrates | Animals that do not posses a backbone or vertebral column

Ion | A charged particle

Isotonic | Having an osmotic pressure equal to that of a solution with which it is compared

Jejunum | The small pouch that stores bile

Jejunum | The middle portion of the small intestine

joint | Point of contact between 2 bones

Keel | The breast bone in birds

Keratin | A protein found in epidermis, hair, feathers, hoofs etc.

Kidney | The organ that produces urine

Lachrymal gland | The tear gland of the eye

Lactation | The secretion and ejection of milk by mammary glands|

Lacteal | A lymphatic vessel within the villi of the small intestine

Lacuna | A small hollow space

Lamellae | Concentric rings of hard calcified material found in compact bone

Large intestine | Part of the gut consisting of the colon, caecum, rectum and anal canal

Larynx | The voice box

Lateral | Away from the midline

Lens | Transparent part of the eye that helps focus light rays on the retina

Leukocyte | A white blood cell

Ligament | Dense connective tissue that attaches bone to bone

Lipase | Digestive enzyme that breaks down fats (lipids)

Lipid | Fat

Liver | The large organ caudal a neuron

Longitudinal | Lengthwise slice of an animal or organ

Lordosis response | Standing firm to pressure on the loin region

Lumbar | Loin region of the back

Lumen | A collection of cells artery, secrete substances

Lumen | A space within an artery, vein, intestine or tube

Lung | The organs of respiration

Luteinising hormone | The hormone from the anterior pituitary gland that stimulates ovulation and development of corpus luteum

Lymph | Tissue fluid that has entered the lymphatic system

Lymph node | A structure that filters lymph and produces lymphocytes

Lymphatic capillary | The closed ended microscopic vessel that collects lymph in tissues

Lymphatic tissue | Specialised tissue that contains large numbers of lymphocytes

Lymphatic vessel | A large vessel that carries lymph

Lymphocyte | A white blood cell associated with the immune response

Lysosome | A cell organelle that contains digestive enzymes

Macrophage | A large phagocytic cell present in many tissues

Mammary gland | The milk producing gland

Mandible | The bone of the lower jaw

Marrow | The soft sponge like material in the cavities of bone

Matrix | The substance of a tissue in which the more specialised structures are embedded

Maxilla | To do with smell

Medial | Towards the midline

Mediastinum | The tissue that separates the two sides of the lung

Medulla | Inner part of an organ

Medulla oblongata | The part of the brain stem or hind brain

Meiosis | The type of cell division for production of gametes. Halves the number of chromosomes

Melanin | The dark pigment in the skin and hair

Melatonin | The hormone produced by the pineal gland

Membrane | A thin, flexible sheet of tissue

Meninges | The membranes covering the brain and spinal cord

Mesentery | The membrane attaching the small intestine to the abdominal wall

Metacarpals | A living form. One individual

Metastasis | The distant spread of disease especially a malignant tumour from its site of origin

Metatarsals | The five bones of the foot that connect the ankle" to the toes

Microtubule | A hollow rod of protein in the cytoplasm of all eukaryotic cells and in cilia, flagella, and the cytoskeleton

Microvilli | The microscopic fingerlike projections from the membrane of the cells covering the villi of the small intestine

Microvilli | The microscopic fingerlike projections from the membrane of the cells covering the villi of the small intestine

Middle ear | The cavity in the skull between the eardrum and inner ear housing the auditory ossicles

Milk teeth | The first set of teeth in a young animal

Minute volume | The volume of air inspired or expired during a minute of normal tidal breathing

Mitochondrion | The organelle in cell cytoplasm that produces energy

Mitosis | The cell division for growth series repair. Produces 2 cells identical to parent and each othe

Molars | The more posterior cheek teeth

Monocyte | The largest leukocyte. It is phagocytic and has no granules in the cytoplasm

Monosaccharide | The simplest carbohydrate. Also known as simple sugar

Morula | The solid mass of cells produced by successive divisions of the fertilized ovum

Mucus | A thick fluid secretion

Myelin | The fatty insulating coating to an axon of a neuron

Nasal cavity | The space just inside the nostril

Negative feedback | Control in which the stimulus initiates actions that reverse or reduce the stimulus

Nephron | The functional unit of the kidney

Nerve | A bundle of nerve fibres

Nerve impulse | The nerve "current' that passes along a neuron

Neuron | A nerve cell

Neuron | A nerve cell

Neurotransmitter | Molecules released at a synapse to the diaphragm

Neurotransmitter | Molecules released at a synapse to transmit the nerve impulse from one neuron to the next

Neutral fat | A fat or triglyceride. Biological compound consisting of three fatty acids linked to one glycerol molecule

Neutrophil | White blood cell with granules in the cytoplasm involved in phagocytosis

Nictitating membrane | The third eyelid in the cat, tuatara and crocodiles

Normal saline | A 0.9% solution thyroid gland

Nuclear membrane | The double layered membrane that surrounds the nucleus

Nucleolus | The spherical body within the nucleus, containing RNA

Nucleus | The spherical or oval body to the cell that contains the DNA

Oesophagus | The hollow muscular tube connecting the pharynx with stomach

Olfactory | To do with smell

Omasum | Part of the modified stomach of ruminants with a folded inner surface

Open rooted teeth | Teeth in which the root opening remains wide. They grow continuously e.g. the incisors of rabbits and rats

Optic Nerve | The nerve carrying impulses from the retina of the eye the the brain

Orbit | The bony cavity in the skull that holds the eyeball

Organ | A structure with a specific function

Organelle | A structure in the cell with a specific function

Organic | A compound that contains carbon and hydrogen e.g. carbohydrates, lipids and proteins

Organism | A living form. One individual

Origin | The bones of the "hand"

Origin | The attachment of a muscle to a bone enzyme secreted by the stomach wall

Osmosis | The movement of water molecules across a semi permeable membrane from an area of high water concentration to an area of low water concentration

Osmotic pressure | The pressure required to prevent water moving across a semi permeable membrane by osmosis

Ossicle | A small bone

Ossification | A solid contracting strand in the cytoplasm of cells that brings about cell contraction.

Ossification | The formation of bone

Otolith | A particle of calcium carbonate embedded in the membrane of the otolith organ of the inner ear

Oval window | The small opening between the middle and inner ear

Ovarian cycle | The series of events in the ovary associated with the maturation of the ovum

Ovarian follicle | developing ovum with the epithelial tissues surrounding it

Ovary | The female gonad that produces ova.

Ovulation | The release of the ovum from the mature follicle of the ovary

Ovum | The egg cell (plural: ova)

Oxyhaemoglobin | Haemoglobin combined with oxygen

Oxytocin | The hormone from the posterior pituitary gland. Stimulates milk "let down"

Palate | The roof of the mouth

Palmar | The "walking" surface of the front paw

Pancreas | The organ lying along the caudal margin of the stomach. Has endocrine and exocrine functions

Pancreatic juice | The digestive secretion produced by the pancreas

Parasympathetic division | One of the two parts of the autonomic nervous system. Concerned with normal "at rest" activities

Parathyroid gland | One of four small endocrine glands on the dorsal surface of the thyroid gland

Parathyroid hormone | The hormone secreted from the parathyroid gland

Parathyroid hormone | The hormone secreted from the parathyroid gland

Parotid gland | One of sodium chloride

Parotid gland | One of the paired salivary glands ventral to the ear

Parturition | The act of giving birth

Patella | To clean, straighten and fluff feathers

Pathogen | A disease-producing organism

Pectoral | A chemical substance in food that provides energy or assists various body processes

Pectoral | To do with the chest the breast

Pelvic cavity | The caudal portion of the abdominal cavity. Contains the bladder, colon and reproductive structures

Pelvis | The structure formed by the two hip bones, sacrum and coccyx

Pepsin | A protein digesting enzyme secreted by the stomach wall

Pericardial cavity | The small cavity between the two layers of the pericardial membranes

Pericardial cavity | The small cavity between the two layers of the pericardial membranes

Pericardium | The membrane that does not move

Pericardium | The membrane that encloses the heart

Periosteum | The tough connective tissue covering of a bone

Peripheral | Located on the outer part of the body

Peripheral nervous system | Bone part found in the spaces of the nervous system composed of the cranial and spinal nerves

Peristalsis | The successive muscular contractions along the wall of the gut

Peritoneum | The membrane that lines the abdominal cavity and covers the abdominal organ

Permanent teeth | The second set of teeth that persist through life

Peyer's Patches | Large clusters of lymph nodules found in the wall of the small intestine

pH | A symbol that indicates the acidity or alkalinity of a solution

Phagocytosis | The process by which cells ingest particles and bacteria

Phalanges | The bones of the "fingers" and "toes"

Pharynx | The throat

Phospholipid bilayer | The arrangement of phospholipids molecules in two layers

Phospholipids | Molecules that make up the double layer of biological membranes

Photoreceptor | A receptor that detects light

Photosynthesis | The making of organic molecules by plants using energy from the sun

Physiology | The science that deals with the functions of an organism and its parts

Pineal gland | The gland situated in the brain that secretes melatoni

Pinna | The projecting part of the external ear

Pinocytosis | The process by which cells ingest liquid

Pituitary gland | The endocrine gland lying under the caudal surface of the brain attached to the hypothalamus by a stalk

Pivot joint | A synovial joint where a peg of bone articulates with a ring of bone as in dim light

Placenta | The special structure through which the exchange of materials between the foetus and mother occurs

Plantar | The "walking" surface of the hind paw

Plasma | Breeding fluid that surrounds the blood cells

Plasma membrane | The outer membrane surrounding the cell

Platelets | Cell fragments in the blood essential for clotting

Pleura | Membranes that cover a lungs and line the walls of the chest and diaphragm

Pleural cavity | The space between the two layers of semen

Plexus | A network of nerves

Poikilothermic | 'Cold-blooded' animals whose body temperature varies, to a large extent depending on the environment

Polysaccharides | A carbohydrate formed from up to a thousand monosaccharides

Preen | To clean, straighten and fluff feathers

Premolars | The kneecap

Premolars | Small more anterior cheek teeth

Progesterone | The hormone produced by the corpus luteum

progesterone | The bone of the upper jaw

progesterone | The female sex hormone produced by ovaries

Prolactin | A hormone produced by the anterior pituitary gland

Prostate gland | The gland caudal to bladder in males

Proteases | Enzymes that split proteins into amino acids

Protein | The synovial joint where the humerus joins the scapula

Proximal | The bony structure formed by the hip bones, sacrum and coccygeal bones

Proximal | Nearer to the body or to the point of origin

Pulmonary | To do with the lungs

Pulp cavity | The cavity within the crown and neck of a toot

Pulse | The series of waves of high pressure blood passing along an artery

Pupil | The hole in the centre at the large intestine

Pus | Dead white blood cells

Pyloric sphincter | The ring of smooth muscle between the stomach and the small intestine

Radius | The shorter bone of the forelimb between the humerus and the "wrist"

Receptor | A specialized cell that responds to specific sensory stimuli such as touch,pressure, light etc.

Red marrow | Bone marrow found in the spaces of spongy bone.Makes red blood cells

Reflex | A fast automatic response to a stimulus

Reflex arc | Consists of receptor, sensory, relay and motor neurons with effector

Refraction | Bending of light as it passes from one medium to another

Relaxin | The hormone secreted by the placenta and ovaries that eases the joint between the right and left pelvis arteries, dilates the cervix for birth

Renal | To do with the kidney

Renal pelvis | The cavity in the centre of the kidney

Renal pyramid | The cone shaped structure in kidney medulla

Renal system | The body system involving the kidneys

Reticulum | The part of the modified stomach of ruminants with honeycomb of raised folds on its inner surface

Retina | Scale like

Ribosome | The organelle in the cell that makes proteins

Rickets | A bone disorder caused by inadequate vitamin D

Rod | The photoreceptor on the hind leg

Rostral | Towards the joint between the atlas and axis

Rostral | Towards the muzzle

Rumen | The first and largest compartment of the modified stomach of ruminants.It houses and the microorganisms

Ruminant | An animal with or rumen e.g. sheep, cow, camel

Rumination | Chewing the "cud"

Sacrum | The triangular bone formed from fused sacral vertebrae.Located between the two hipbones

Sagittal plane | Plane that divides the body into left and right portions

Sagittal section | Lengthwise slice of an animal or organ

Saliva | The secretion from the salivary glands

Salivary amylase | Locomotion involving placing the whole surface of the foot on down the ground as in humans and bears

Salivary amylase | The starch digesting enzyme in saliva

Saturated fat | A fat containing saturated fatty acids

Scapula | The shoulder blade

Sciatic nerve | The large nerve that passes down the hind leg

Sclera | The fibrous outer coat of eyeball

Seasonal breeding | Breeding confined to certain seasons of the year

Sebaceous gland | An exocrine gland in the dermis of the skin associated with a hair follicle

Sebum | The waxy secretion from a sebaceous gland

Secondary sex characteristic | A characteristic that develops at sexual maturity. e.g. large body size of males, manes in lions

Secretion | The production or release of a fluid from a gland

Semen | The fluid discharged at ejaculation of male. Consists of sperm and fluid

Semi-permeable membrane | A membrane that allows some substances to cross more easily than others

Semicircular canals | The membranous fluid filled canals containing receptors for equilibrium

Semilunar valve | The valve guarding the entrance to the aorta or the pulmonary artery

Seminal vesicle | A gland that secretes a component of semen

Seminiferous tubule | The tightly coiled duct in the testis where sperm joint

Serum | Plasma minus its clotting proteins

Sesamoid bones | Small bones usually found in tendons

Shock | Reduced cardiac output resulting in failure to deliver adequate oxygen and nutrients to the body

Shoulder | The synovial joint where the humerus joins the scapula

Sinus | An organic compound consisting in a bone especially in the bones of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen and nitrogen. Made up of amino acids

Sinus | An air cavity in a bone especially in the bones of the face or skull

Skeletal muscle | Tissue specialized for contraction with striated fibres. Attached to the bones of the skeleton

Skull | The skeleton of the head

Small intestine | The long tube of the gut that begins at the stomach and ends at the large intestine

Smooth muscle | Tissue specialized for contraction with spindle shaped non striated fibres

Smooth muscle | Tissue specialized for contraction with spindle shaped non striated fibres

Soft palate | The posterior portion of the iris of the eye

Soft palate | The posterior portion of the roof of the mouth

Solution | One or more substances dissolved in a liquid

Specific gravity | The measure of the density of a liquid or solid, as compared with that of water.

Sperm duct | The tube that carries sperm from the epididymis to the urethra. Also called the vas deferens

Spermatic cord | The structure in the male reproductive system attached to the testis that carries the vas deferens, arteries, veins, etc.

Spermatozoon | Normal mature sperm cell

Sphincter | A ring-like muscle of controls movement along a body passage or orifice

Spinal cord | The mass of nerve tissue in the vertebral column

Spinal nerve | One of the nerves that originate in left the spinal cord

Spleen | The large lymphatic organ near the stomach that stores blood and produces lymphocytes

Spongy bone | The inner layer of bone; found at the ends of long bones less dense than compact bone

Squamous | Scale like

Starch | The inner coat of the eyeball. Nerve calls here (rods and cones) respond to light ray

Starch | The storage polysaccharide in plants consisting of many glucose molecules

Sterile | Free from any living micro organisms

Sternum | The breastbone

Stifle | The joint between the femur and the tibia on the hind leg

Stimulus | Any change in the retina, specialized for vision in dim light

Stimulus | Any change in the environment capable of initiating a nerve impulse

Stomach | The large baglike part of the gut between the oesophagus and the small intestine

Striated muscle | Striped or skeletal muscle

Subcutaneous | Beneath the skin

Submandibular gland | The salivary gland beneath the tongue

Substrate | A substance on which an enzyme acts

Sulcus | A groove of the lungs

Superficial | Nearer to the surface of

Suture | An immoveable joint in the skull

Sympathetic division | One of the two subdivisions of the autonomic nervous system concerned with reacting to emergency situations

Synapse | The junction between two neurons

Synapse | The junction between two neurons

Synovial joint | A fully moveable joint

Synovial joint | A fully moveable joint

System | An association of organs that have a common function, e.g. digestive system, respiratory system

Systemic circulation | The blood circulation from the left ventricl through the aorta to all the organs of the body and back foetus to the heart

Systole | The phase of the heartbeat involving contraction of the ventricles

Systolic blood pressure | One of two tubes that connect the kidney with the bladder

Target cell | A cell whose activity is affected by a particular hormone

Tarsals | Thebones of the "ankle"

Tendons | A neuron that carries a nerve impulse towards the central nervous system

Tendons | The tough cord of fibrous connective tissue that connects muscles to bones

Testis | The male gonad that produces sperm

Testosterone | The hormone produced by the cells between the seminiferous tubules of the testis

Thoracic cavity | The chest cavity that contains the heart and lungs

Thorax | The part of the body between the neck and the diaphragm

Thymus gland | The organ dorsal to the sternum that is essential to the immune response

Thyroxine | The hormone secreted by the thyroid gland

Tibia | The medial bone of the lower hind limb

Tidal breathing | Normal at rest breathing

Tidal volume | The volume of air breathed in or out in any one "at rest" breath

Tissue | A group of similar cells

Tissue fluid | Plasma that has left cava

Total lung capacity | The sum of the tidal volume, inspiratory reserve, expiratory reserve and residual volume of the lungs

Trachea | The windpipe

Trachea | The windpipe

Transverse | A crosswise slice of an animal or depression between the convolutions of the brain

Transverse | A crosswise slice of an animal or organ

Triceps | The muscle that extends from the shoulder to cord

Triglycerides | A biological compound consisting of three fatty acids linked to one glycerol molecule. A fat

Tympanic membrane | The thin transparent membrane of connective tissue between the external ear, canal and the middle ear. Also called the eardrum

Ulna | The longer bone of the forelimb between the humerus and the "wrist"

Umbilical cord | The cord containing arteries and vein that attaches the foetus to the placenta

Unguligrade locomotion | Locomotion on the "fingernails" as in horses and pigs

Urea | The soluble excretory product produced when excess amino acids (from proteins) are broken down by the body

Ureter | One of two tubes body

Urethra | The blood pressure during passage of the pulse

Urethra | The duct from the bladder to the exterior of the body

Uric acid | An insoluble excretory product produced when excess amino acids(from proteins) are broken down by the body

Urinalysis | The analysis functioning of urine

Urine | The fluid produced by the kidneys

Uterus | The hollow muscular organ in females where the foetus develops

Vagina | The muscular, tubular organ in the female where sperm are deposited during copulation

Vagus nerve | The cranial nerve that controls the muscles that bring about swallowing,the muscles of the heart, airways, lungs, stomach and intestines

Vane | The flat part of a feather emerging from the shaft; there are two vanes per feather

Vas deferens | The duct that conducts the sperm from the epididymis to the urethra

Vascular | To do with blood

Vaso dilation | The increase in size of the channel down a blood vessel

Vasoconstriction | The decrease in size of the channel down a blood vessel

Vein | A blood vessel that carries blood towards the heart

Velvet | The endocrine gland with lobes on either side of the trachea

Velvet | The tissue layer that covers antlers

Vena cava | One of two large blood vessels that return blood to the heart

Ventral | Nearer the belly of the animal than

Ventricles | The caudal chambers of the heart

Venule | A small vein

Vertebral canal | The channel that encloses and protects the spinal cord

Vertebrates | Animals elbow responsible for extending the forearm

Vertebrates | Animals that have have a backbone or vertebral column

Vesicles | Small, intracellular membrane-bound sac

Vestibular organ | The part of the body of balance the fore and hind limbs are attached

Vestibular organ | The organ of balance – semicircular canals and otolith organ

Villus (pl. villi) | A projection from the lining of the small intestine to help absorb digested food molecules

Viscera | The organs in the abdominal and pelvic cavities

Visceral skeleton | Bones formed in the organs of the body

Viscosity | The connect or kidney with the bladder

Viscosity | The thickness or stickiness of a liquid

Vital capacity | The sum of the inspiratory and expiratory reserve volumes and the tidal volume

Vital capacity | The volume of the air expired when a maximum expiration follows a maximum inspiration

Vitamin | An organic molecule necessary in minute quantities for the proper functioning of the chemical processes in the body

Vitreous Humor | The fluid in the posterior chamber of the eye

White matter | Masses of myelinated axons located in the brain and spinal cord

Yellow marrow | Bone marrow that is yellow with fat; found at the ends of long bones

Zona pellucida | The tough layer surrounding the ovum

Zygote | Single cell resulting from the union of the sperm and egg

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Anatomy and Physiology of Animals (Lawson)

Webpages: 287

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-SA 3.0: 96.2% (276 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 2.1% (6 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 1% (3 pages)
- Undeclared: 0.7% (2 pages)

By Page

- Anatomy and Physiology of Animals (Lawson) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - About the Author - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 1: Chemicals - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.1: Elements and Atoms - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.2: Compounds and Molecules - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.3: Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.4: Ionizations - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.5: Organic and Inorganic Compounds - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.6: Carbohydrates - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.7: Fats - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.8: Proteins - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.9: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.10: Chemicals (Worksheet) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.11: Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.12: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 1.13: Website - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 2: Classifications - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.1: Naming and Classifying Animals - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.2: Naming Animals - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.3: Classification of Living Organisms - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.4: The Animal Kingdom - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.5: The Classification of Vertebrates - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.6: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.7: Classifications (Worksheet) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.8: Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.9: Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.10: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 2.11: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 3: The Cell - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.1: The Cell - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.2: The Plasma Membrane - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.3: The Cytoplasm - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.4: The Nucleus - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.5: Cell Division - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.6: The Cell As A Factory - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.7: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.8: Worksheets - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.9: Plasma Membrane Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.10: Plasma Membrane Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.11: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 1 - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.12: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.13: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.14: Cell Division Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.15: Cell Division Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.16: Diffusion and Osmosis Worksheet 2 Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.17: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 3.18: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 4: Body Organization - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 4.1: The Organisation of Animal Bodies - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 4.2: Vertebrate Bodies - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
    - 4.3: Body Cavities - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 4.4: Organs - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.5: Generalised Plan Of The Mammalian Body - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.6: Body Systems - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.7: Homeostasis - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.8: Directional Terms - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.9: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.10: Worksheets - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.11: Directional Terms 1 (Worksheet) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.12: Directional Terms Worksheet 1 Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.13: Directional Terms 2 (Worksheet) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.14: Directional Terms Worksheet 2 Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.15: Tissues Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.16: Tissues Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.17: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.18: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 4.19: Skin Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

5: The Skin - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 5.1: The Skin - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.2: Skin Structures Made of Keratin - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.3: Skin Glands - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.4: The Skin and Sun - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.5: The Dermis - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.6: The Skin and Temperature Regulation - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.7: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.8: Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.9: Skin (Worksheet) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.10: Skin Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.11: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 5.12: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

6: The Skeleton - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 6.1: The vertebral column - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.2: The Skull - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.3: The Ribs - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.4: The Forelimb - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.5: The Hindlimb - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.6: The Girdles - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.7: Categories of Bones - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.8: Bird Skeletons - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.9: The Structure of Long Bones - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.10: Compact bone - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.11: Spongy Bone - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.12: Bone Growth - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.13: Broken Bones - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.14: Joints - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.15: Common Names of Joints - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.16: Locomotion - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.17: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.18: Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.19: Prelude - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.20: Skeleton Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.21: Skeleton Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.22: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 6.23: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

7: Muscles - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 7.1: Website - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 7.2: Muscles - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 7.3: Smooth Muscle - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 7.4: Cardiac Muscle - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

8: Cardiovascular System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 8.1: Plasma - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.2: Red Blood Cells - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.3: White Blood Cells - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.4: Platelets - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.5: Transport of Oxygen - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.6: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.7: Transport of Carbon Dioxide - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.8: Transport of Other Substances - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.9: Blood Clotting - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.10: Serum and Plasma - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.11: Anticoagulants - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.12: Haemolysis - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.13: Blood groups - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.14: Blood Volume - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.15: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.16: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.17: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.18: Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.19: The Heart Objectives - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.20: The Heart - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.21: Valves - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.22: The Heartbeat - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.23: Cardiac Muscle - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.24: Control of the Heartbeat - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.25: The Coronary Vessels - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.26: Blood Circulation Objectives - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.27: Blood Circulation - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.28: Arteries - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.29: The Pulse - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.30: Capillaries - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.31: The Formation of Tissue Fluid and Lymph - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.32: Veins - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 8.33: Regulation of Blood Flow - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.34: Edema and fluid loss - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.35: The Spleen - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.36: Important Blood Vessels - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.37: Blood Pressure - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.38: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.39: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.40: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 8.41: Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 9: Respiratory System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.1: Overview - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.2: Diffusion and Transportation of Oxygen - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.3: Diffusion and Transportation of Carbon Dioxide - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.4: The Air Passages - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.5: The Lungs and Pleural Cavities - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.6: Breathing - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.7: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.8: Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.9: Respiratory System Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.10: Respiration Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.11: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 9.12: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 10: Lymphatic System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.1: Lymph and the Lymphatic System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.2: Other Organs of the Lymphatic System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.3: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.4: Lymphatic System Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.5: Lymphatic System Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.6: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 10.7: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 11: The Gut and Digestion - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.1: Herbivores - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.2: Carnivores - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.3: Omnivores - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.4: Treatment of Food - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.5: The Gut - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.6: Mouth - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.7: Teeth - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.8: Oesophagus - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.9: Stomach - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.10: Small Intestine - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.11: The Rumen - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.12: Large Intestine - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.13: Functional Caecum - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.14: The Gut Of Birds - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.15: Digestion - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.16: Pancreatic juice - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.17: Intestinal Juice - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.18: Absorption - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.19: The Liver - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.20: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.21: Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.22: Digestive System Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.23: Digestive System Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.24: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 11.25: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 12: Urinary System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.1: Homeostasis - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.2: Water in the Body - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.3: Maintaining Water Balance - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.4: Excretion - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.5: The Kidneys and Urinary System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.6: Kidney Tubules or Nephrons - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.7: Water Balance In Fish And Marine Animals - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.8: Diabetes And The Kidney - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.9: Other Functions Of The Kidney - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.10: Normal Urine - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.11: Abnormal Ingredients Of Urine - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.12: Excretion In Birds - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.13: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.14: Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.15: Excretory System Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.16: Excretory System Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.17: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 12.18: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 13: Reproductive System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.1: Reproductive System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.2: Sexual Reproduction in Mammals - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.3: The Male Reproductive Organs - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.4: The Female Reproductive Organs - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.5: Fertilisation and Implantation - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.6: Pregnancy - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.7: Birth - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.8: Milk Production - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.9: Reproduction In Birds - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.10: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 13.11: Reproductive System Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 13.12: Reproductive System Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 13.13: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 13.14: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 13.15: Fertilization - *CC BY-SA 3.0*

- 14: Nervous System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.1: Coordination - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.2: The Nervous System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.3: The Neuron - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.4: Reflexes - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.5: Parts of the Nervous System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.6: Nervous System Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.7: Nervous System Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.8: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.9: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 14.10: Nervous System (Summary) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 15: The Senses - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.1: The Sense Organs - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.2: Touch and Pressure - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.3: Pain - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.4: Temperature - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.5: Awareness of Limb Position - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.6: Smell - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.7: Taste - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.8: Sight - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.9: Hearing - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.10: Balance - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.11: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.12: Special Senses Worksheet - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.13: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 15.14: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- 16: Endocrine System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.1: The Endocrine System - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.2: Endocrine Glands and Hormones - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.3: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.4: The Pineal Gland - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.5: The Thyroid Gland - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.6: The Parathyroid Gland - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.7: The Adrenal Gland - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.8: The Pancreas - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.9: The Ovaries - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.10: The Testes - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.11: Summary - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.12: Homeostasis and Feedback Control - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.13: Summary of Homeostatic Mechanisms - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.14: Endocrine System (Worksheet) - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.15: Endocrine System Worksheet Answers - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.16: Test Yourself - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 16.17: Websites - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
- Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*